

Infoprint Manager for Windows NT
and Windows 2000



Configuring PSF Direct for Infoprint Manager

Infoprint Manager for Windows NT and Windows
2000



Configuring PSF Direct for Infoprint Manager

Note

Before using this information and the product it supports, be sure to read the general information in "Notices" on page 241.

Second Edition (August 2000)

This edition applies to IBM Infoprint Manager for Windows NT and Windows 2000 Version 1 Release 1 and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions or technical newsletters. Be sure to use the correct edition for the level of the product.

Order publications through your IBM representative or the IBM branch office that serves your locality. Publications are not stocked at the address given below.

IBM Printing Systems welcomes your comments. You may send your comments to the following address:

INFORMATION DEVELOPMENT
IBM PRINTING SYSTEMS
DEPARTMENT H7FE, BUILDING 003G
PO BOX 1900
BOULDER, CO 80301-9191

If you prefer to send comments electronically, use one of the following methods:

- Internet: printpub@us.ibm.com
- Fax: 1-800-524-1519 within U.S.; 1-303-924-6873 outside U.S

Internet

Visit our home page at <http://www.ibm.com/printers>.

When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 2000. All rights reserved.

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

Figures v

Tables xi

Chapter 1. Overview of PSF Direct and Communication Server for Windows NT® 1

What is PSF Direct? 1
What is IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT? 2
What are the Available Network Connections? 2

Chapter 2. Understanding PSF Direct Configuration Requirements 5

Application View of an SNA Network 5
Network Internals View of an SNA Network 6
Key Configuration Parameter Interrelationships. 8

Chapter 3. Preconfiguration Tasks 13

Defining Devices for IBM SecureWay Communications Server and Infoprint Windows NT. 13
Defining an Alternate Token-Ring Address for a Windows NT Server 13
Deciding whether to Define a Dependent or an Independent LU 14
Configuring an LU 6.2 Partner LU on Your Infoprint Windows NT Server 14

Chapter 4. Local or Remote 37xx Token-Ring Configuration 15

Local or Remote 37xx Host Configuration 16
 Specifying the JES2 Initialization Statement. 16
 Configuring the Host PSF Printer 17
 Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) 19
 Specifying the VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn). 20
 Specifying the VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program. 21
 Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry 21
 Specifying the VTAM Switched Major Node 22
 Defining the Network Control Program (NCP) 26
Specifying Communications Server for NT Configuration Profiles 28
 Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles 28
 37xx Node Setup 30
 37xx Device Configuration 34
 Enabling SNA API Clients for 37xx 39
 37xx Peer Connections Configuration. 41
 Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for 37xx 46
 Local LU 6.2 Configuration for 37xx 49
 Mode Configuration for 37xx 52
 Transaction Program Configuration for 37xx 55

Local or Remote 37xx Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheets 59
 37xx Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheet Example 59
 37xx Token-Ring Configuration Blank Work Sheet 60

Chapter 5. Local 3172 Token-Ring Configuration 61

Local 3172 Host Configuration 62
 Specifying the JES2 Initialization Statement. 62
 Configuring the Host PSF Printer 62
 Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) 65
 Specifying the VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn). 66
 Specifying the VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program. 67
 Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry 67
 Specifying the VTAM Switched Major Node 68
 Specifying the VTAM External Communication Adapter (XCA) Major Node 72
Specifying Communications Server for NT Configuration Profiles 73
 Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles 74
 Local 3172 Node Setup 75
 Local 3172 Device Configuration 79
 Enabling SNA API Clients for Local 3172 84
 Local 3172 Peer Connections Configuration. 86
 Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for Local 3172 91
 Local LU 6.2 Configuration for Local 3172 94
 Mode Configuration for Local 3172 97
 Transaction Program Configuration for Local 3172 100
Local 3172 Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheets 104
 Local 3172 Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheet Example 104
 Local 3172 Token-Ring Configuration Blank Work Sheet 105

Chapter 6. Local 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration 107

Local 3174 Host Configuration 108
 Specifying the JES2 Initialization Statement 108
 Configuring the Host PSF Printer. 108
 Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) 111
 Specifying the VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn) 112
 Specifying the VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program 113
 Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry 113
 Specifying the VTAM Local Major Node 114
 Configuring the 3174 Establishment Controller 115

Specifying Communications Server for NT Configuration Profiles	117
Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles	117
Local 3174 Node Setup	119
Local 3174 Device Configuration	123
Local 3174 Peer Connections Configuration	128
Local LU 6.2 Configuration for Local 3174	132
Enabling SNA API Clients for Local 3174	135
Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for Local 3174	137
Mode Configuration for Local 3174	140
Transaction Program Configuration for Local 3174	143
Local 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Work Sheets	147
Local 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Work Sheet Example	147
Local 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Blank Work Sheet	148

Chapter 7. Remote 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration 149

Remote 3174 Host Configuration	150
Specifying the JES2 Initialization Statement	150
Configuring the Host PSF Printer.	150
Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx)	153
Specifying the VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn)	154
Specifying the VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program	155
Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry	155
Configuring the 3174 Establishment Controller	156
Specifying Communications Server for NT Configuration Profiles	158
Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles	158
Remote 3174 Node Setup	160
Remote 3174 Device Configuration	164
Remote 3174 Peer Connections Configuration	169
Local LU 6.2 Configuration for Remote 3174	173
Enabling SNA API Clients for Remote 3174	176
Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for Remote 3174	178
Mode Configuration for Remote 3174	181
Transaction Program Configuration for Remote 3174	184
Remote 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Work Sheets	188
Remote 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Work Sheet Example	188
Remote 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Blank Work Sheet	189

Chapter 8. Local or Remote AS/400 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration 191

AS/400 Host Configuration	192
AS/400 Line Descriptions	192
Advanced Program-to-Program Communications (APPC) Controller Descriptions	193

Host Printer Device Description	195
Specifying Communications Server for NT Configuration Profiles	196
Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles	197
AS/400 Node Setup	198
AS/400 Device Configuration	202
Enabling SNA API Clients for AS/400	207
AS/400 Peer Connections Configuration	209
Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for AS/400	214
Local LU 6.2 Configuration for AS/400	217
Mode Configuration for AS/400	220
Transaction Program Configuration for AS/400	223
Local or Remote AS/400 Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheets	227
AS/400 Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheet Example	227
AS/400 Token-Ring Configuration Blank Work Sheet	228

Chapter 9. Starting an IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT Configuration 229

Chapter 10. Configuring PSF Direct 231

Creating and Configuring an Infoprint PSF Direct Destination (Printer)	232
Using the Infoprint Manager Administration GUI	232
Using the Infoprint Manager Management Console	232
Defining the PSF Direct Host Receiver	232
Starting a PSF Direct Host Receiver	233
Stopping a PSF Direct Host Receiver	234
Displaying the Status of a PSF Direct Destination on the Windows NT System	234
Using the Infoprint Manager Management Console	234
Using the psfstat Command	235
Displaying the Status of a PSF Direct Destination on the Host System	236
Using One Infoprint Actual Destination to Print Data from Multiple Sources	236
Switching between Data Sources	236
Sharing an Infoprint Actual Destination: An Example	238
Displaying the Status of a Shared Infoprint Actual Destination.	240

Notices 241

Licenses	241
Trademarks	241

Index 243

Figures

1. Printing with PSF Direct	1	34. VTAM Switched Major Node Guidelines: Listening Link Station (37xx).	23
2. Local 37xx Token-Ring Configuration: Simplified View	3	35. VTAM Switched Major Node Example with CPNAME (37xx)	26
3. Remote 37xx Token-Ring Configuration: Simplified View	3	36. VTAM Switched Major Node Example with IDBLK and IDNUM (37xx)	26
4. Local 3172 Token-Ring Configuration: Simplified View	3	37. Network Control Program Definition Guidelines (37xx)	27
5. Local 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration: Simplified View	3	38. Network Control Program Definition Examples (37xx)	28
6. Remote 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration: Simplified View	3	39. Choose a Configuration Scenario Window (37xx)	29
7. Local or Remote AS/400 Token-Ring Configuration: Simplified View	4	40. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Node (37xx)	30
8. SNA Network: Application View	5	41. Define the Node Notebook: Basic Tab (37xx)	31
9. Application View with Configuration Parameters	6	42. Define the Node Notebook: Advanced Tab (37xx)	32
10. SNA Network: Network Internals View for a 37xx Communications Controller.	7	43. Define the Node Notebook: DLU Requester Tab (37xx)	33
11. SNA Network: Network Internals View for a Local 3172 Communications Controller.	7	44. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Devices (37xx)	34
12. SNA Network: Network Internals View for a Local 3174 Communications Controller.	7	45. Device Type Window (37xx)	34
13. SNA Network: Network Internals View for a Remote 3174 Communications Controller	7	46. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Basic Tab (37xx)	35
14. Logical Unit Names	8	47. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Advanced Tab (37xx)	36
15. Local Address of Logical Unit.	9	48. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Performance Tab (37xx)	37
16. Session Characteristics	9	49. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Reactivation Tab (37xx)	38
17. Physical Unit and Control Point Names	10	50. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: SNA API Clients (37xx)	39
18. Token-Ring Addresses for 37xx Configuration	10	51. SNA Clients Window (37xx)	40
19. Token-Ring Addresses for Local 3172 Configuration	11	52. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Peer Connections (37xx)	41
20. Token-Ring Addresses for Local or Remote 3174 Configuration	12	53. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Basic Tab (37xx)	42
21. Local and Remote 37xx Token-Ring Configurations	15	54. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Advanced Tab (37xx)	43
22. JES2 Initialization Statement Example (37xx)	16	55. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Adjacent Node Tab (37xx)	44
23. Host PSF Printer Guidelines (37xx).	17	56. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Reactivation Tab (37xx).	45
24. JES2 External Writer Procedure Example (37xx)	19	57. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Partner LU 6.2 LUs (37xx)	46
25. VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) Guidelines (37xx)	19	58. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Basic Tab (37xx)	47
26. VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) Example (37xx)	20	59. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Advanced Tab (37xx)	48
27. VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn) Guidelines (37xx)	20	60. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Local LU 6.2 LUs (37xx)	49
28. VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn) Example (37xx)	20		
29. VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program Guidelines (37xx)	21		
30. VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program Example (37xx)	21		
31. VTAM Mode Table and Entry Guidelines (37xx)	21		
32. VTAM Mode Table and Entry Example (37xx)	22		
33. VTAM Switched Major Node Guidelines: Calling Link Station (37xx)	22		

61. Define a Local LU 6.2 Notebook: Basic Tab (37xx)	50	93. Device Type Window (Local 3172)	79
62. Define a Local LU 6.2 Notebook: Advanced Tab (37xx)	51	94. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3172)	80
63. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Modes (37xx).	52	95. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3172)	81
64. Define a Mode Notebook: Basic Tab (37xx)	53	96. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Performance Tab (Local 3172)	82
65. Define a Mode Notebook: Advanced Tab (37xx)	54	97. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Reactivation Tab (Local 3172)	83
66. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Transaction Programs (37xx)	55	98. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: SNA API Clients (Local 3172)	84
67. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Basic Tab (37xx)	56	99. SNA Clients Window (Local 3172)	85
68. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Advanced Tab (37xx)	57	100. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Peer Connections (Local 3172)	86
69. Local 3172 Token-Ring Configuration	61	101. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3172)	87
70. JES2 Initialization Statement Example (Local 3172).	62	102. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3172)	88
71. Host PSF Printer Guidelines (Local 3172)	63	103. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Adjacent Node Tab (Local 3172)	89
72. JES2 External Writer Procedure Example (Local 3172).	65	104. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Reactivation Tab (Local 3172)	90
73. VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) Guidelines (Local 3172)	65	105. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Partner LU 6.2 LUs (Local 3172)	91
74. VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) Example (Local 3172)	66	106. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3172)	92
75. VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn) Guidelines (Local 3172)	66	107. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3172)	93
76. VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn) Example (Local 3172)	66	108. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Local LU 6.2 LUs (Local 3172)	94
77. VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program Guidelines (Local 3172)	67	109. Define a Local LU 6.2 Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3172)	95
78. VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program Example (Local 3172)	67	110. Define a Local LU 6.2 Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3172)	96
79. VTAM Mode Table and Entry Guidelines (Local 3172)	67	111. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Modes (Local 3172).	97
80. VTAM Mode Table and Entry Example (Local 3172).	68	112. Define a Mode Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3172).	98
81. VTAM Switched Major Node Guidelines: Calling Link Station (Local 3172)	68	113. Define a Mode Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3172)	99
82. VTAM Switched Major Node Guidelines: Listening Link Station (Local 3172).	69	114. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Transaction Programs (Local 3172)	100
83. VTAM Switched Major Node Example with CPNAME (Local 3172).	72	115. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3172).	101
84. VTAM Switched Major Node Example with IDBLK and IDNUM (Local 3172)	72	116. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3172)	102
85. VTAM XCA Major Node Guidelines (Local 3172).	72	117. Local 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration	107
86. VTAM XCA Major Node Example (Local 3172)	73	118. JES2 Initialization Statement Example (Local 3174)	108
87. Choose a Configuration Scenario Window (Local 3172)	74	119. Host PSF Printer Guidelines (Local 3174)	109
88. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Node (Local 3172)	75	120. JES2 External Writer Procedure Example (Local 3174)	111
89. Define the Node Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3172).	76	121. VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) Guidelines (Local 3174)	111
90. Define the Node Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3172)	77		
91. Define the Node Notebook: DLU Requester Tab (Local 3172)	78		
92. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Devices (Local 3172)	79		

122. VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) Example (Local 3174)	112	152. SNA Clients Window (Local 3174)	136
123. VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn) Guidelines (Local 3174)	112	153. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Partner LU 6.2 LUs (Local 3174)	137
124. VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn) Example (Local 3174)	112	154. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3174)	138
125. VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program Guidelines (Local 3174)	113	155. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3174).	139
126. VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program Example (Local 3174)	113	156. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Modes (Local 3174)	140
127. VTAM Mode Table and Entry Guidelines (Local 3174)	113	157. Define a Mode Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3174)	141
128. VTAM Mode Table and Entry Example (Local 3174)	114	158. Define a Mode Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3174)	142
129. VTAM Local Major Node Guidelines (Local 3174)	114	159. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Transaction Programs (Local 3174)	143
130. VTAM Local Major Node Example (Local 3174)	115	160. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3174).	144
131. 3174 Establishment Controller Guidelines (Local 3174)	116	161. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3174)	145
132. 3174 Establishment Controller Example (Local 3174)	117	162. Remote 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration	149
133. Choose a Configuration Scenario Window (Local 3174)	118	163. JES2 Initialization Statement Example (Remote 3174)	150
134. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Node (Local 3174)	119	164. Host PSF Printer Guidelines (Remote 3174)	151
135. Define the Node Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3174)	120	165. JES2 External Writer Procedure Example (Remote 3174)	153
136. Define the Node Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3174)	121	166. VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) Guidelines (Remote 3174)	153
137. Define the Node Notebook: DLU Requester Tab (Local 3174).	122	167. VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) Example (Remote 3174)	154
138. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Devices (Local 3174)	123	168. VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn) Guidelines (Remote 3174)	154
139. Device Type Window (Local 3174)	123	169. VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn) Example (Remote 3174)	155
140. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3174)	124	170. VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program Guidelines (Remote 3174)	155
141. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3174).	125	171. VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program Example (Remote 3174)	155
142. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Performance Tab (Local 3174).	126	172. VTAM Mode Table and Entry Guidelines (Remote 3174)	155
143. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Reactivation Tab (Local 3174).	127	173. VTAM Mode Table and Entry Example (Remote 3174)	156
144. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Host Connections (Local 3174)	128	174. 3174 Establishment Controller Guidelines (Remote 3174)	156
145. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3174).	129	175. 3174 Establishment Controller Example (Remote 3174)	158
146. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3174)	130	176. Choose a Configuration Scenario Window (Remote 3174)	159
147. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Adjacent Node Tab (Local 3174)	131	177. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Node (Remote 3174)	160
148. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Reactivation Tab (Local 3174)	132	178. Define the Node Notebook: Basic Tab (Remote 3174)	161
149. Host LU Definition Window (Local 3174)	133	179. Define the Node Notebook: Advanced Tab (Remote 3174)	162
150. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Defined LU (Local 3174)	134	180. Define the Node Notebook: DLU Requester Tab (Remote 3174)	163
151. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: SNA API Clients (Local 3174)	135		

181. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Devices (Remote 3174)	164	210. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Node (AS/400).	198
182. Device Type Window (Remote 3174)	164	211. Define the Node Notebook: Basic Tab (AS/400)	199
183. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Basic Tab (Remote 3174)	165	212. Define the Node Notebook: Advanced Tab (AS/400)	200
184. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Advanced Tab (Remote 3174)	166	213. Define the Node Notebook: DLU Requester Tab (AS/400)	201
185. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Performance Tab (Remote 3174)	167	214. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Devices (AS/400)	202
186. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Reactivation Tab (Remote 3174)	168	215. Device Type Window (AS/400)	202
187. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Host Connections (Remote 3174)	169	216. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Basic Tab (AS/400)	203
188. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Basic Tab (Remote 3174)	170	217. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Advanced Tab (AS/400)	204
189. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Advanced Tab (Remote 3174)	171	218. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Performance Tab (AS/400)	205
190. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Adjacent Node Tab (Remote 3174)	172	219. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Reactivation Tab (AS/400)	206
191. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Reactivation Tab (Remote 3174)	173	220. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: SNA API Clients (AS/400)	207
192. Host LU Definition Window (Remote 3174)	174	221. SNA Clients Window (AS/400)	208
193. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Defined LU (Remote 3174)	175	222. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Peer Connections (AS/400)	209
194. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: SNA API Clients (Remote 3174)	176	223. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Basic Tab (AS/400)	210
195. SNA Clients Window (Remote 3174)	177	224. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Advanced Tab (AS/400)	211
196. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Partner LU 6.2 LUs (Remote 3174)	178	225. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Adjacent Node Tab (AS/400)	212
197. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Basic Tab (Remote 3174)	179	226. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Reactivation Tab (AS/400)	213
198. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Advanced Tab (Remote 3174)	180	227. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Partner LU 6.2 LUs (AS/400)	214
199. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Modes (Remote 3174)	181	228. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Basic Tab (AS/400)	215
200. Define a Mode Notebook: Basic Tab (Remote 3174)	182	229. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Advanced Tab (AS/400)	216
201. Define a Mode Notebook: Advanced Tab (Remote 3174)	183	230. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Local LU 6.2 LUs (AS/400)	217
202. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Transaction Programs (Remote 3174)	184	231. Define a Local LU 6.2 Notebook: Basic Tab (AS/400)	218
203. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Basic Tab (Remote 3174)	185	232. Define a Local LU 6.2 Notebook: Advanced Tab (AS/400)	219
204. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Advanced Tab (Remote 3174)	186	233. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Modes (AS/400)	220
205. Local or Remote AS/400 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration	191	234. Define a Mode Notebook: Basic Tab (AS/400)	221
206. AS/400 Line Description Example	193	235. Define a Mode Notebook: Advanced Tab (AS/400)	222
207. APPC Controller Description Example (AS/400)	194	236. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Transaction Programs (AS/400)	223
208. Host Printer Device Description Example (AS/400)	196	237. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Basic Tab (AS/400).	224
209. Choose a Configuration Scenario Window (AS/400)	197	238. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Advanced Tab (AS/400)	225

239. SNA LU 6.2 Session in a PSF Direct Configuration	231	242. PRINTDEV Statement for PSF for OS/390 Example	238
240. PSF Direct Host Receiver.	231	243. PRINTDEV Statement for PSF/VSE Example	239
241. Printer and Receiver Status Example	235	244. Shared Printer Status	240

Tables

1. Windows NT and AIX Parameters for LAN Device Performance (37xx)	38	9. Local 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Blank Work Sheet	148
2. 37xx Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheet Example	59	10. Windows NT and AIX Parameters for LAN Device Performance (Remote 3174)	168
3. 37xx Token-Ring Configuration Blank Work Sheet.	60	11. Remote 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Work Sheet Example	188
4. Windows NT and AIX Parameters for LAN Device Performance (Local 3172)	83	12. Remote 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Blank Work Sheet	189
5. Local 3172 Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheet Example	104	13. Windows NT and AIX Parameters for LAN Device Performance (AS/400)	206
6. Local 3172 Token-Ring Configuration Blank Work Sheet	105	14. AS/400 Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheet Example	227
7. Windows NT and AIX Parameters for LAN Device Performance (Local 3174)	127	15. AS/400 Token-Ring Configuration Blank Work Sheet	228
8. Local 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Work Sheet Example	147	16. PSF Direct Host Receiver Values Example	233
		17. Time Limit Parameters	238

Chapter 1. Overview of PSF Direct and Communication Server for Windows NT[®]

This chapter contains an overview of the components you need to configure Print Services Facility[™] Direct (PSF Direct) on Systems Network Architecture (SNA) networks. It contains the following subtopics:

- “What is PSF Direct?”
- “What is IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT?” on page 2
- “What are the Available Network Connections?” on page 2

What is PSF Direct?

PSF Direct provides a direct connection between a host system and a printer defined to IBM[®] Infoprint[®] Manager for Windows NT and Windows[®] 2000. The host system can be an OS/390[®], VSE, VM, or Application System/400[®] (AS/400[®]) system. PSF Direct gives you control of key print processes from your mainframe console. An Infoprint physical printer appears to be directly attached to your mainframe system. Jobs print without delay because they are not spooled by the Windows NT workstation. Because the mainframe controls the print process, it returns job-completion and error messages to the mainframe.

PSF Direct uses Communication Server LU 6.2 protocols to communicate between the mainframe and the Windows NT system. Then PSF Direct uses one of several protocols to communicate between the Windows NT system and the printer:

- Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)
- Channel
- Parallel/Serial

These protocols provide you with access to TCP/IP, channel, or parallel/serial printers that otherwise you might not be able to attach from the mainframe.

To use PSF Direct, you need the IBM SecureWay[®] Communications Server product to communicate between the mainframe and NT. You create printer definitions on the mainframe so that print jobs can be directed to the NT printer. Then, you define the printer to the Infoprint server on NT.

After you install PSF Direct, you send the job to the printer, using normal print-submission processes. Because PSF Direct is a direct pipeline to the printer, you need to end the PSF Direct session before you can use the printer to print from another mainframe or from IBM Infoprint Manager for Windows NT.

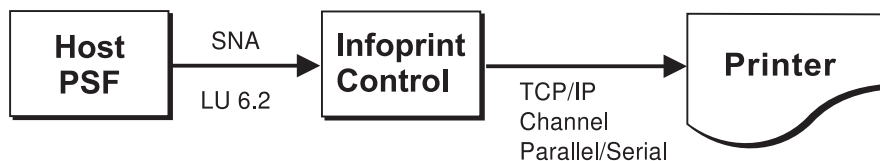


Figure 1. Printing with PSF Direct

What is IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT?

You need the IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT to configure and to use PSF Direct. IBM SecureWay Communications Server is an implementation of SNA for the NT operating system running on the NT workstation. It enables an NT workstation to communicate with other nodes in an SNA network.

PSF Direct requires IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT system software Version 6, Release 01, with maintenance that includes the following authorized program analysis report (APAR) fixes:

- APAR JR13453
- APAR JR14098
- APAR JR13599

Note that the second APAR (JR13599) is necessary only if you will be creating more than one Communications Server profile for dependent LUs.

Infoprint Manager for Windows NT allows you to create a PSF Direct host receiver whether or not you have completed the IBM SecureWay Communications Server node configuration. Therefore, it does not matter whether you install Infoprint Manager or Communications Server first.

To install IBM SecureWay Communications Server from the CD-ROM:

1. Select the **Install Products** icon that appears on the main window.
2. Choose a **Server** install.
3. From the Communications Server Installation window, select only the **Communications Server for Windows NT** option to use the PSF Direct function.

Once you have completed the installation, create shortcuts for both the SNA Node Configuration interface and the Communications Server Node Operations interface, so that you can easily invoke them from your desktop. (The default path for the SNA Node Configuration interface is C:\IBMCS\pcscfg.exe. The default path for the Communications Server Node Operations interface is C:\IBMCS\pcsnops.exe. In both paths, C is the drive where you installed IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT.)

What are the Available Network Connections?

This document includes detailed examples and guidelines for several common SNA configurations. The diagrams in this section illustrate the network configurations, with references to more detailed information.

- Local 37xx token-ring configuration (Figure 2). This configuration is described in “Chapter 4. Local or Remote 37xx Token-Ring Configuration” on page 15.

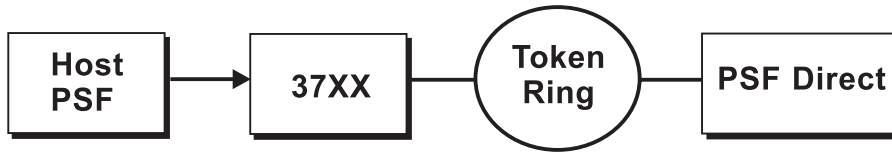


Figure 2. Local 37xx Token-Ring Configuration: Simplified View

- Remote 37xx token-ring configuration (Figure 3). This configuration is described in “Chapter 4. Local or Remote 37xx Token-Ring Configuration” on page 15.

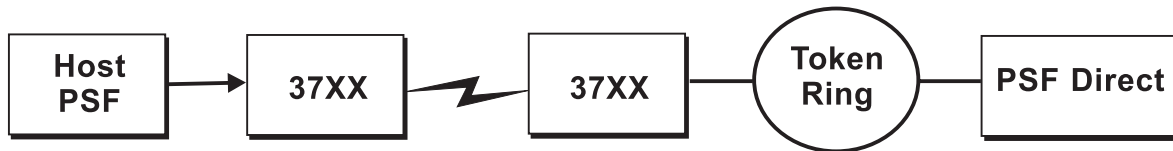


Figure 3. Remote 37xx Token-Ring Configuration: Simplified View

- Local 3172 token-ring configuration (Figure 4). This configuration is described in “Chapter 5. Local 3172 Token-Ring Configuration” on page 61.

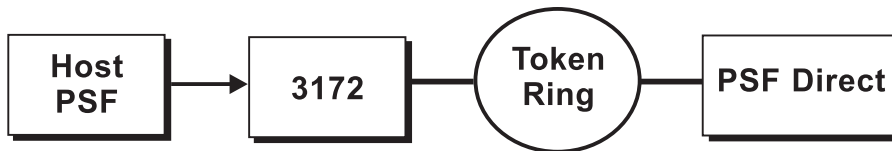


Figure 4. Local 3172 Token-Ring Configuration: Simplified View

- Local 3174 token-ring gateway configuration (Figure 5). This configuration is described in “Chapter 6. Local 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration” on page 107.

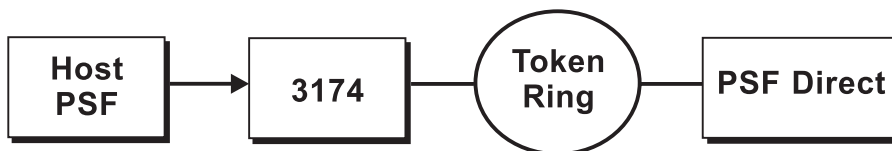


Figure 5. Local 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration: Simplified View

- Remote 3174 token-ring gateway configuration (Figure 6). This configuration is described in “Chapter 7. Remote 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration” on page 149.

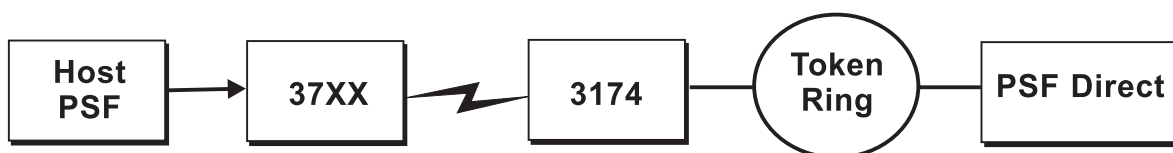


Figure 6. Remote 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration: Simplified View

- Local or remote AS/400 token-ring configuration (Figure 7). These configurations are described in “Chapter 8. Local or Remote AS/400 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration” on page 191.



Figure 7. Local or Remote AS/400 Token-Ring Configuration: Simplified View

Chapter 2. Understanding PSF Direct Configuration Requirements

An SNA network provides powerful communication capabilities to applications without requiring that the applications be aware of the equipment and transmission facilities that comprise the network. So, an SNA application like PSF Direct can communicate using an SDLC telecommunications link between two continents or a token-ring LAN in a single room.

To configure an SNA application, one normally need only identify the communication partner and the guidelines for exchanging data.

To configure an SNA network, you must describe the internal components of the network and details of their operation.

Considering two views of an SNA network, an application view and a network internals view, aids in understanding PSF Direct configuration requirements. An overview of the key configuration parameter interrelationships when defining logical unit (LU) names follows.

Application View of an SNA Network

An SNA network provides two access points for communication and a logical connection between the two access points. In SNA terminology, the access points are **logical units (LUs)**. The connection between them is a **session**. A **mode** describes a session's characteristics, or guidelines for exchanging data.

The application view displayed in Figure 8 illustrates the interface that SNA provides to applications, such as the host PSF program and the PSF Direct component of Infoprint Manager. These applications are isolated from details of the internal components of the SNA network.

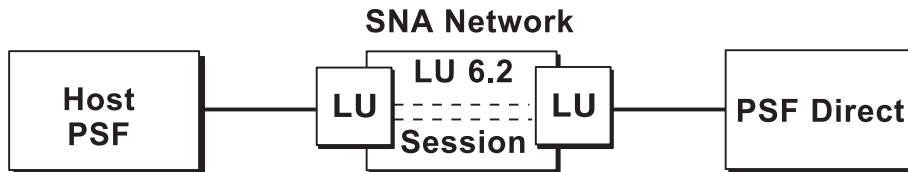


Figure 8. SNA Network: Application View

As the application view suggests, only a few values are required to configure the host PSF program and PSF Direct so they can communicate. Figure 9 on page 6 displays the values used by both applications. Note that each configuration parameter refers to a logical unit or mode provided by the SNA network.

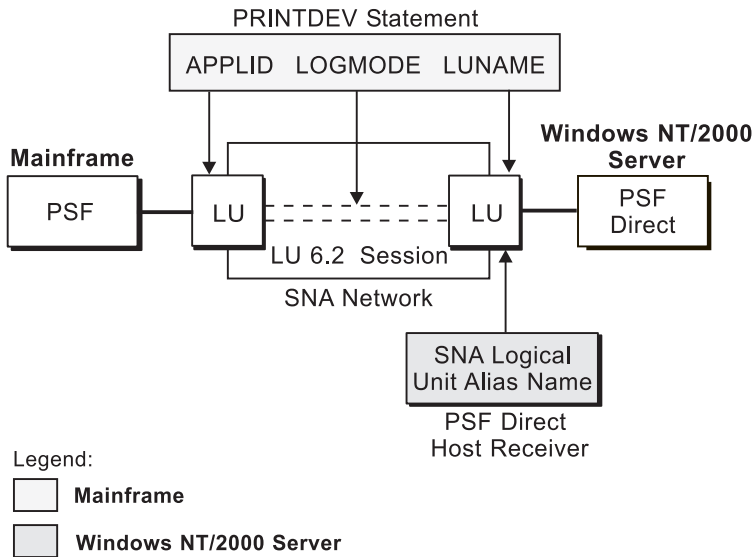


Figure 9. Application View with Configuration Parameters

Host PSF **PRINTDEV** statement parameters:

APPLID

Specifies the name of the logical unit that the host PSF program uses.

LUNAME

Specifies the name of the logical unit that PSF Direct uses.

LOGMODE

Specifies the session characteristics for communication between the two logical units.

Individual modes, or mode entries, are grouped into a table that contains several modes. **LOGMODE** identifies a mode entry. You identify the mode table through the SNA network definitions for the logical unit that PSF Direct uses.

PSF Direct host receiver parameters:

Local LU alias

Specifies the local ID that points to the logical unit that PSF Direct uses on the Windows NT server. For an independent LU, you define this parameter on the **Basic** tab of the Define a Local LU 6.2 notebook. For a dependent LU, it is the same as the LU name.

Because there may be several PSF Direct host receivers on an NT workstation and several NT workstations in an SNA network, each PSF Direct host receiver must have a unique logical unit name.

Network Internals View of an SNA Network

While the application view illustrates the relationship of an SNA network to the applications that use it, the network internals view aids in understanding the components of an SNA network and how they must be configured.

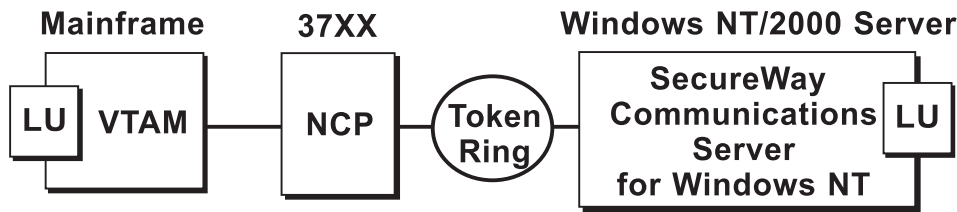


Figure 10. SNA Network: Network Internals View for a 37xx Communications Controller

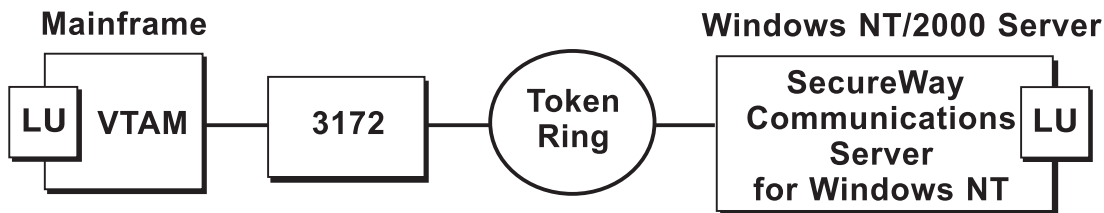


Figure 11. SNA Network: Network Internals View for a Local 3172 Communications Controller

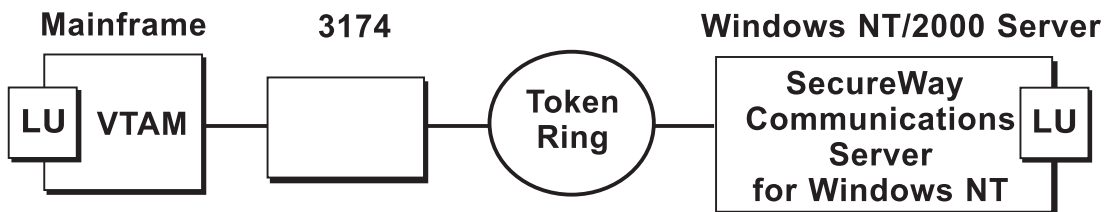


Figure 12. SNA Network: Network Internals View for a Local 3174 Communications Controller

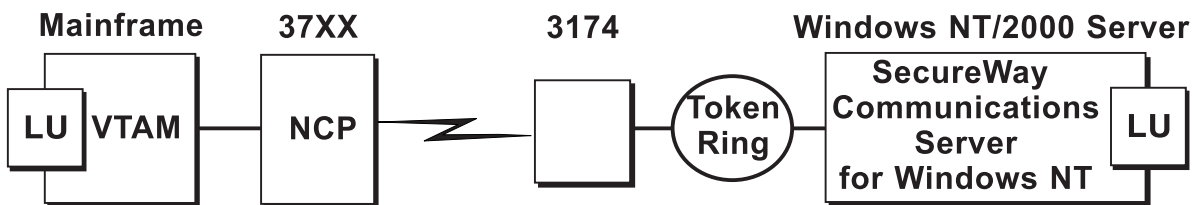


Figure 13. SNA Network: Network Internals View for a Remote 3174 Communications Controller

The network internals views illustrate that many components comprise an SNA network. Most of the components have detailed configuration requirements. Many of those requirements are described in the five configuration chapters.

First, however, it is important to understand that several network components have configuration parameters whose values are related to configuration parameters for other network components. You must configure these interrelated parameters consistently to make end-to-end communication possible.

“Key Configuration Parameter Interrelationships” on page 8 contains several figures. They illustrate some of the key interrelationships among configuration parameters for SNA network components.

Key Configuration Parameter Interrelationships

Figure 14 illustrates the interrelationships required when defining logical unit (LU) names.

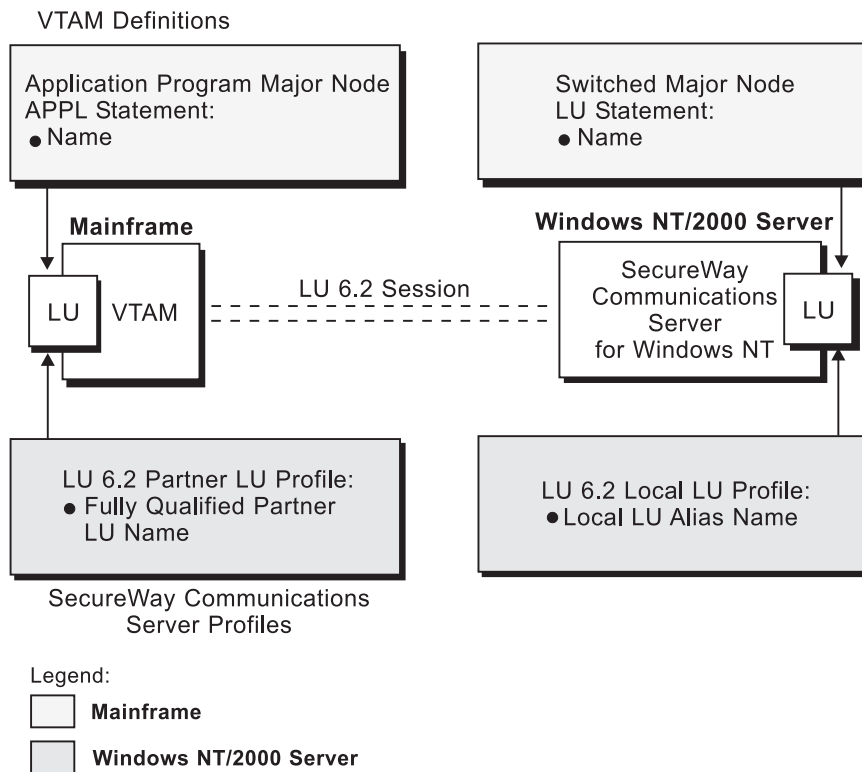


Figure 14. Logical Unit Names

Figure 15 illustrates the interrelationships required when defining the local address of the logical unit provided by SecureWay Communications Server for NT.

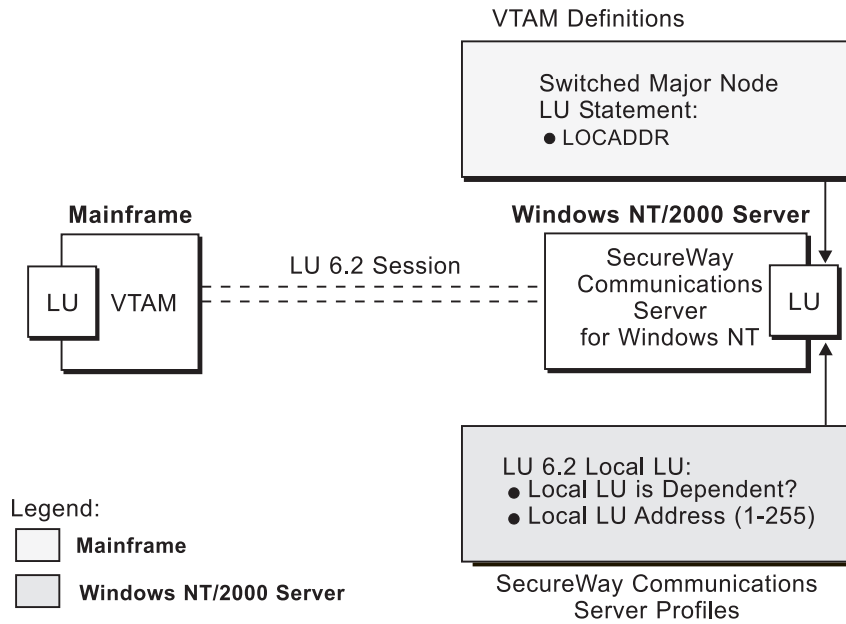


Figure 15. Local Address of Logical Unit

Figure 16 illustrates the interrelationships required when defining session characteristics.

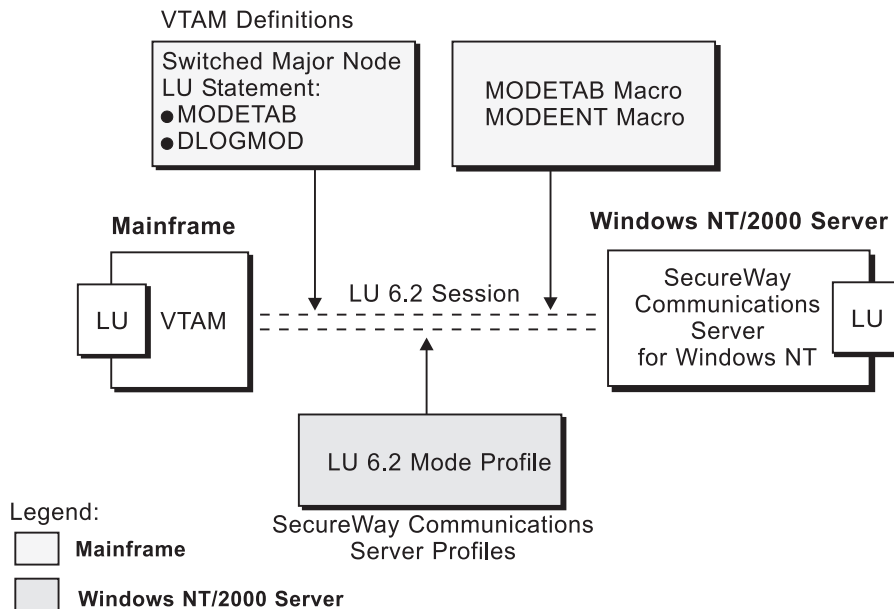


Figure 16. Session Characteristics

Figure 17 illustrates the interrelationships required when defining the names of the physical unit (PU) and control point (CP) provided by SecureWay Communications Server for NT.

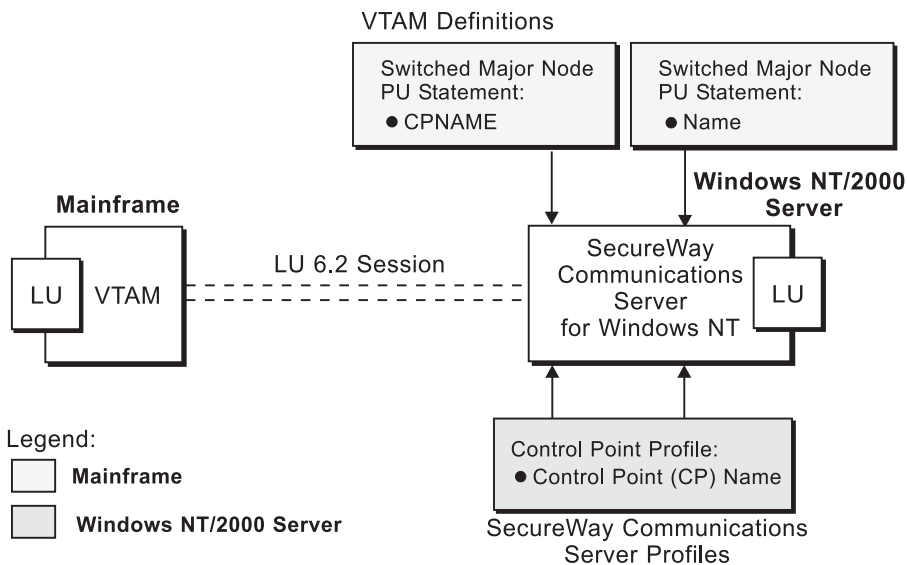


Figure 17. Physical Unit and Control Point Names

Figure 18 illustrates the interrelationships required when defining the token-ring addresses used in the 37xx configuration.

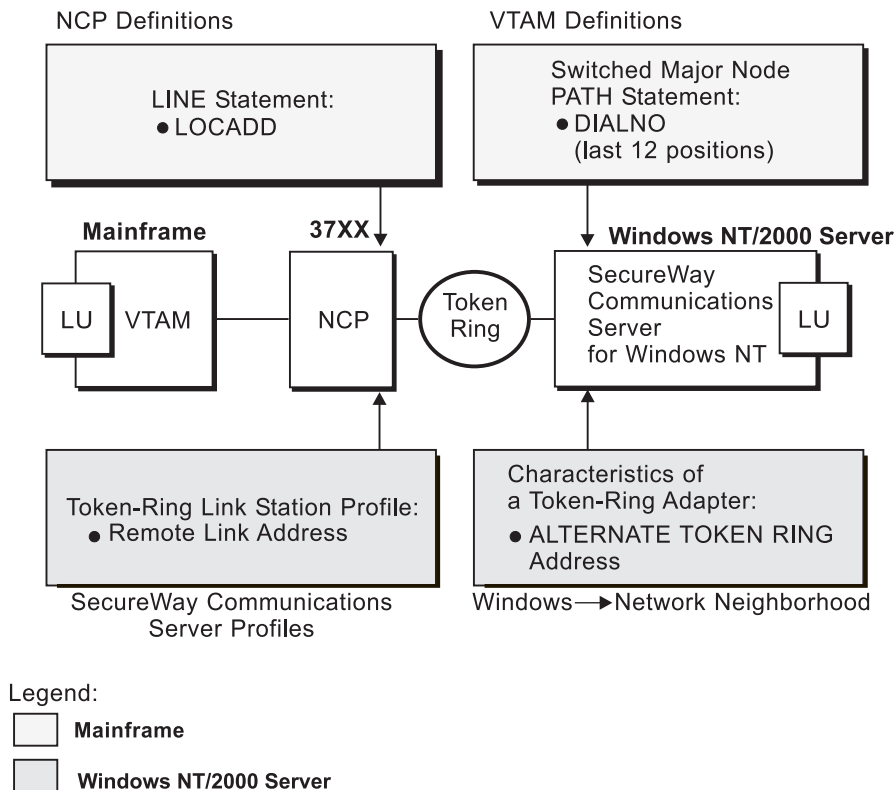


Figure 18. Token-Ring Addresses for 37xx Configuration

Figure 19 illustrates the interrelationships required when defining the token-ring addresses used in the local 3172 configuration.

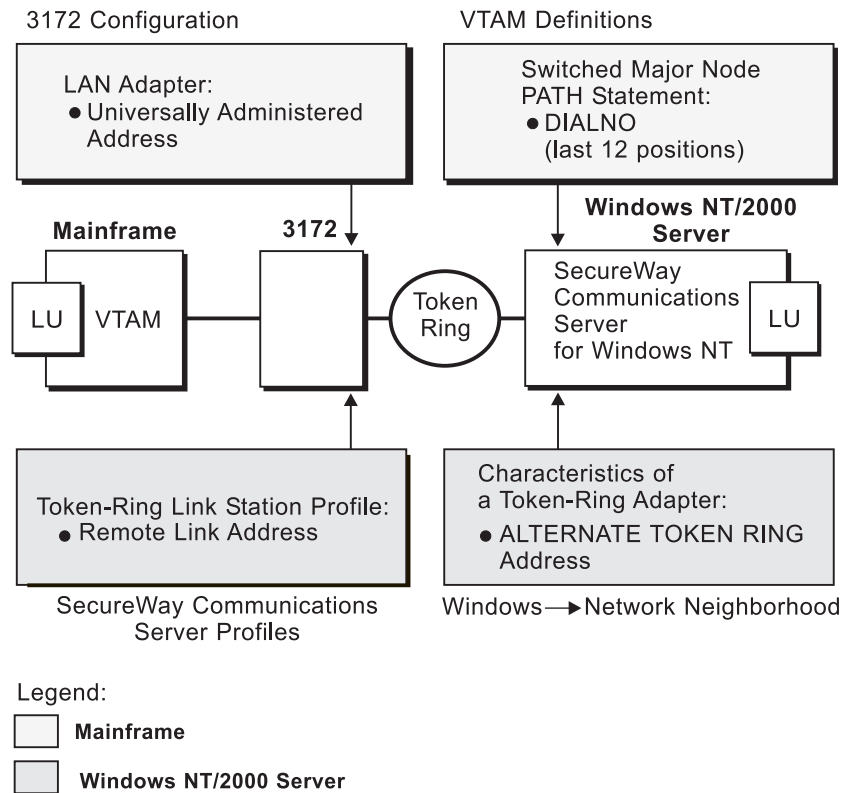


Figure 19. Token-Ring Addresses for Local 3172 Configuration

Figure 20 illustrates the interrelationships required when defining the token-ring addresses used in either the local or the remote 3174 configuration.

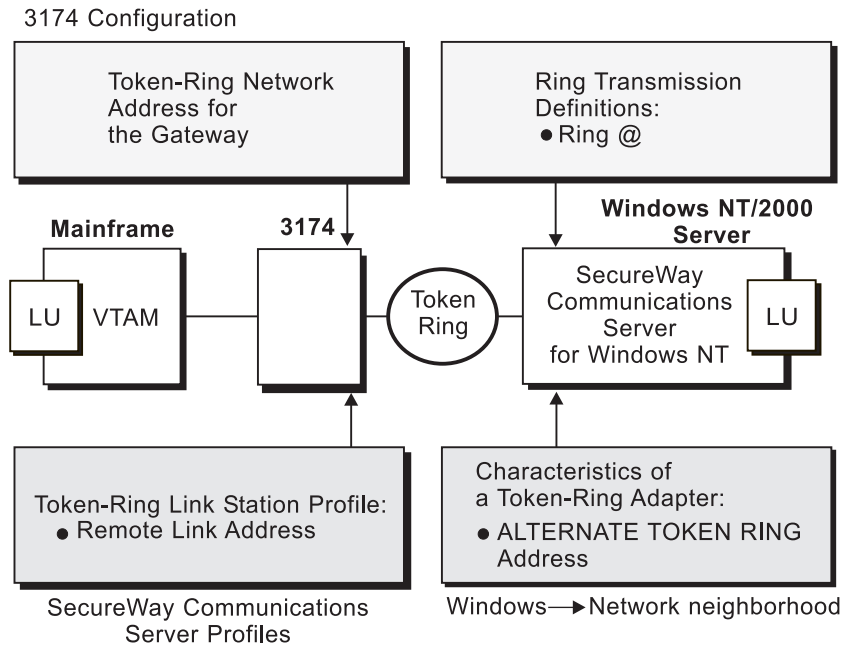


Figure 20. Token-Ring Addresses for Local or Remote 3174 Configuration

Chapter 3. Preconfiguration Tasks

For each configuration, you must perform the following tasks:

- “Defining Devices for IBM SecureWay Communications Server and Infoprint Windows NT”
- “Defining an Alternate Token-Ring Address for a Windows NT Server”. This task is required for local and remote 3174 token-ring gateway configurations. It is optional for other configurations.
- “Deciding whether to Define a Dependent or an Independent LU” on page 14
- “Configuring an LU 6.2 Partner LU on Your Infoprint Windows NT Server” on page 14

Defining Devices for IBM SecureWay Communications Server and Infoprint Windows NT

You must define devices for both Communications Server and Infoprint Manager for Windows NT and Windows 2000, so that the token-ring (or Ethernet) card can carry the SNA data from the PSF host program. Usually, a device must be made available once. It then remains available, even after Windows NT shuts down and restarts. For each configuration example, you accomplish this task through device configuration, the second of the IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT configuration profiles in each example.

Defining an Alternate Token-Ring Address for a Windows NT Server

A token-ring address, often called a **MAC address**, has 12 hexadecimal digits, for example, 10005AC8B0EA. Each device in a token-ring network must have a unique address. To facilitate unique token-ring addressing, every manufacturer assigns a distinct address called a **universal MAC address** to each token-ring adapter. By default, a token-ring adapter in a Windows NT server uses the token-ring address that the manufacturer assigned when the adapter was made. However, Windows NT systems allow you to define an **alternate token-ring address**, also called a **local MAC address**.

In some configurations, an alternate token-ring address is necessary. For example:

- The 3174 Establishment Controller requires an alternate token-ring address for the gateway and prefers alternate addresses for devices attached to the gateway.
- If the **DIALNO** operand is included in a Virtual Telecommunications Access Method (VTAM[®]) switched major node **PATH** statement, an alternate token-ring address is generally required. The **DIALNO** operand accepts only digits in the 0-9 range; however, most universal MAC addresses (assigned by the manufacturer) include at least one digit in the A-F range. In these instances, you must use an alternate token-ring address that does not contain any digits in the A-F range.

Generally, the first four digits of alternate token-ring addresses must be 4000.

To assign an alternate token-ring address to a token-ring adapter in a Windows NT server, you must refer to the operating system online help. Different levels of the operating systems can vary.

For example, if you want to assign an alternate token-ring address to a token-ring adapter on a Microsoft® Windows NT Version 4.00.1381 system, use the following procedure:

1. Specify the **My Computer-->Control Panel-->Network** path.
2. Select the **Adapters** tab.
3. Highlight the token-ring adapter and click the **Properties...** button.
4. From the IBM Auto 16/4 Token-Ring Adapter Card Setup pop-up, specify the local MAC address in the **Network Address** field.
5. Shut down and reboot your Infoprint Windows NT server so the new address can take effect.

Deciding whether to Define a Dependent or an Independent LU

You will usually add an LU 6.2 Local LU profile for each logical unit used by PSF Direct, whether the logical unit is dependent or independent. Whenever possible, you should define an independent LU, because they are easier to manage. With a dependent LU, you must assign a session ID and track its network addressable unit (NAU) address.

A dependent LU requires you to perform the following tasks from the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window:

1. Click the plus sign (+) next to **Host Resources** to access **Host Connections**.
2. Highlight **Host Connections** and select the **Create** option.
3. Fill in all the values in the Define a LAN Connection notebook, then specify **OK**.
4. At the Do you wish to create and assign new LUs to this connection? pop-up dialog, specify **YES**.
5. Fill in the Host LU Definition window, specifying an **LU name** value.

An independent LU requires you to perform the following tasks from the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window:

1. Select and define **Peer Connections**, while leaving **Host Resources** empty.
2. Select the **Local LU 6.2 LUs** option under the **CPI-C and APPC** heading.
3. Specify the values on the **Basic** tab of the Define a Local LU 6.2 notebook, leaving the **Dependent LU** box unchecked.
4. Specify the values on the **Advanced** tab of the Define a Local LU 6.2 notebook.

Configuring an LU 6.2 Partner LU on Your Infoprint Windows NT Server

You must configure an LU 6.2 Partner LU profile for each logical unit used by a host PSF program. Some IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT documentation indicates that an LU 6.2 Partner LU profile is not required if the local LU is an independent logical unit. However, because the logical unit used by the host PSF program does not support parallel sessions, IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT requires an LU 6.2 profile in all PSF Direct configurations.

Chapter 4. Local or Remote 37xx Token-Ring Configuration

Figure 21 shows local and remote 37xx token-ring configurations.

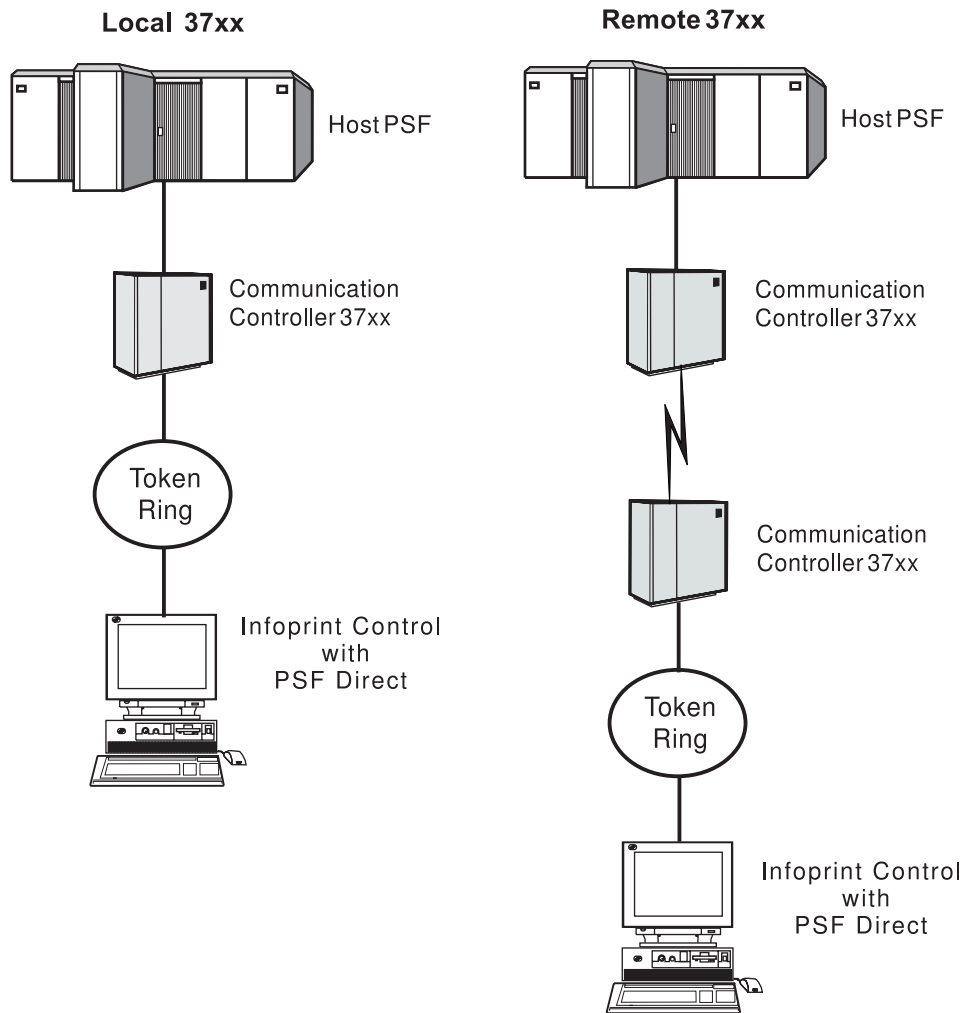


Figure 21. Local and Remote 37xx Token-Ring Configurations

This chapter describes how to create a local or remote 37xx token-ring configuration. It contains guidelines and examples for the following tasks:

- “Local or Remote 37xx Host Configuration” on page 16
 - “Specifying the JES2 Initialization Statement” on page 16
 - “Configuring the Host PSF Printer” on page 17
 - “Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx)” on page 19
 - “Specifying the VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn)” on page 20
 - “Specifying the VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program” on page 21
 - “Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry” on page 21
 - “Specifying the VTAM Switched Major Node” on page 22
 - “Defining the Network Control Program (NCP)” on page 26

- “Specifying Communications Server for NT Configuration Profiles” on page 28
 - “Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles” on page 28
 - “37xx Node Setup” on page 30
 - “37xx Device Configuration” on page 34
 - “Enabling SNA API Clients for 37xx” on page 39
 - “37xx Peer Connections Configuration” on page 41
 - “Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for 37xx” on page 46
 - “Local LU 6.2 Configuration for 37xx” on page 49
 - “Mode Configuration for 37xx” on page 52
 - “Transaction Program Configuration for 37xx” on page 55

Note: Before performing this configuration, review “Chapter 3. Preconfiguration Tasks” on page 13.

At the end of the chapter, there are two configuration work sheets. The first work sheet (Table 2 on page 59) is filled out with the values from the examples. The second work sheet (Table 3 on page 60) is blank for your own values.

Local or Remote 37xx Host Configuration

This section provides guidelines and examples for the following tasks:

- “Specifying the JES2 Initialization Statement”
- “Configuring the Host PSF Printer” on page 17
- “Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx)” on page 19
- “Specifying the VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn)” on page 20
- “Specifying the VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program” on page 21
- “Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry” on page 21
- “Specifying the VTAM Switched Major Node” on page 22
- “Defining the Network Control Program (NCP)” on page 26

For each task, this section shows the pertinent parameters. It describes which of these require you to specify *variable_names* and which require a specific name or number, such as `MODETAB=MODEIBM` or `FMPROF=X'13'`. An underlined value (such as WCONNECT) indicates that the value is a system default.

Specifying the JES2 Initialization Statement

Define the host PSF printer as you would any other SNA-attached printer. For example, on an OS/390 system you must provide either JES2 or JES3 initialization statements.

Figure 22 shows an example.

```
PRT618 CLASS=Y,MARKS=YES,START=NO,MODE=FSS,FSS=WTRES600, X
PRMODE=(LINE,PAGE),UCS=0
```

Figure 22. JES2 Initialization Statement Example (37xx)

Configuring the Host PSF Printer

The manner in which a host PSF printer is configured depends on the operating system. You will use one of the following statements:

- PSF for OS/390 **PRINTDEV** statement
- PSF/VSE **PRINTDEV** statement
- Parameters in the PSF/VM **OPTIONS PDM** file

On each operating system, PSF supports specification of both the application program ID (**APPLID**) and the logical unit name (**LUNAME**).

```
.  
. .  
.  
APPLID=appl_prog  
LUNAME=lu_name  
.  
.  
.
```

Figure 23. Host PSF Printer Guidelines (37xx)

On some operating systems, PSF also supports other configuration parameters. The following text describes these parameters (listed in order of importance) and notes whether they are required or optional:

APPLID (required)

Specifies the application program that is the SNA logical unit provided by VTAM and used by PSF. The **APPLID** value must match:

- An **APPL** statement name in a VTAM application program major node
- The second part of the **Partner LU name** field on the **Basic** tab of the Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook (Figure 58 on page 47)

LUNAME (required)

Specifies the SNA logical unit with which PSF tries to initiate a session. The **LUNAME** value must match:

- An **LU** statement name in a VTAM switched major node
- The **Local LU name** field on the **Basic** tab of the Define a Local LU 6.2 notebook (Figure 61 on page 50)

LOGMODE (optional)

Specifies the VTAM logon mode table entry that defines characteristics of the session between the logical units identified by the **APPLID** and **LUNAME** parameters. The **LOGMODE** parameter identifies an entry within a logon mode table. The **MODETAB** operand on the VTAM switched major node **LU** statement identifies the logon mode table. If you omit the **LOGMODE** parameter, the **DLOGMOD** operand on the VTAM switched major node **LU** statement identifies the entry within the logon mode table.

Note that if the logical unit identified by the **LUNAME** parameter is a cross-domain resource, you must not use the **LOGMODE** parameter.

SETUP (optional)

Specify **SETUP=FORMS** to cause JES to issue forms setup messages to the operator.

By default, JES issues forms setup messages to the operator for channel-attached printers, but does not issue forms setup messages to the operator for SNA-attached printers.

MGMTMODE={IMMED | OUTAVAIL | DIALIN} (optional)

Determines how the host PSF program and PSF Direct initiate communication.

IMMED

Causes the host PSF program to initiate communication when it starts.

OUTAVAIL

Causes the host PSF program to initiate communication when there is available output to print.

DIALIN

Causes the host PSF program to initiate communication only after a switched line becomes available. The switched line can become available either when VTAM dials out or when the remote node dials in.

Note that if you specify **DIALIN**:

- Do not use the **LOGMODE** parameter.
- Include the **LOGAPPL** operand on the VTAM switched major node **LU** statement.
- Ensure that the **LOGAPPL** operand on the VTAM switched major node **LU** statement matches the **APPLID** value.

FAILURE={WCONNECT | STOP} (optional)

Specifies whether or not the host PSF program re-attempts communication after a printer or communication failure. If you do not specify a value for the **FAILURE** parameter, it defaults to **WCONNECT**.

WCONNECT

Specifies that the host PSF program attempts to communicate again.

STOP Specifies that the operator must restart the host PSF program.

DISCINTV (optional)

Specifies the interval (in seconds) that the host PSF program waits for output to become available to print. If no output becomes available, the host PSF program ends communication with the printer.

Specify 0 to cause the host PSF program to maintain communication indefinitely. If you do not specify a value for **DISCINTV**, it defaults to 0.

Figure 24 on page 19 shows an example of a single **PRINTDEV** statement for a device named PRT618. Note that if an installation has multiple printers defined for receiving PSF Direct jobs, you must define a separate **PRINTDEV** statement for each printer.


```

//WTRES600 PROC
//*
//STEP01 EXEC PGM=APSPPIEP,REGION=4096K
//*
//STEPLIB DD DSN=SYSTEM.PSF.V220.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//*
//JOBHDR OUTPUT PAGEDEF=A06462, /* JOB HEADER PAGEDEF */
// FORMDEF=A10110 /* JOB HEADER FORMDEF */
//JOBTLR OUTPUT PAGEDEF=A06462, /* JOB TRAILER PAGEDEF */
// FORMDEF=A10110 /* JOB TRAILER FORMDEF */
//DSHDR OUTPUT PAGEDEF=A06462, /* DATA SET HEADER PAGEDEF*/
// FORMDEF=A10110 /* DATA SET HEADER FORMDEF*/
//MSGDS OUTPUT PAGEDEF=A06462, /* MESSAGE DATASET PAGEDEF*/
// FORMDEF=A10110 /* MESSAGE DATASET FORMDEF*/
//*
//FONT01 DD DSN=SYS1.FONTLIB,DISP=SHR
//OLAY01 DD DSN=SYS1.OVERLIB,DISP=SHR
//PSEG01 DD DSN=SYS1.PSEGLIB,DISP=SHR
//FDEF01 DD DSN=SYS1.FDEFLIB,DISP=SHR
//PDEF01 DD DSN=SYS1.PDEFLIB,DISP=SHR
//*
//PRT618 PRINTDEV FONTDD=*.FONT01, /* FONT LIBRARY DD */
// OVLydd=*.OLAY01, /* OVERLAY LIBRARY DD */
// PSEGDD=*.PSEG01, /* SEGMENT LIBRARY DD */
// PDEFDD=*.OLAY01, /* PAGEDEF LIBRARY DD */
// FDEFDD=*.OLAY01, /* FORMDEF LIBRARY DD */
// JOBHDR=*.JOBHDR, /* JOB HEADER DD */
// JOBTLR=*.JOBTLR, /* JOB TRAILER DD */
// DSHDR=*.DSHDR, /* DATA SET HEADER DD */
// MESSAGE=*.MSGDS, /* MESSAGE DATA DD */
// PAGEDEF=A06462, /* DEFAULT PAGEDEF */
// FORMDEF=A10110, /* DEFAULT FORMDEF */
// CHARS=(GT10,GC15,GB10,GR10,), /* DEFAULT FONT SET*/
// PIMSG=YES, /* ACCUMULATE DATA SET MESSAGES */
// SETUP=FORMS, /* ISSUE FORMS SETUP MESSAGES */
// MGMTMODE=OUTAVAIL, /* START WHEN OUTPUT AVAILABLE */
// DISCINTV=60, /* DISCONNECT INTERVAL -- SECS */
// LOGMODE=IBM3820T, /* LOGON MODE TABLE ENTRY */
// APPLID=FSAES618, /* APPLICATION PGM NAME */
// LUNAME=PSFDC4LU /* LOGICAL UNIT NAME */
//PRT618 ENDCNTL

```

Figure 24. JES2 External Writer Procedure Example (37xx)

Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx)

You must specify the values illustrated in Figure 25 and described below.

```

CONFIG=nn,          ATCCON MEMBER OF VTAMLST      X
NETID=network_id,  NETWORK IDENTIFIER          X
SSCPID=nn,         SSCP IDENTIFIER              X
.
.
.

```

Figure 25. VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) Guidelines (37xx)

CONFIG

Specifies the **ATCCON***nn* member to use.

NETID

Specifies the network identifier for the host system. The first part of the

Partner LU name field on the **Basic** tab of the Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook (Figure 58 on page 47) must match the **NETID** value.

SSCPID

Specifies the system services control point (SSCP) at the host. The SSCPID is a decimal integer from 0 to 65535.

The SSCP, normally VTAM, provides several network management functions. They include managing dependent logical units and accepting Network Management Vector Transports, such as alerts. Alerts often include information about devices that are unavailable or require corrective action.

To configure a PSF Direct host receiver to send alerts to this SSCP, the least significant portion of the **SNA System Services Control Point ID** value defined for the PSF Direct host receiver must be the hexadecimal equivalent of the SSCPID value. (For information about configuring the host receiver, see "Defining the PSF Direct Host Receiver" on page 232.) The **SNA System Services Control Point ID** must be in the form **05xxxxxxxxxx**, where *x* is a hexadecimal digit.

For example, to configure a PSF Direct host receiver to send alerts to an SSCP with an **SSCPID** value of 283, the host receiver's **SNA System Services Control Point ID** value must be 05000000011B.

Figure 26 shows an example.

```
CONFIG=00,      ATCCON MEMBER OF VTAMLST      X
NETID=USIBMBQ, NETWORK IDENTIFIER  X
SSCPID=1,       SSCP IDENTIFIER    X
.
.
.
```

Figure 26. VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) Example (37xx)

Specifying the VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn)

The VTAM configuration list indicates the application program major nodes that should become available when VTAM starts. Include the application program major node that contains the application program that PSF uses.

```
appl_prog_major_node,      X
.
.
.
```

Figure 27. VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn) Guidelines (37xx)

Figure 28 shows an example.

```
PSFAPPLS,      X
.
.
.
```

Figure 28. VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn) Example (37xx)

Specifying the VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program

The pertinent operands for the VTAM application program major node and application program are illustrated in Figure 29 and described below.

```

appl_prog_major_node, VBUILD TYPE=APPL           X
appl_prog,           APPL AUTH=ACQ,EAS=1,SONSCIP=YES X
.
.
.

```

Figure 29. VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program Guidelines (37xx)

The host PSF program does not support application programs that use **APPC=YES** or **PARSESS=YES**. The default value for both **APPC** and **PARSESS** is **NO**.

Figure 30 shows an example.

```

PSFAPPLS,  VBUILD TYPE=APPL           X
FSAES618,  APPL AUTH=ACQ,EAS=1,SONSCIP=YES X
.
.
.

```

Figure 30. VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program Example (37xx)

Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry

The operands for the VTAM mode table are illustrated in Figure 31 and described below.

```

table_name  MODETAB           X
entry_name  MODEENT LOGMODE=IBM3820T,FMPROF=X'13',TSPROF=X'07', X
.
.
.
.
PRIPROC=X'B0',SECPROT=X'B0',COMPROT=X'B0B1' X
PSERVIC=X'06020000000000000000200' X
PSNDPAC=X'10',SRCVPAC=X'10',SSNDPAC=X'00' X
RUSIZES=X'8787'

```

Figure 31. VTAM Mode Table and Entry Guidelines (37xx)

PSNDPAC

Specifies the primary send pacing count. This value influences performance and can be adjusted as desired. A value of X'10' produces good throughput in most configurations.

SRCVPAC

Specifies the secondary receive pacing count. This value influences performance and can be adjusted as desired. A value of X'10' produces good throughput in most configurations.

RUSIZES

Specifies the maximum Request Unit (RU) sizes from the primary and secondary logical units. The RU sizes influence performance and can be adjusted as desired. A value of X'8787' means 1024 bytes for both RU sizes and produces good throughput in most configurations.

The **RUSIZES** specification influences other configuration parameters. These include:

- The **Maximum RU size** field on the **Advanced** tab of the Define a Mode notebook (Figure 65 on page 54)
- The **MAXSTL** operand in the IBM Network Control Program (NCP) **LINE** statement

Figure 32 shows an example.

```

MODEIBM      MODETAB
IBM3820T     MODEENT LOGMODE=IBM3820T,FMPROF=X'13',TSPROF=X'07', X
.
.
.
                PRIPROC=X'B0',SECPROT=X'B0',COMPROT=X'B0B1' X
                PSERVIC=X'06020000000000000000200' X
                PSNDPAC=X'10',SRCVPAC=X'10',SSNDPAC=X'00' X
                RUSIZES=X'8787'

```

Figure 32. VTAM Mode Table and Entry Example (37xx)

Specifying the VTAM Switched Major Node

A different set of statements and values is required depending on whether:

- A *calling* Communications Server for NT link station initiates a link connection with a 37xx communication controller.
- A *listening* Communications Server for NT link station waits for the 37xx communication controller to initiate a link connection.

A calling Communications Server link station requires the statements and values shown in Figure 33.

```

.
.
.
node_name VBUILD TYPE=SWNET
*
pu_name  PU      ADDR=nn,          ADDRESS REQUIRED, BUT IGNORED X
          CPNAME=cp_name,        CONTROL POINT NAME          X
          IDBLK=nnn,             BLOCK ID                     X
          IDNUM=nnnnn,           PHYSICAL UNIT ID            X
.
.
.
          MAXOUT=7,              LINK LEVEL WINDOW           X
          MODETAB=mode_table,    LOGON MODE TABLE           X
          DLOGMOD=mode_entry,    LOGON MODE TABLE ENTRY     X
          VPACING=0,             NO PACING TO BOUNDARY NODE
*
lu_name  LU      LOCADDR=nn,      INDEPENDENT LU

```

Figure 33. VTAM Switched Major Node Guidelines: Calling Link Station (37xx)

A listening Communications Server link station requires the statements and values shown in Figure 34 on page 23.

```

.
.
.
node_name VBUILD TYPE=SWNET,MAXGRP=1,MAXNO=1
*
pu_name  PU      ADDR=nn,           ADDRESS REQUIRED, BUT IGNORED X
          CPNAME=cp_name,       CONTROL POINT NAME         X
          IDBLK=nnn,           BLOCK ID                   X
          IDNUM=nnnnn,         PHYSICAL UNIT ID          X
.
.
.
          MAXOUT=7,           LINK LEVEL WINDOW          X
          MODETAB=mode_table, LOGON MODE TABLE          X
          DLOGMOD=mode_entry, LOGON MODE TABLE ENTRY          X
          VPACING=0,           NO PACING TO BOUNDARY NODE
*
path_name PATH  DIALNO=xx044000nnnnnnnn,
          GRPNM=ncp_group,
*
lu_name      LU   LOCADDR=nn,     INDEPENDENT LU

```

Figure 34. VTAM Switched Major Node Guidelines: Listening Link Station (37xx)

The following describes the pertinent operands on the **VBUILD** statement:

TYPE Specify **SWNET** to indicate that the node is a switched major node.

MAXGRP

Specifies the number of unique path groups (**GROUP** names) that are defined in the **GRPNM** operand of all **PATH** statements within the switched major node. There is one unique path group in the switched major node guideline presented in Figure 34.

MAXNO

Specifies the number of unique token-ring addresses that are defined in the **DIALNO** operand of all **PATH** statements within the switched major node. There is one unique token-ring address in the switched major node guideline presented in Figure 34.

The following describes the pertinent operands on the **PU** statement.

Note: The **DLOGMOD**, **MODETAB**, and **VPACING** operands are **LU** operands, but are included here on the **PU** statement. VTAM definitions support a “sift-down effect” that allows you to code an operand on a higher-level statement so you do not need to code it on each lower-level statement for which the same value is desired. There is only one logical unit in the guideline presented here, so the sift-down effect is for demonstration only. If the **DLOGMOD**, **MODETAB**, and **VPACING** operands are specified on the **PU** statement, they do not have to be specified on any of the **LU** statements.

ADDR

Specifies the address of the physical unit. Note that this operand is required, but ignored.

CPNAME (optional)

Identifies the control point. The value specified for **CPNAME** must match the second part of the **Fully qualified CP name** field on the **Basic** tab of the Define the Node notebook (Figure 41 on page 31). By convention, the **CPNAME** value usually matches the **PU** name.

Either the **CPNAME** operand or both the **IDBLK** and the **IDNUM** operands are required. **CPNAME** can only be used with PU type 2.1 nodes, such as Communications Server for NT.

IDBLK (optional)

Specifies a 3–digit hexadecimal string that identifies the product type in a SNA network. The combined values of the **IDBLK** and **IDNUM** operands must match the **Local Node ID** value on the **Basic** tab of the Define the Node notebook (Figure 41 on page 31).

Either the **CPNAME** operand or both the **IDBLK** and the **IDNUM** operands are required.

IDNUM (optional)

Specifies a 5–digit hexadecimal string that identifies a physical unit. The combined values of the **IDBLK** and **IDNUM** operands must match the **Local Node ID** value on the **Basic** tab of the Define the Node notebook (Figure 41 on page 31).

Either the **CPNAME** operand or both the **IDBLK** and the **IDNUM** operands are required.

MAXDATA (optional)

Specifies the maximum amount of data (in bytes) that the physical unit can receive in one path information unit (PIU). This amount includes the transmission header (TH) and the request/response header (RH).

Note that **MAXDATA** is ignored for type 2.1 nodes, such as Communications Server for NT, that are attached through an NCP with peripheral node type 2.1 support. The type 2.1 node indicates the maximum path information unit (PIU) size when the connection is established. The value that SNA Server/6000 supplies can be configured using the **Maximum PIU size** field on the **Advanced** tab of the Define a LAN Device notebook (Figure 47 on page 36).

MAXOUT

Specifies the maximum number of PIUs that are sent to the physical unit before waiting for a response from that physical unit. For optimum performance, the **MAXOUT** value must be equal to, or greater than, the **Receive window count** field in the **Advanced** tab of the Define a LAN Device notebook (Figure 47 on page 36). The **Receive window count** field specifies how many frames are received by the link station before Communications Server for NT sends an acknowledgement.

MAXPATH (optional)

Specifies the number of dial-out paths to the physical unit. Figure 34 on page 23 shows one dial-out path.

MODETAB

Specifies the name of the logon mode table that contains entries that describe session characteristics.

DLOGMOD

Specifies the name of the logon mode table entry that describes session characteristics.

VPACING

Determines how VTAM paces the flow of the data from VTAM to the boundary node to which the logical unit is connected. In this configuration, the boundary node is the communication controller. A value of zero means

that no pacing is performed for sessions with the logical unit, or that the largest possible pacing is used if the session is adaptively paced.

The following describes the pertinent operands on the **PATH** statement:

DIALNO=xx044000nnnnnnnnn (optional)

This parameter value has three parts:

- xx** Specifies the token-ring interface coupler (TIC) number in the communication controller.
- 04** Specifies the service access point (SAP). This value must always be 04.

4000nnnnnnnnn

Specifies the token-ring address of the token-ring adapter in the NT workstation. Although token-ring addresses include twelve hexadecimal digits, the VTAM **DIALNO** operand only accepts digits in the range 0-9. Therefore, an alternate token-ring address that contains only digits in the range 0-9 must be assigned to the token-ring adapter in the NT workstation.

GRPNM

Refers to a logical **GROUP** statement in the NCP definitions.

The following describes the pertinent operands on the **LU** statement:

LOCADDR

LOCADDR=0 specifies that this logical unit is an independent logical unit. An SSCP-LU session does not have to be established prior to an LU-LU session with an independent logical unit. For independent logical units, do *not* select **Dependent LU** on the **Basic** tab of the Define a Local LU 6.2 notebook (Figure 61 on page 50).

SSCPFM

The **SSCPFM** operand indicates the type of request units (RUs) that the logical unit supports over its SSCP-LU session. The guidelines illustrated for both the calling link station and the listening link station use an independent logical unit. Therefore, the **SSCPFM** operand is not specified. If you require a dependent logical unit, specify **SSCPFM=USSCS**.

Figure 35 on page 26 and Figure 36 on page 26 show examples for a calling link station.

```

.
.
.
PSFDC4SW  VBUILD TYPE=SWNET
*
DEVTESTB  PU      ADDR=04,          ADDRESS REQUIRED, BUT IGNORED X
           CPNAME=DEVTESTB,        CONTROL POINT NAME         X
.
.
.
           MAXDATA=1033,          MAXIMUM PIU SIZE           X
           MODETAB=MODEIBM,        LOGON MODE TABLE         X
           DLOGMOD=IBM3820T,       LOGON MODE TABLE ENTRY   X
           VPACING=0,              NO PACING TO BOUNDARY MODE
*
           PATH  DIALNO=400059550067, TOKEN-RING ADAPTER ADDRESS X
           GRPNM=PSFDC461          NO PACING TO BOUNDARY NODE
*
PSFDC4LU  LU      LOCADDR=0,        INDEPENDENT LU

```

Figure 35. VTAM Switched Major Node Example with CPNAME (37xx)

```

.
.
.
PSFDC4SW  VBUILD TYPE=SWNET
*
DEVTESTB  PU      ADDR=04,          ADDRESS REQUIRED, BUT IGNORED X
           IDBLK=05D,              BLOCK ID                   X
           IDNUM=C021B,            PHYSICAL UNIT ID          X
.
.
.
           MAXDATA=1033,          MAXIMUM PIU SIZE           X
           MODETAB=MODEIBM,        LOGON MODE TABLE         X
           DLOGMOD=IBM3820T,       LOGON MODE TABLE ENTRY   X
           VPACING=0,              NO PACING TO BOUNDARY MODE
*
           PATH  DIALNO=400059550067, TOKEN-RING ADAPTER ADDRESS X
           GRPNM=PSFDC461          NO PACING TO BOUNDARY NODE
*
PSFDC4LU  LU      LOCADDR=0,        INDEPENDENT LU

```

Figure 36. VTAM Switched Major Node Example with IDBLK and IDNUM (37xx)

Defining the Network Control Program (NCP)

The keywords and values for the Network Control Program (NCP) definitions are illustrated in Figure 37 on page 27 and described below.

The Network Control Program (NCP) definitions include a physical group and a logical group. The **PORTADD** keyword on the **LINE** statement and the **PHYPORT** keyword on the logical **GROUP** statement both refer to the same port number.

.				
.				
.				
<i>pgroup_name</i>	GROUP	ECLTYPE=PHYSICAL,	PHYSICAL GROUP	X
		ISTATUS=ACTIVE,	INITIAL STATUS	X
<i>line_name</i>	LINE	ADDRESS=(<i>line_number</i>,FULL),	LINE NUM AND DATA TRANS MODE	X
		LOCADD=4000nnnnnnnn,	TOKEN RING ADDRESS FOR LINE	X
.				
.				
.				
		MAXTSL=nnnn,	MAXIMUM BYTES OF DATA	X
		PORTADD=port_number,	PORT ADDRESS	X
		RVCBUFC=4095,	BUFFER CAPACITY	X
<i>pu_name</i>	PU			
<i>lu_name</i>	LU	ISTATUS=INACTIVE,	INITIAL STATUS	X
*				
<i>lgroup_name</i>	GROUP	ECLTYPE=LOGICAL,	LOGICAL GROUP	X
		ISTATUS=ACTIVE,	INITIAL STATUS	X
		AUTOGEN=n,	# OF LINE AND PU PAIRS GENNED	X
		CALL=INOUT,	CALL IN OR OUT	X
		PHYPORT=port_number	CORRELATES WITH PORTADD	
*				

Figure 37. Network Control Program Definition Guidelines (37xx)

The following describes the pertinent keywords on the **LINE** statement:

ADDRESS

Specifies the relative line number and data transfer mode for the line.

LOCADD

Indicates the token-ring address that the token-ring interface coupler (TIC) uses.

MAXTSL

Specifies the maximum amount of data (in bytes) that can be transmitted over the token-ring connection. Note that this amount includes both the transmission header (TH) and the request/response header (RH). **MAXTSL** must be greater than or equal to the maximum size of a path information unit (PIU).

PORTADD

Assigns a port number to the physical line.

RVCBUFC

Specifies the NCP/Token-Ring interconnection (NTRI) buffer capacity for receiving data from a telecommunication link during one data transfer. The value must be greater than or equal to the maximum size of a path information unit (PIU)

The following describes the pertinent keywords on the logical **GROUP** statement:

AUTOGEN

Specifies how many **LINE** and **PU** statements the NCP/EP definition facility (NDF) should automatically add to this group.

CALL

Specifies whether the link station in the communication controller should call out to the remote link station, or whether the remote link station should call into the communication controller link station. Specify **CALL=INOUT**, which enables either calling or listening link stations to be configured in Communications Server for NT. **CALL** is a **LINE** statement operand that sifts down to each of the automatically-generated **LINE** statements.

PHYPORT

Associates the logical lines in this group with a particular physical line. The **PHYPORT** value must match the **PORTADD** value on the **LINE** statement for the physical line.

Figure 38 shows an example.

```
.
.
.
G31P      GROUP  ECLTYPE=PHYSICAL,          PHYSICAL GROUP          X
           ISTATUS=ACTIVE,                INITIAL STATUS           X
LN31      LINE   ADDRESS=(1088,FULL),       LINE NUM AND DATA TRANS X
           LOCADD=400023101088,           TOKEN RING ADDRESS FOR  X
.
.
.
           MAXTSL=1033,                    MAXIMUM BYTES OF DATA  X
           PORTADD=1,                      PORT ADDRESS             X
           RVCBUFC=4095,                   BUFFER CAPACITY         X
PU31      PU
LU31      LU    ISTATUS=INACTIVE,          INITIAL STATUS           X
*
G31L      GROUP  ECLTYPE=LOGICAL,          LOGICAL GROUP           X
           ISTATUS=ACTIVE,                INITIAL STATUS           X
           AUTOGEN=8,                     # OF LINE AND PU PAIRS  X
           CALL=INOUT,                    CALL IN OR OUT          X
           PHYPORT=1                      CORRELATES WITH PORTADD
*

```

Figure 38. Network Control Program Definition Examples (37xx)

Specifying Communications Server for NT Configuration Profiles

This section contains instructions and guidelines for configuring the Communications Server for NT profiles. It includes the following tasks:

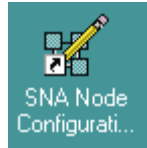
- "Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles"
- "37xx Node Setup" on page 30
- "37xx Device Configuration" on page 34
- "Enabling SNA API Clients for 37xx" on page 39
- "37xx Peer Connections Configuration" on page 41
- "Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for 37xx" on page 46
- "Local LU 6.2 Configuration for 37xx" on page 49
- "Mode Configuration for 37xx" on page 52
- "Transaction Program Configuration for 37xx" on page 55

Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles

Use the following procedure to access the IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT applications that are described in "What is IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT?" on page 2.

Note that this procedure assumes that you have dragged the icons for **SNA Node Configuration** and **SNA Node Operations** to your desktop after they were created at installation.

1. From your NT desktop view, double-click the **SNA Node Configuration** icon that resides on your desktop:



2. At the Welcome to Communications Server Configuration! pop-up window, select the **New** button for a new configuration) and click the **Next>** button. Communications Server creates an *xxx.acg* file (where *xxx* represents the file name you select in this window. This *xxx.acg* file resides in the C:\IBMCS\private directory, where C is the drive where you installed IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT. For users migrating from PSF Direct on an OS/2® operating system, this *xxx.acg* file is the equivalent of the OS/2 Communications Manager Communications Server *xxx.ndf* file.

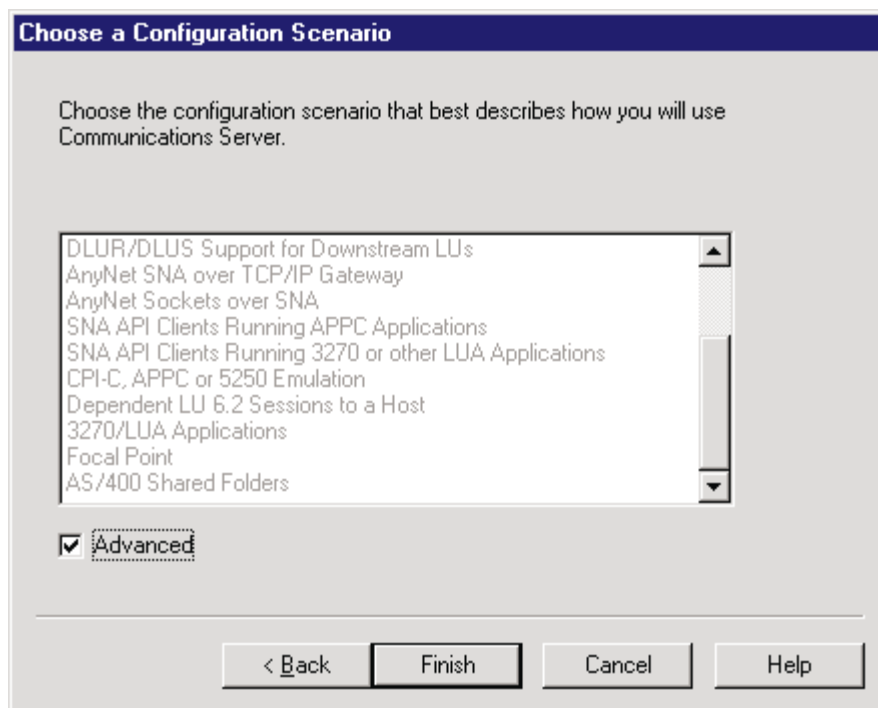


Figure 39. Choose a Configuration Scenario Window (37xx)

3. In the Choose a Configuration Scenario window (Figure 39), check the **Advanced** box, which causes the display to turn gray. Click the **Finish** button.
4. From the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 40 on page 30), you are ready to begin configuring your system for PSF Direct.

37xx Node Setup

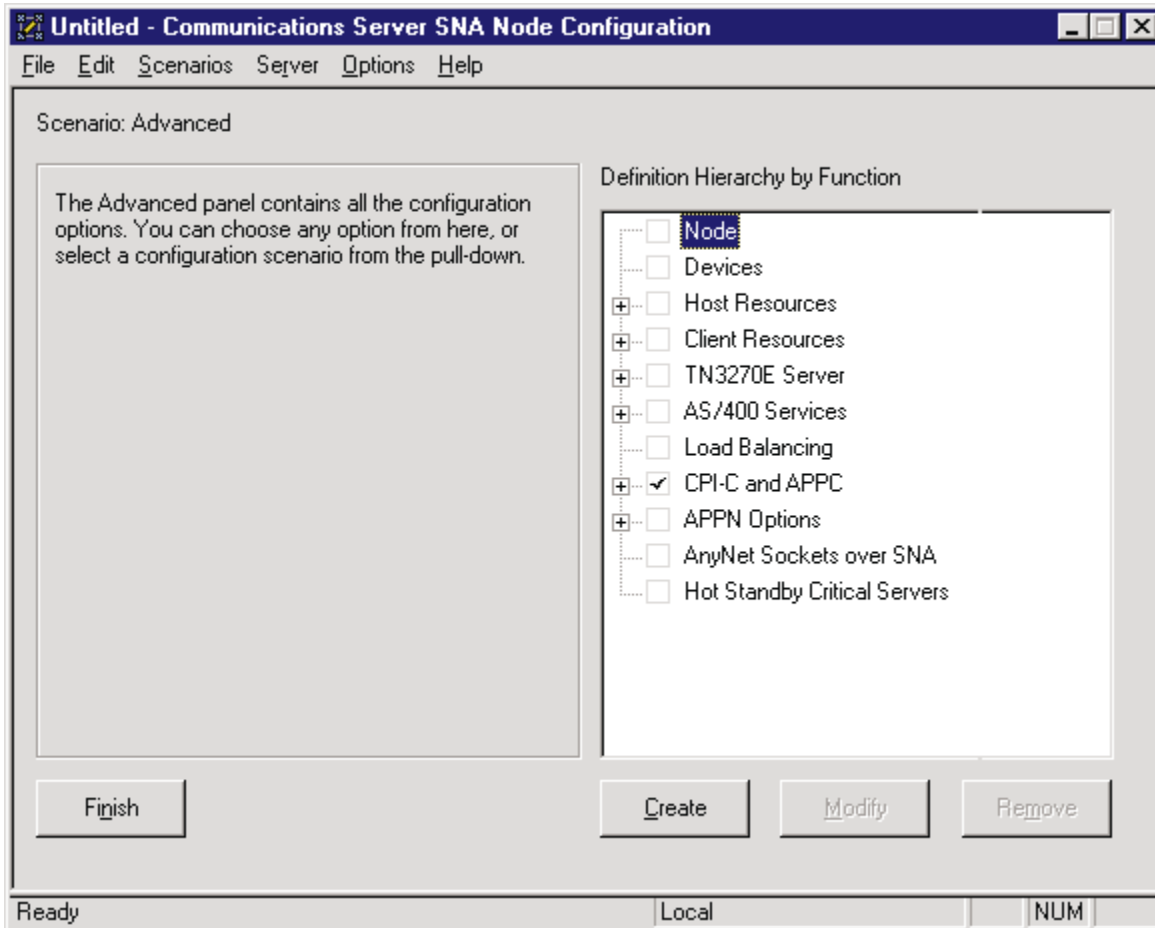


Figure 40. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Node (37xx)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 40), right-click the **Node** box and select the **Create** option. The Define the Node notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

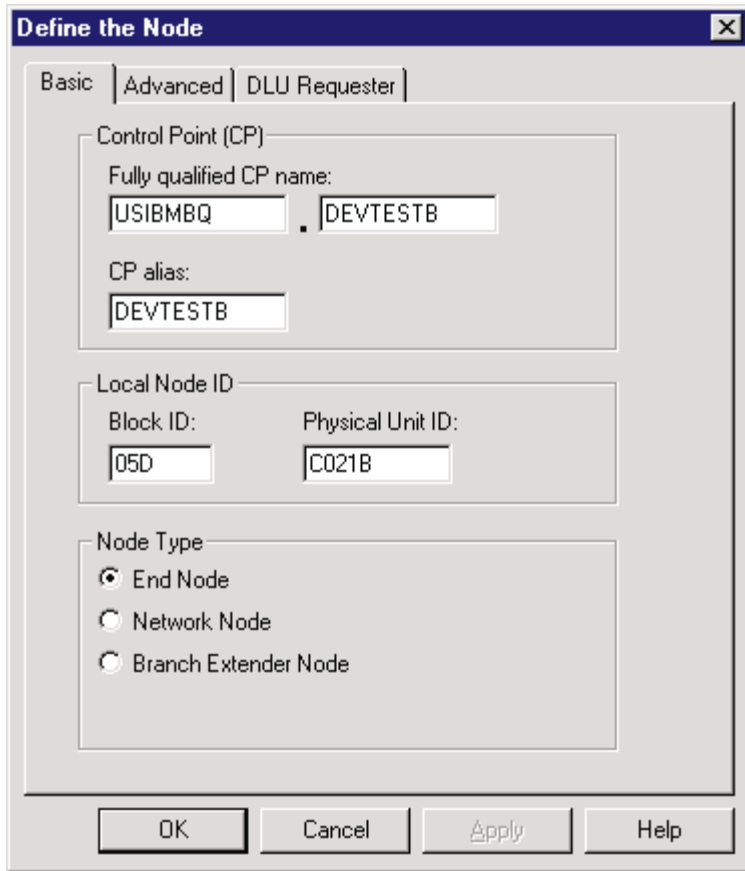


Figure 41. Define the Node Notebook: Basic Tab (37xx)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 41), specify values for the following parameters:

Fully qualified Control Point (CP) name

Specifies the name of the component that manages the resources of that node. If the **CPNAME** operand is used in the VTAM switched major node **PU** statement (see “Specifying the VTAM Switched Major Node” on page 22), then the second part of this value must match the **CPNAME** operand. By convention, the **CPNAME** is usually the same as the **PU** name.

CP alias

Specifies an alternative name for the CP. Local applications can use this name, instead of the **Fully qualified Control Point (CP) name**, to refer to the local CP.

Local Node ID

Specifies both the **Block ID** and the **Physical Unit ID**. The **Block ID** is a 3-digit hexadecimal string that identifies the product type in an SNA network. The **Physical Unit ID** is a 5-digit hexadecimal string that identifies a physical unit (PU).

If the **IDBLK** and **IDNUM** operands are used in the VTAM switched major node **PU** statement (see “Specifying the VTAM Switched Major Node” on page 22), then the **Local Node ID** value must match the combined **IDBLK** and **IDNUM** operands. The **IDBLK** operand is normally 071 for Communications Server for NT.

If you are migrating from an AIX[®] operating system, **Local Node ID** matches the **XID Node ID** parameter.

Node Type

Specifies the type of node. Take the default value, **End node**.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system, **Node Type** matches the **Control Point Type** parameter.

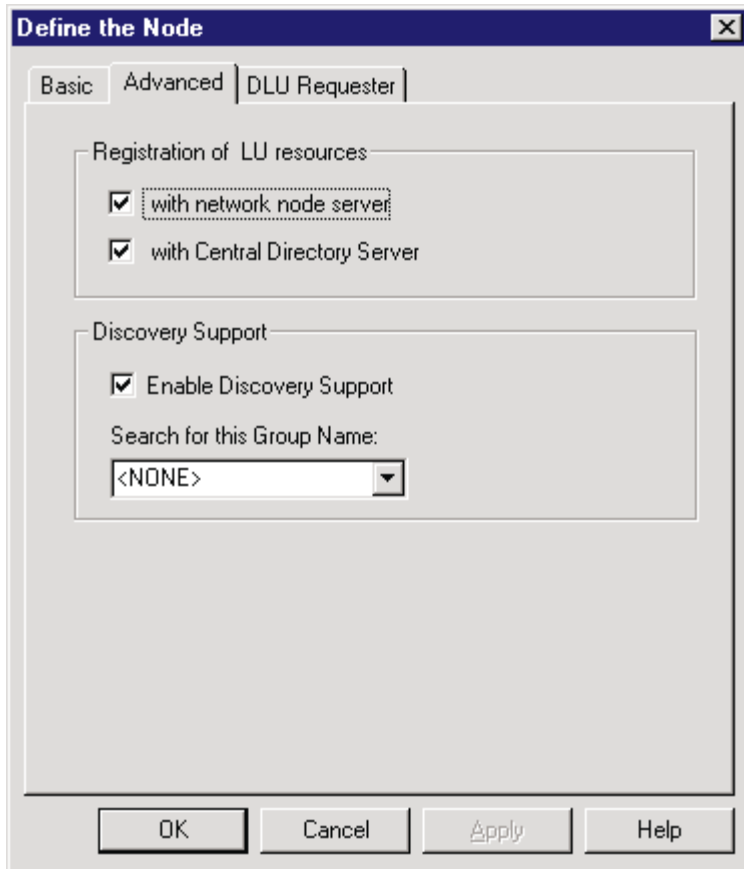


Figure 42. Define the Node Notebook: Advanced Tab (37xx)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 42), specify values for the following parameters:

Registration of LU resources

Specifies that directory information about the local logical units (LUs) 6.2 is sent to the server. As the example shows, check both the **Network node server** and the **Central Directory Server**.

Discovery Support

Specifies a LAN address resolution protocol that can be used to find another node that matches given search values. Adjust the search parameter to search for APPN[®] network nodes, nodes that provide SNA boundary function, or AS/400s. Select the check box to enable discovery support.

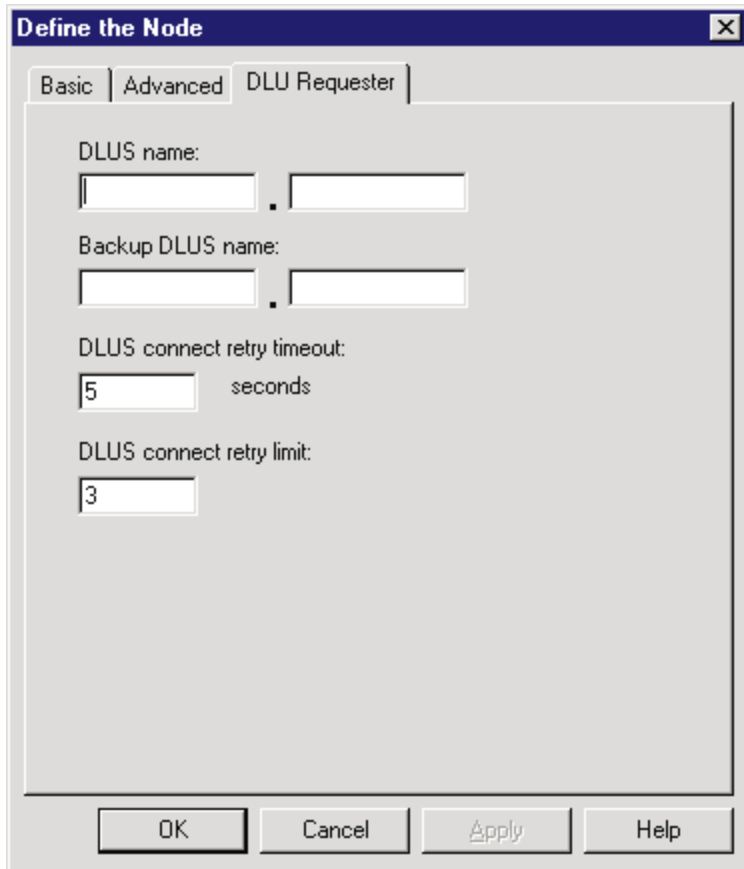


Figure 43. Define the Node Notebook: DLU Requester Tab (37xx)

On the **DLU Requester** tab (Figure 43), accept the default values for the following parameters:

DLUS connect retry timeout

Specifies the time between attempts to reconnect a dependent logical unit server (DLUS). This parameter is based on the **DLUS connect retry limit** parameter. Take the default of 5.

DLUS connect retry limit

Specifies the maximum number of attempts to reconnect a DLUS without receiving an acknowledgment in the time set by the **DLUS connect retry timeout** parameter. Take the default of 3.

Click **OK** to save these configuration settings.

37xx Device Configuration

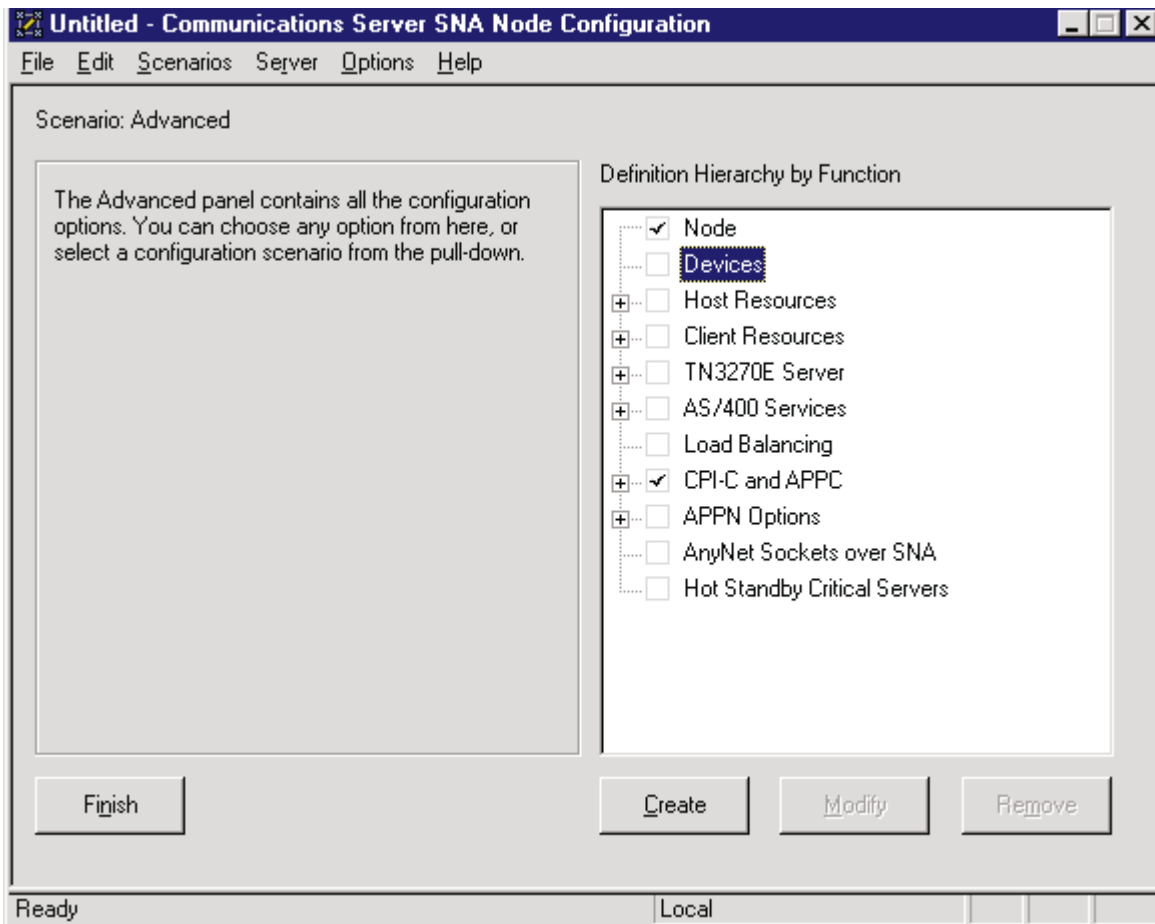


Figure 44. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Devices (37xx)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 44), right-click the **Devices** box and select the **Create** option. The Device Type pop-up window (Figure 45) opens.

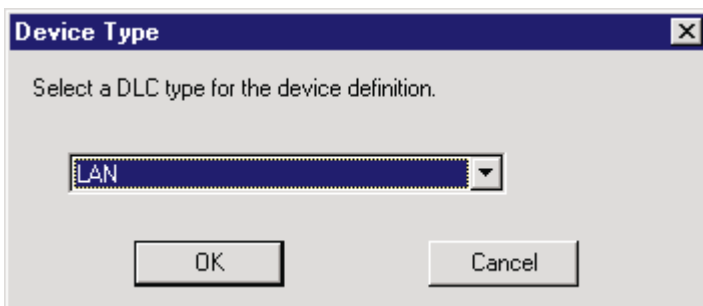


Figure 45. Device Type Window (37xx)

Select **LAN** as your data link control (DLC) type. A DLC is a set of rules that nodes on a data link (such as an SDLC link or a token ring) use to accomplish an orderly exchange of information.

Click **OK** to save this configuration setting.

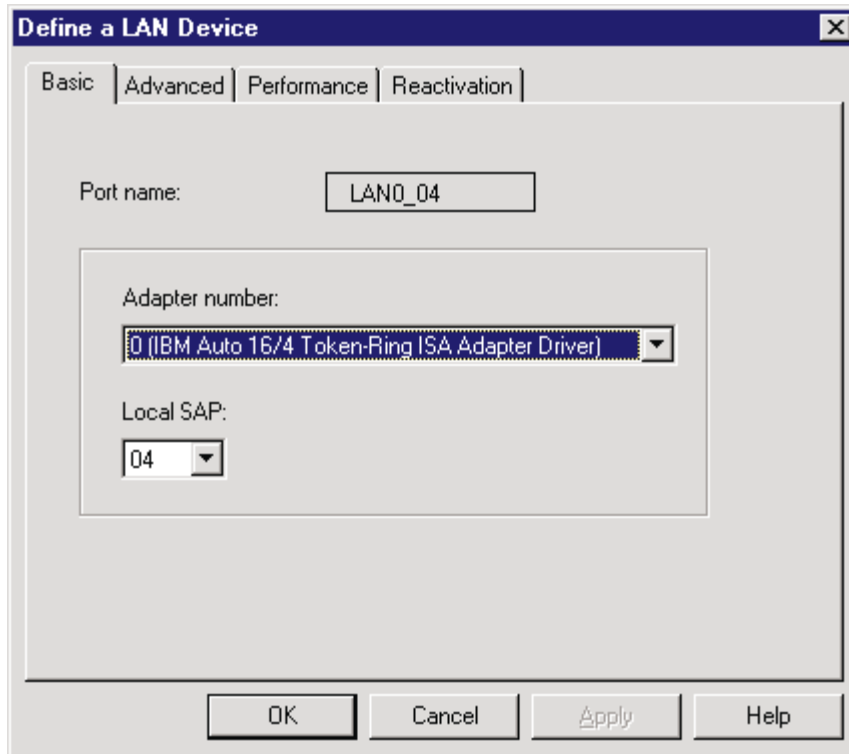


Figure 46. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Basic Tab (37xx)

On the **Basic** tab of the Define a LAN Device notebook (Figure 46), supply the following values:

Port name

Specifies the port name of the physical connection to the link hardware. This value consists of the word **LAN**, the adapter number, and the local SAP number, with an underscore between the adapter number and the local SAP number. Accept the value that is displayed.

Adapter number

Specifies a value from 0 to 7 that uniquely identifies this adapter. You may have both token-ring and ethernet adapters defined at your installation. Ensure that you select the proper token-ring LAN adapter.

Local SAP

Specifies the local service access point (SAP) number of the local port as a hexadecimal value from 04 through FC. Note that this number must be a multiple of four. Take the default of 04.

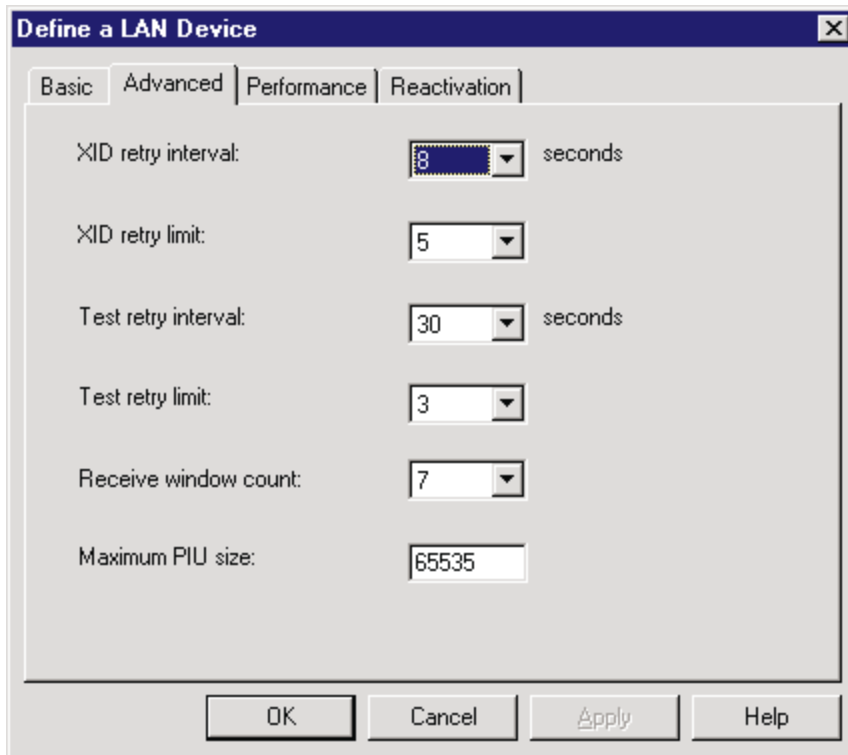


Figure 47. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Advanced Tab (37xx)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 47), supply the following values:

XID retry interval

Specifies the time the link station waits for a reply to a previous **XID** command before resending that command. Specify 8. If the link station is a calling link station, this value causes it to try to establish a link connection with the 37xx communication controller every 8 seconds, until a link connection can be established. If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, this parameter replaces the **Response Timeout** parameter from the **Token-Ring SNA DLC** profile.

XID retry limit

Specifies the maximum number of times an **XID** command will be retransmitted before Communications Server for NT presumes that the link is broken and stops retrying. Specify 5. The previous parameter defines the interval between the attempts. If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, this parameter replaces the **XID Retransmit count** parameter from the **Token-Ring SNA DLC** profile.

Test retry interval

Specifies the time between attempts to find the adjacent link station on the LAN. This parameter is needed to establish communication with the network and does not necessarily relate to VTAM or the PSF host system. The number of times an **XID** is sent is based on the configured **XID retry limit**.

Test retry limit

Specifies the number of times Communications Server attempts to find the adjacent link station on the LAN. Specify a value from 3 to 30.

Receive window count

Specifies a value that should be equal to the **MAXOUT** value in the VTAM

switched major node **PU** statement. The **Receive window count** defines the size of the link-level window. It specifies the maximum number of frames to receive before sending a link-level acknowledgement. The VTAM **PU MAXOUT** value indicates the number of frames the 37xx communication controller sends before waiting for a link-level acknowledgement. If the **MAXOUT** operand is less than the **Receive window count** field, extremely poor throughput can result. The default **MAXOUT** value is 1. The default **Receive window count** value is 8. You must adjust these defaults to produce acceptable throughput.

Maximum PIU size

Specifies a value between 99 and 65535 bytes that represents the maximum number of bytes in the data buffer that SNA sessions use for this link. If the **Maximum PIU size** exceeds the frame size supported by your local device driver, the value will be reduced to match the frame size.

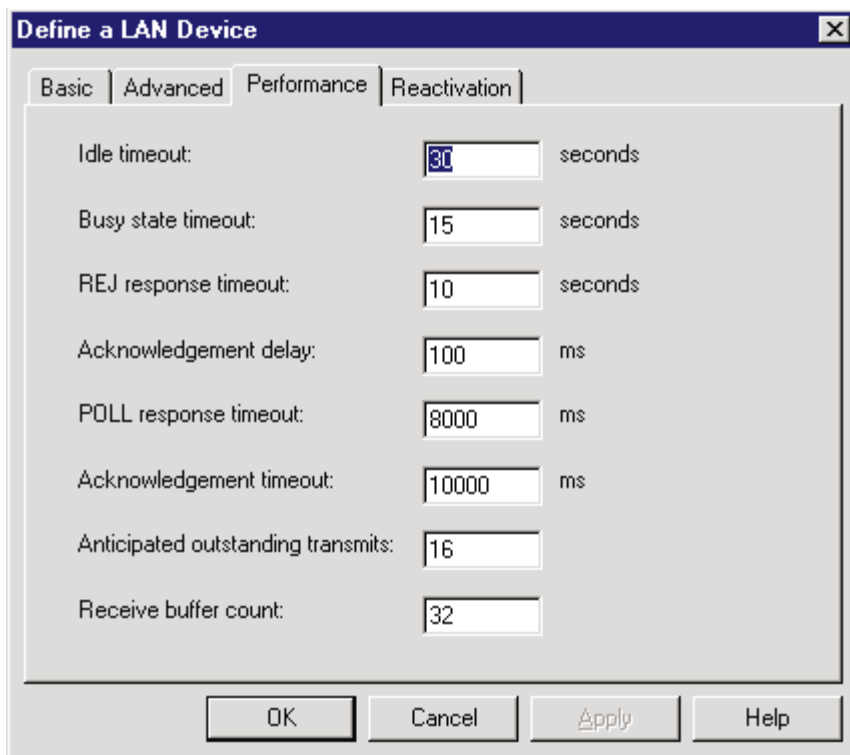


Figure 48. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Performance Tab (37xx)

On the **Performance** tab (Figure 48), accept the default values.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, see Table 1 on page 38 for a map of the parameters on the **Performance** tab to the corresponding AIX values.

Table 1. Windows NT and AIX Parameters for LAN Device Performance (37xx)

Windows NT Parameter	AIX Parameter
Idle timeout	Inactivity time-out
Busy state timeout	n/a
Acknowledgement delay	n/a
Acknowledgement timeout	Acknowledgement timeout
POLL response timeout	n/a
Anticipated outstanding transmits	Transmit window count
Receive buffer count	n/a

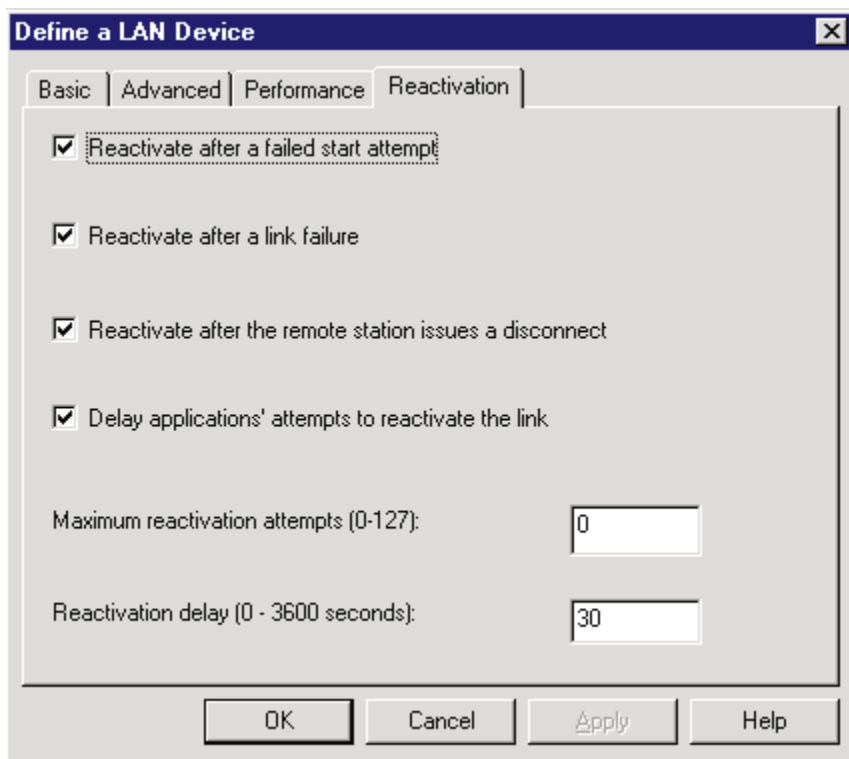


Figure 49. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Reactivation Tab (37xx)

On the **Reactivation** tab (Figure 49), accept the default values.

Click **OK** to save these configuration settings.

Enabling SNA API Clients for 37xx

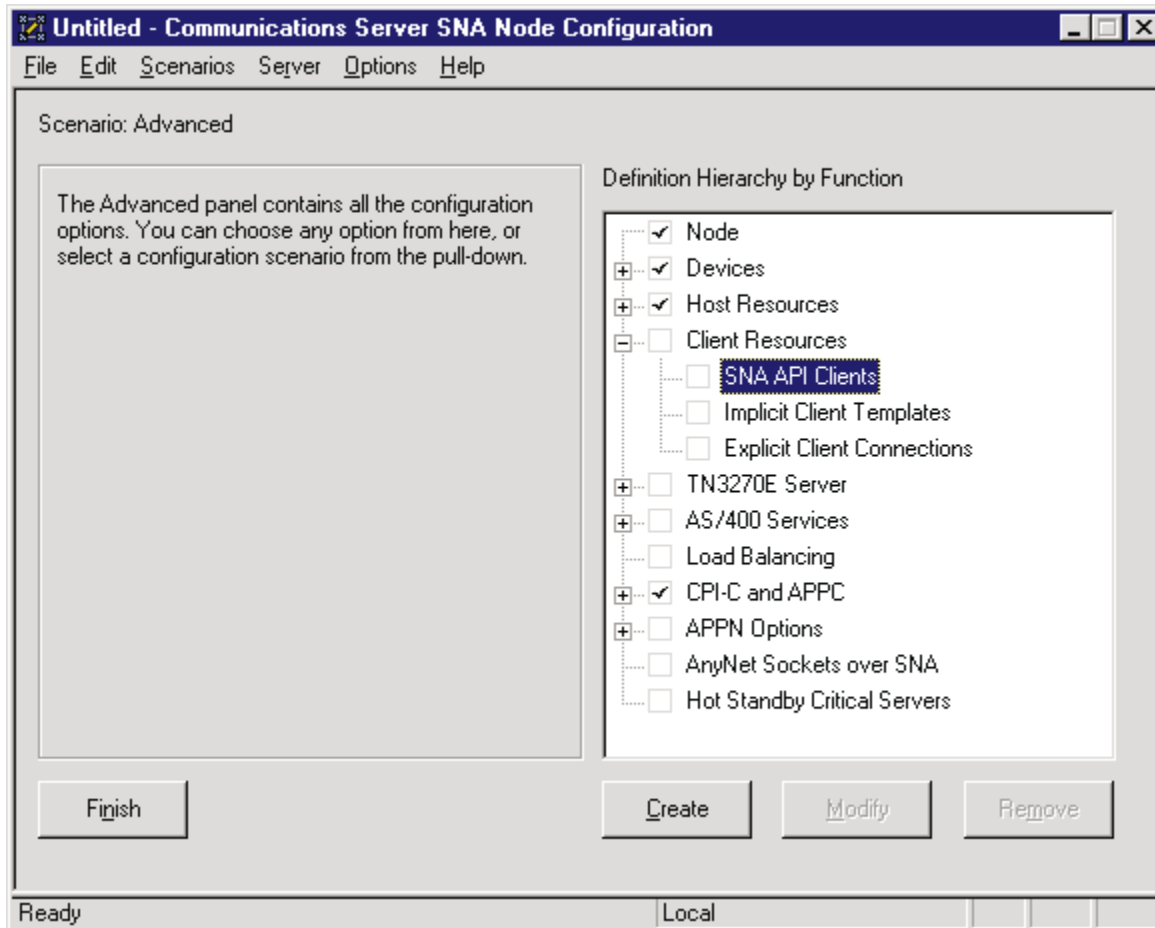


Figure 50. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: SNA API Clients (37xx)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 50), right-click the **Client Resources** box, then the **SNA API Clients** box. The SNA Clients window opens.

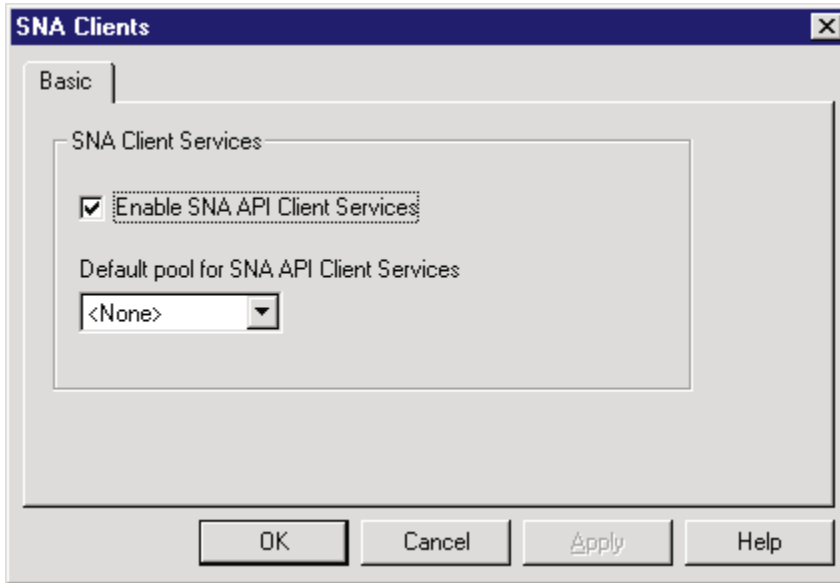


Figure 51. SNA Clients Window (37xx)

In the SNA Clients window (Figure 51), check the **Enable SNA API Client Services** box.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

37xx Peer Connections Configuration

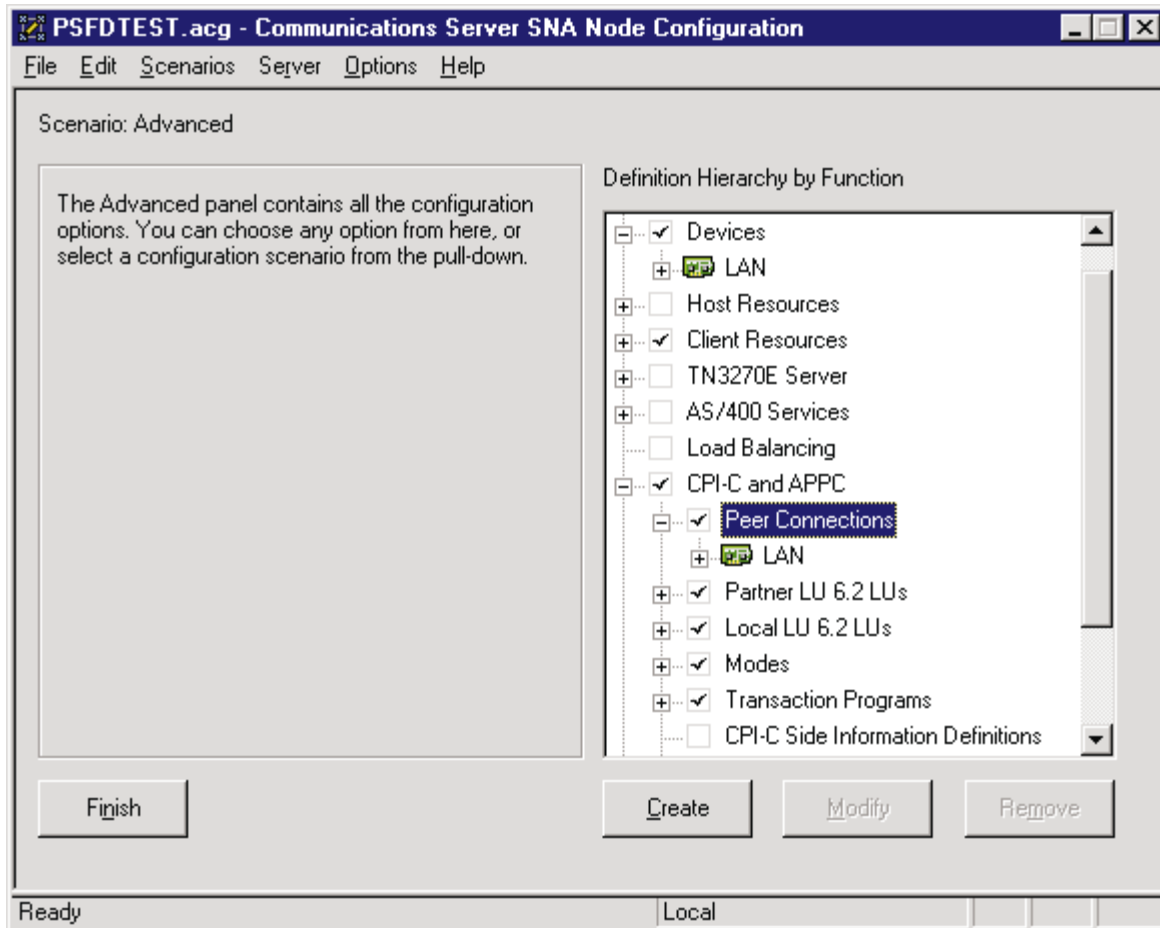


Figure 52. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Peer Connections (37xx)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 52), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Peer Connections** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a LAN Connection notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

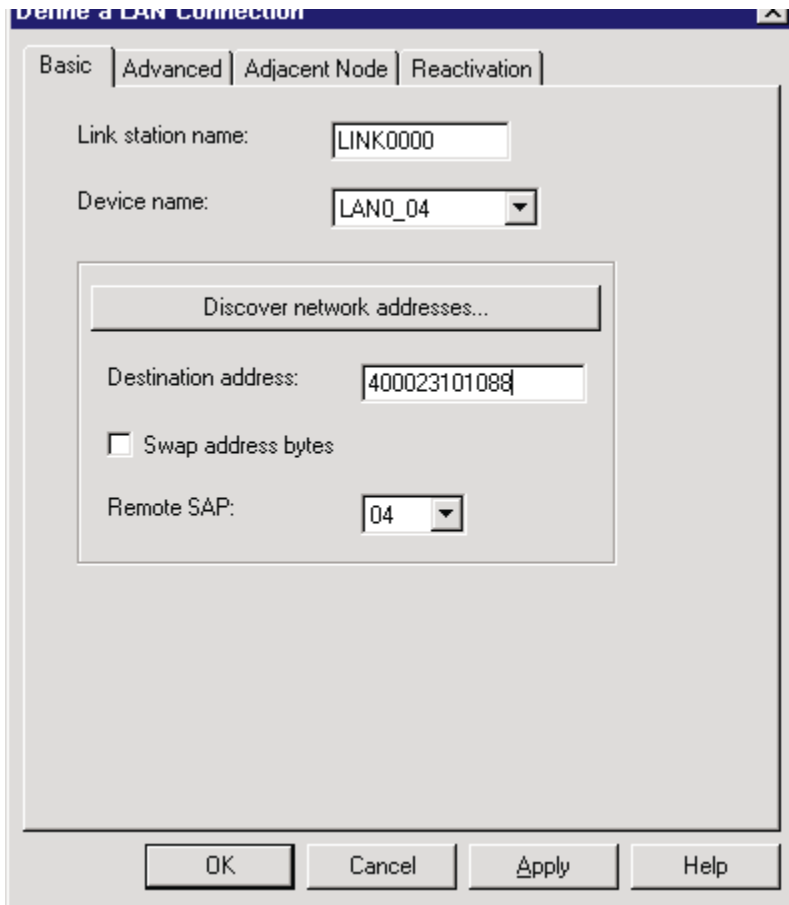


Figure 53. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Basic Tab (37xx)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 53), supply the following values:

Link station name

Specifies a 1- to 8-byte character string that is used to identify a connection. The contents of this field will vary, depending on the number of links at your installation.

Device name

Specifies the name of the port associated with this link station. This value must match the **Port name** value specified on the **Basic** tab of the Define a LAN Device notebook (Figure 46 on page 35).

Destination address

Specifies a 12-character hexadecimal string that specifies the address to activate a connection to the destination. This value must be specified so the NT system can search for and call the PSF host program.

Swap address bytes

Check this box to bit-swap the address in the **Destination address** field. You may need to select this check box if the next link in the network is an Ethernet link. If not, you can use the default (unchecked).

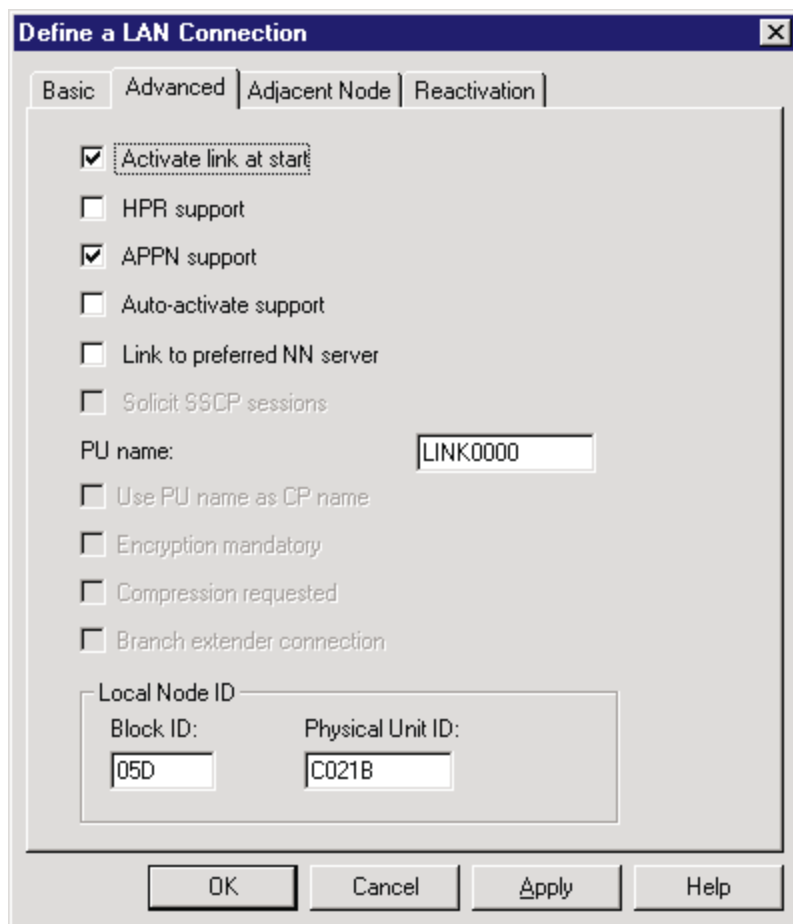


Figure 54. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Advanced Tab (37xx)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 54), supply the following values:

Activate link at start

Specifies that you will use the link reactivation values specified in the port (device) link reactivation definition. Ensure that you select this check box.

APPN support

Specifies whether this connection supports CP-CP sessions. Select the check box to specify APPN support.

PU name

Specifies the physical unit (PU) name. This is the name of the component that manages and monitors the resources (such as attached links and adjacent link station) associated with a node. The default PU name is automatically created. You can change this definition.

Block ID

Identifies the product type in an SNA network.

Physical Unit ID

Identifies the physical unit (PU) or component that manages and monitors the resources (such as attached links and adjacent link stations) associated with a node.

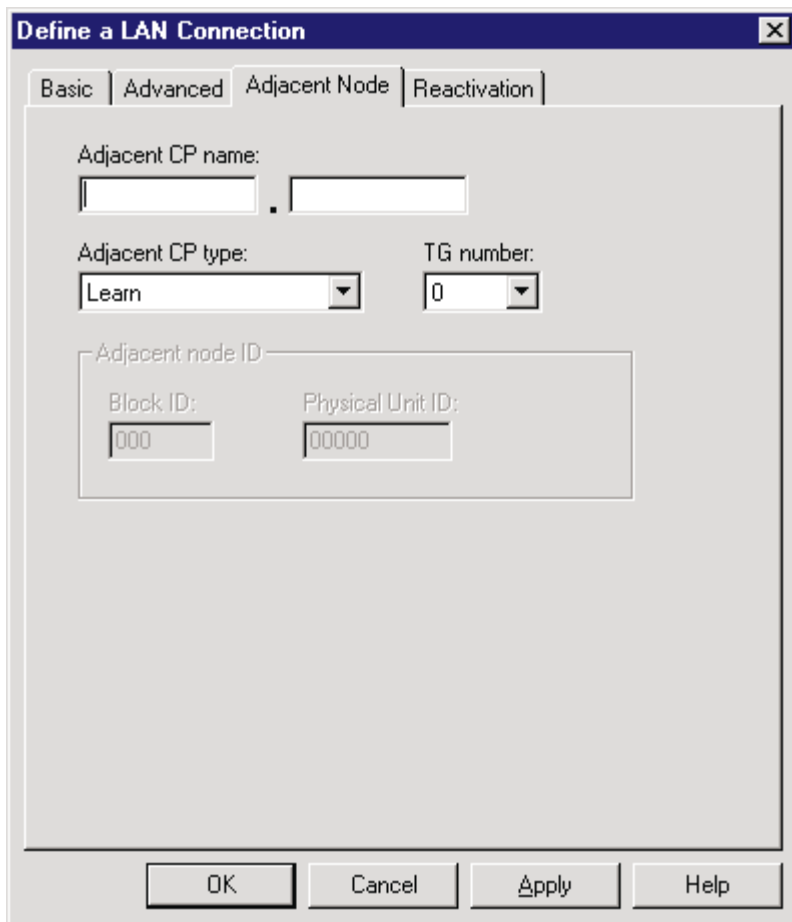


Figure 55. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Adjacent Node Tab (37xx)

On the **Adjacent Node** tab (Figure 55), accept the default values.

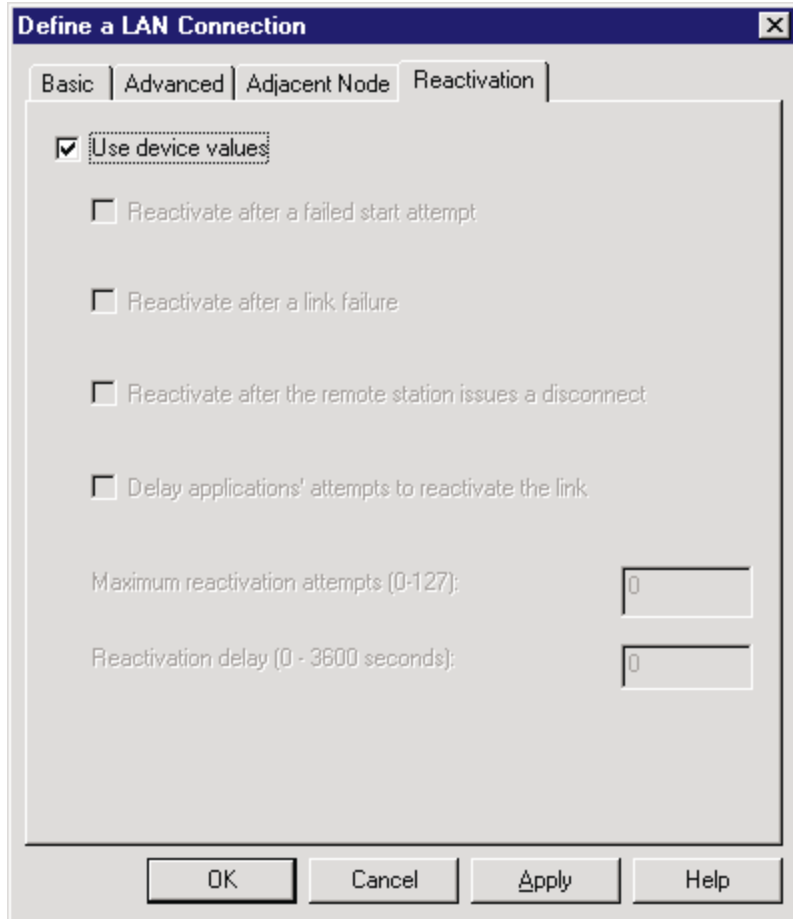


Figure 56. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Reactivation Tab (37xx)

On the **Reactivation** tab (Figure 56), accept the default values.

Note that after you select **OK**, a pop-up window appears asking:
Do you want to automatically route all APPC sessions over this connection?

You must reply yes before the configuration is accepted.

Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for 37xx

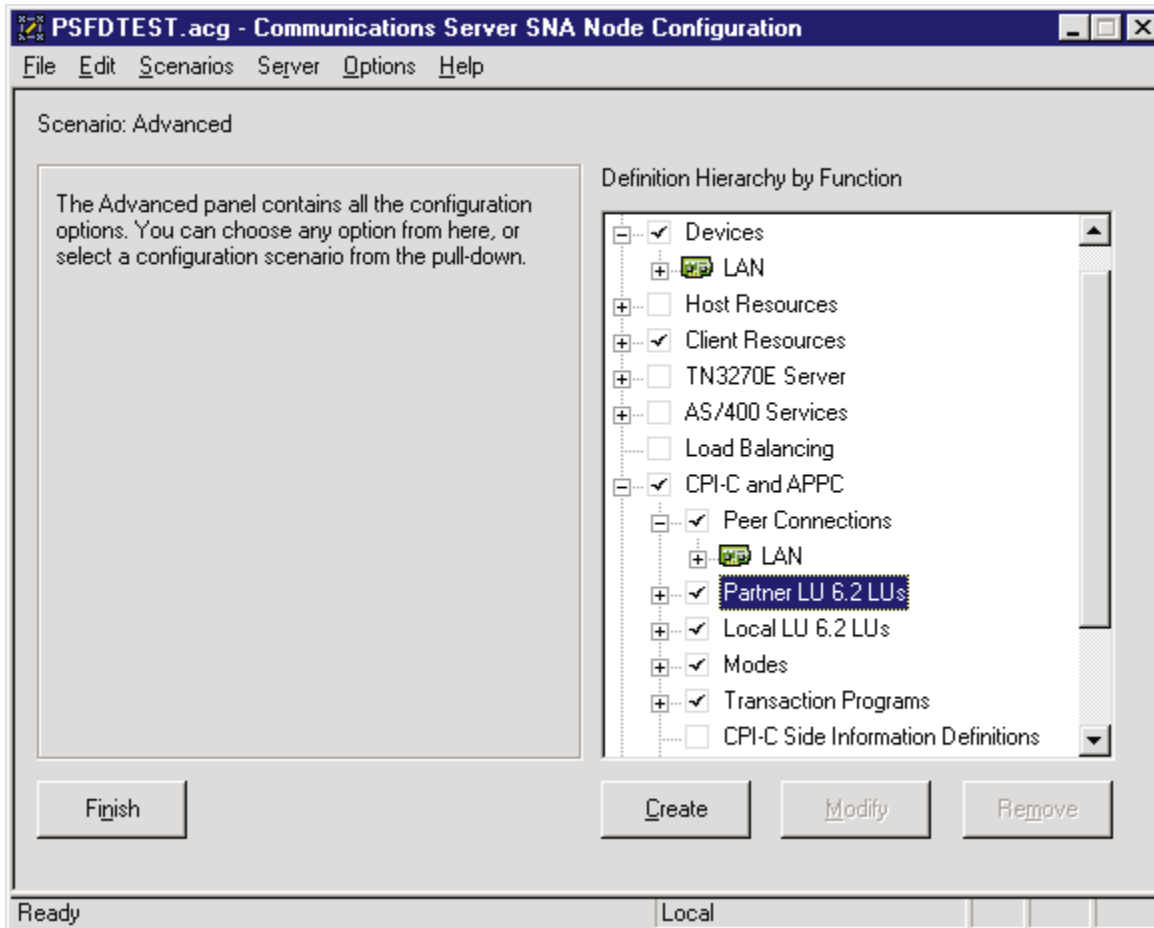


Figure 57. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Partner LU 6.2 LUs (37xx)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 57), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Partner LU 6.2 LUs** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

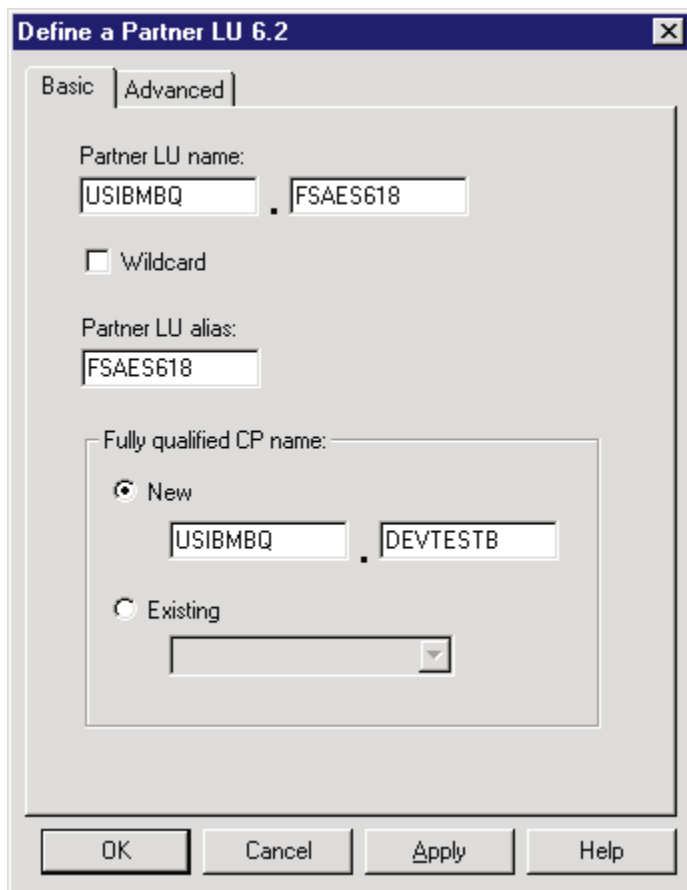


Figure 58. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Basic Tab (37xx)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 58), supply the following values:

Partner LU name

Specifies the network identifier of the network in which the host PSF program resides (followed by a period), and the logical unit name used by the host PSF program. The network identifier portion must match the **NETID** value in the VTAM start option list (ATCSTRxx) (see “Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx)” on page 19). The logical unit name portion must match the **APPLID** parameter in one of these places:

- The PSF for OS/390 **PRINTDEV** statement
- The PSF/VSE **PRINTDEV** statement
- The PSF/VM **OPTIONS PDM** file

That **APPLID** parameter on the PSF host system must also match an **APPL** statement in a VTAM application program major node. (Do not check the **Wildcard** check box.)

Partner LU alias

Specifies the alternate name for the partner LU. Local applications can use this name, instead of the fully qualified LU name, to refer to the partner LU. While you can choose any meaningful value, IBM recommends specifying the second qualifier of the **Partner LU name**.

Fully qualified CP name

Select: **New** to enter the fully qualified CP name of the partner LU’s

owning control point. Communications Server for NT requires this field. Infoprint Manager uses this field as the target for any alerts sent by the PSF Direct program.

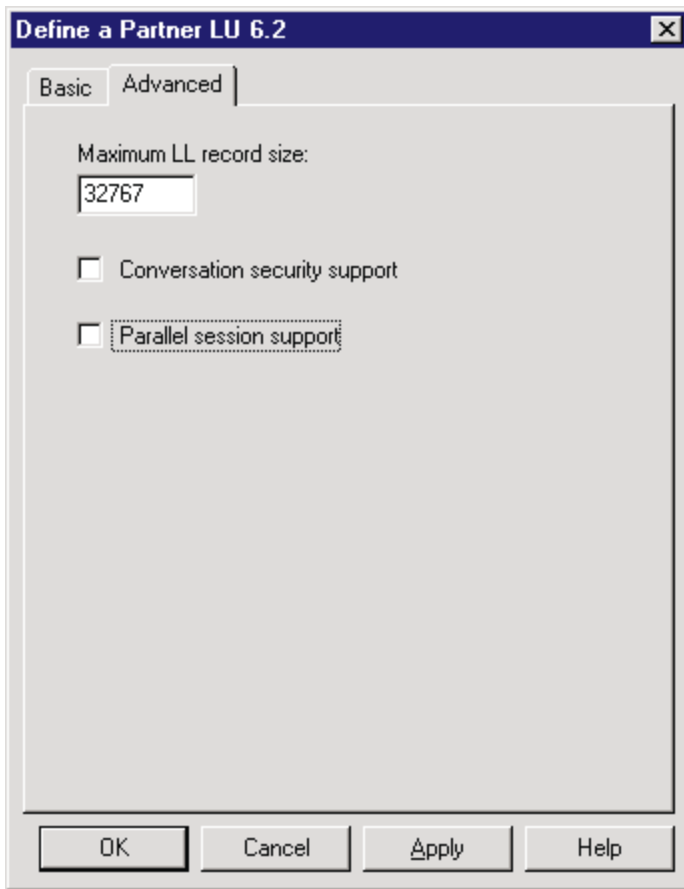


Figure 59. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Advanced Tab (37xx)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 59), supply the following values:

Maximum LL record size

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the maximum size of the logical record in the data stream for basic conversations. Specify the default (32767), because the PSF host program and the PSF Direct host receiver should both be able to handle the full range.

Conversation security support

Specifies that the partner logical unit (LU) is authorized to validate the user identifiers for the local LUs. Select the check box to specify conversation security support if you have matching support on the host PSF program. If not, leave this box unchecked.

Parallel session support

Specifies whether the partner LU supports two or more currently active sessions between the same two LUs by using different pairs of network addresses or session identifiers. Because neither PSF Direct nor the PSF host programs support two sessions with the same partner LU, do not select this check box.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Local LU 6.2 Configuration for 37xx

Dependent or Independent LU?

This procedure configures an *independent* LU. You cannot use it to configure a *dependent* LU. If you require dependent LUs, see “Deciding whether to Define a Dependent or an Independent LU” on page 14.

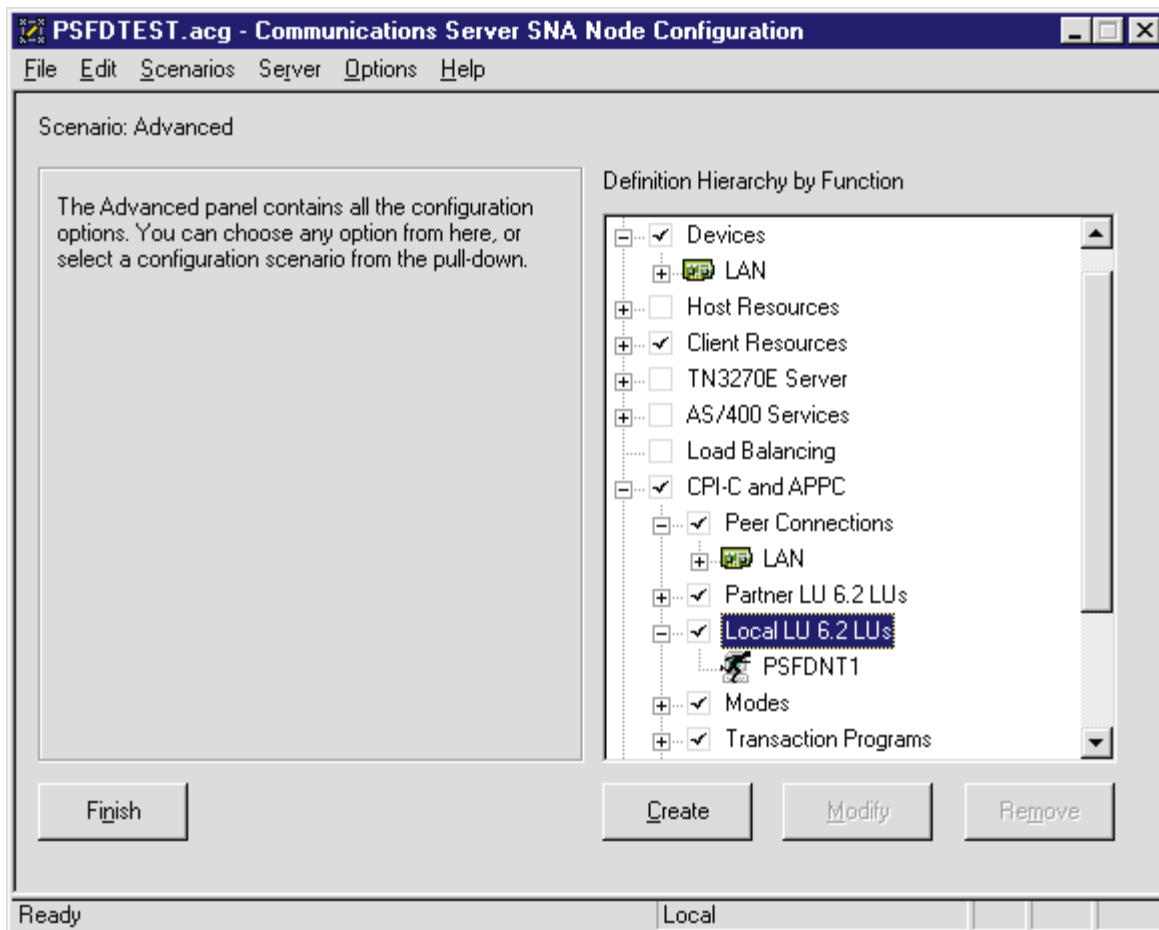


Figure 60. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Local LU 6.2 LUs (37xx)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 60), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Local LU 6.2 LUs** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Local LU 6.2 notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

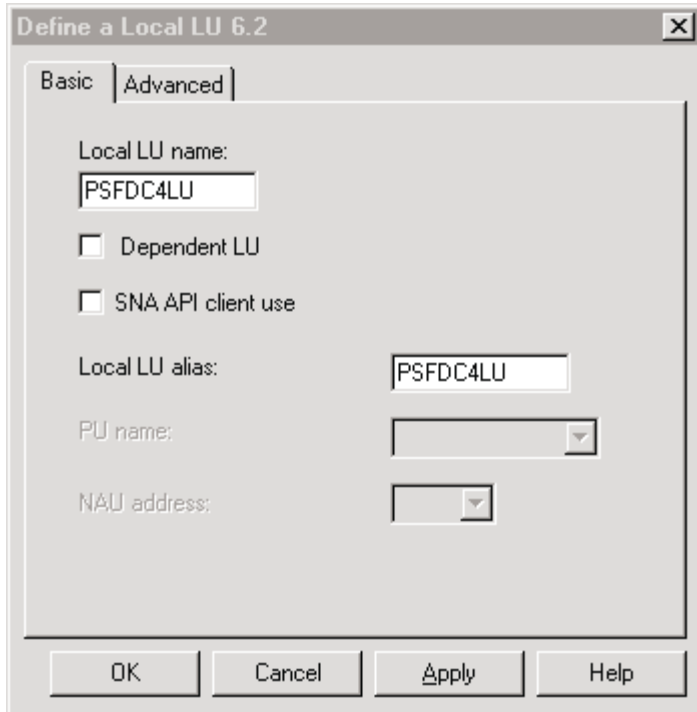


Figure 61. Define a Local LU 6.2 Notebook: Basic Tab (37xx)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 61), supply the following values:

Local LU name

Specifies a 1- to 8-byte character string that identifies your workstation and gives transaction programs access to the network. This name must match the partner LU that has been defined at the host PSF program.

Local LU alias

Specifies the name for the local LU that is used by Infoprint Manager when configuring the PSF Direct host receiver.

Dependent LU

Specifies whether this LU requires assistance from a system services control point (SSCP) in order to initiate an LU-LU session. When this check box is selected, the LU must be specified as dependent on the host PSF program. Because this procedure is for an independent LU, do not check the box.

SNA API client use

Because this LU will be used by a server-based transaction program (TP), do not check this box.

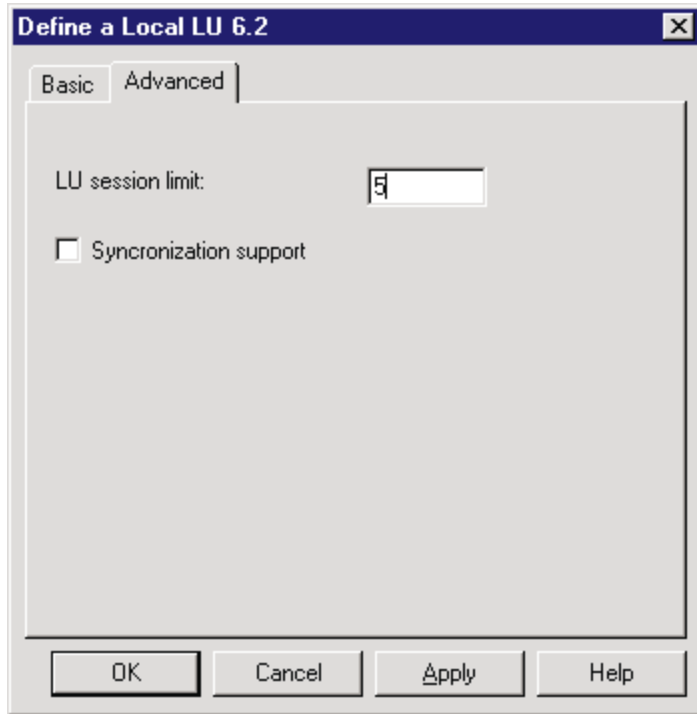


Figure 62. Define a Local LU 6.2 Notebook: Advanced Tab (37xx)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 62), supply the following values:

LU session limit

Specifies the maximum number of sessions that the LU supports as a value between 0 and 65535. Specify 5.

Note: The application program supports only one LU session at a time, but the SNA session can support more.

Synchronization support

Select this check box if another application is supplying synchronization point management (DB/2, for example). In this instance, do not select it.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Mode Configuration for 37xx

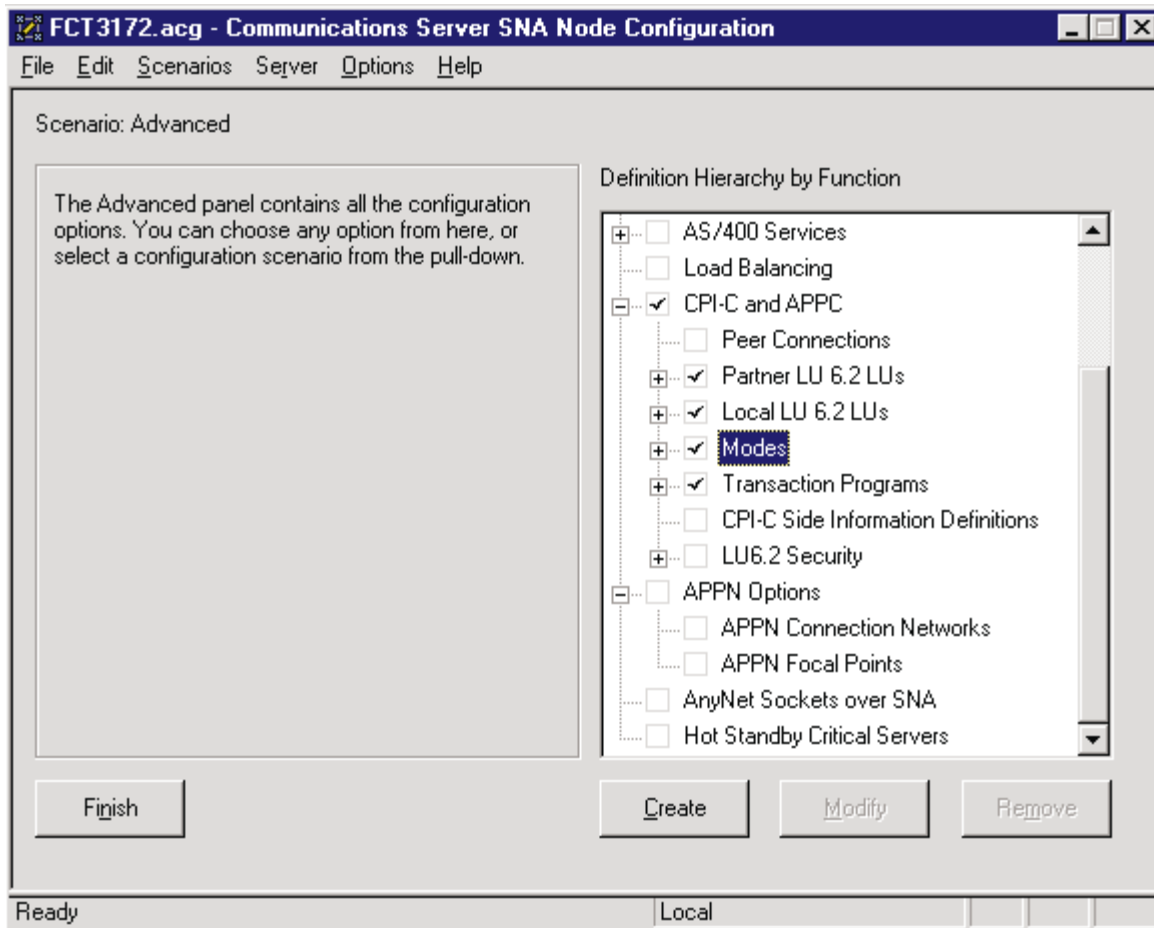


Figure 63. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Modes (37xx)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 63), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Modes** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Mode notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

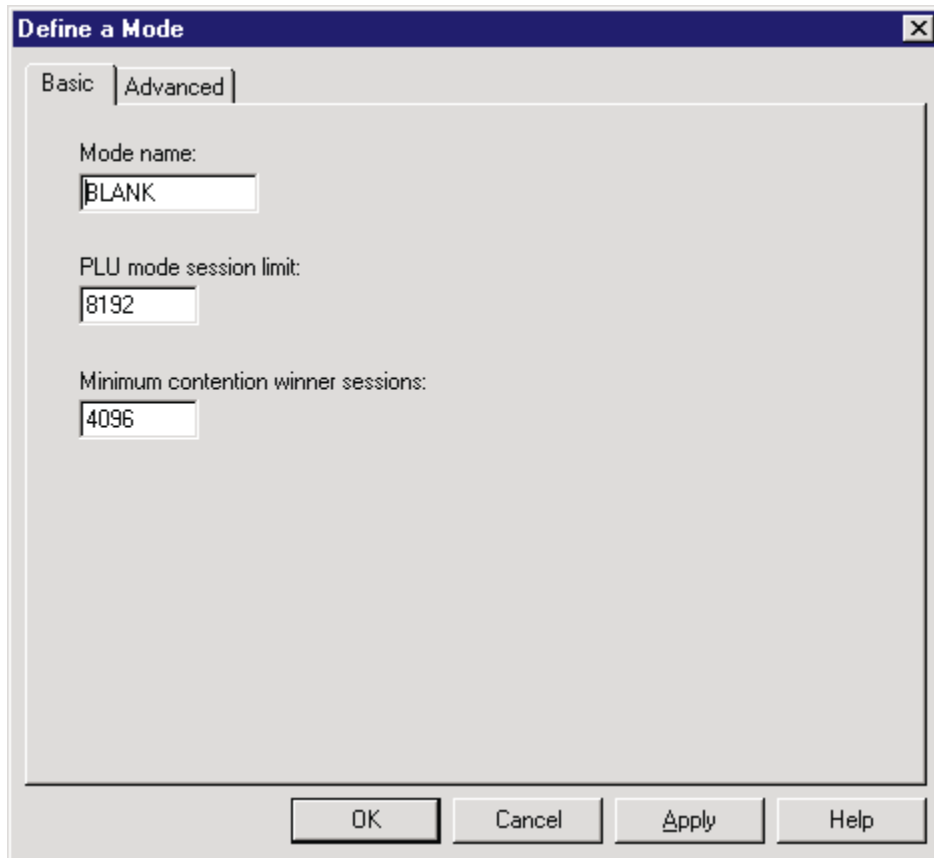


Figure 64. Define a Mode Notebook: Basic Tab (37xx)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 64), supply the following values:

Mode name

Specifies the characteristics for the session that will be allocated for the conversation. The initiator uses this value. The **Mode name** in the **BLANK** profile is 8 spaces.

PLU mode session limit

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the primary logical unit (PLU) mode session limit, or maximum number of concurrently active LU-LU sessions that a particular LU can support. Take the default.

Minimum contention winner sessions

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the minimum number of sessions that a local LU using this mode can activate to win a contention with a partner. Take the default.

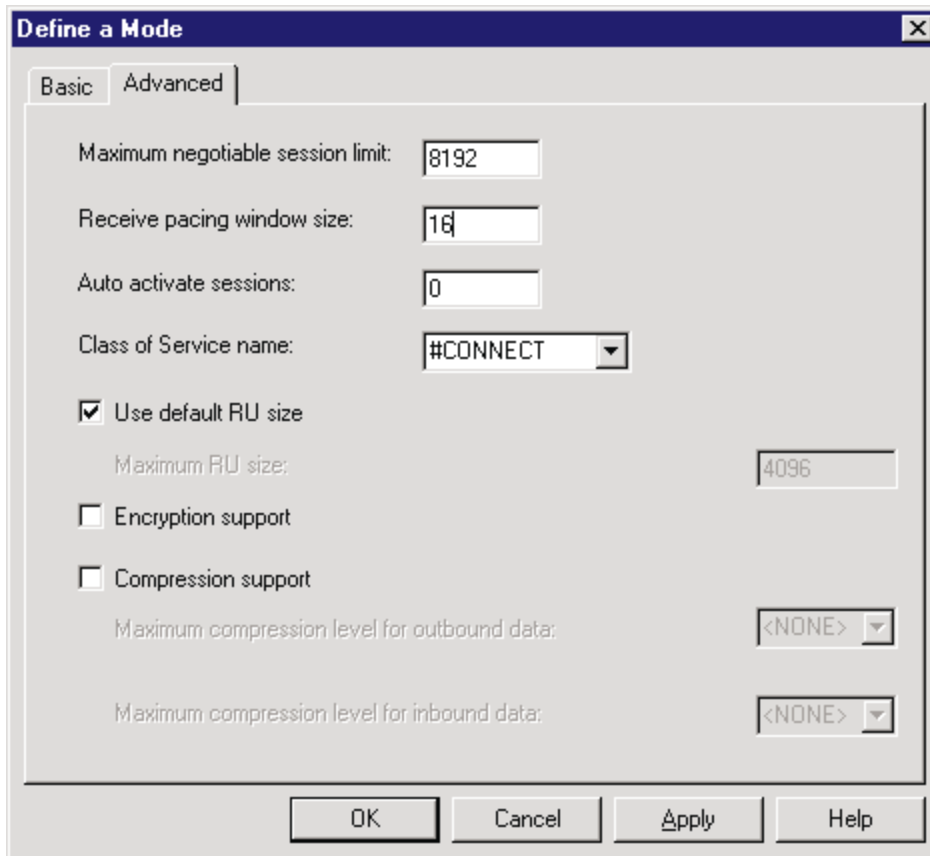


Figure 65. Define a Mode Notebook: Advanced Tab (37xx)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 65), supply the following values:

Maximum negotiable session limit

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the maximum number of sessions allowed in this mode between any local logical unit (LU) and partner LU. Take the default.

Receive pacing window size

Specifies the secondary receive pacing count. The lesser of this parameter's value and the **SRCVPAC** value in the VTAM **MODEENT** statement is used. (See "Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry" on page 21.) A value of 16 produces good throughput in most configurations. This parameter influences performance and can be adjusted as desired.

Auto activate sessions

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the number of parallel LU 6.2 sessions to automatically start when an initial session starts using this mode. Specify 0 so that no parallel sessions can start automatically for this application.

Class of Service name

Specifies the name of a set of transport network characteristics. Select the default: **#CONNECT** .

Use default RU size

Instructs the node to use the default maximum size for the request/response unit (RU) sent and received on the sessions. Do not select the check box.

Maximum RU size

Set this value to 1024, if it does not automatically specify that value when you remove the check from the **Use default RU size** parameter above.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Transaction Program Configuration for 37xx

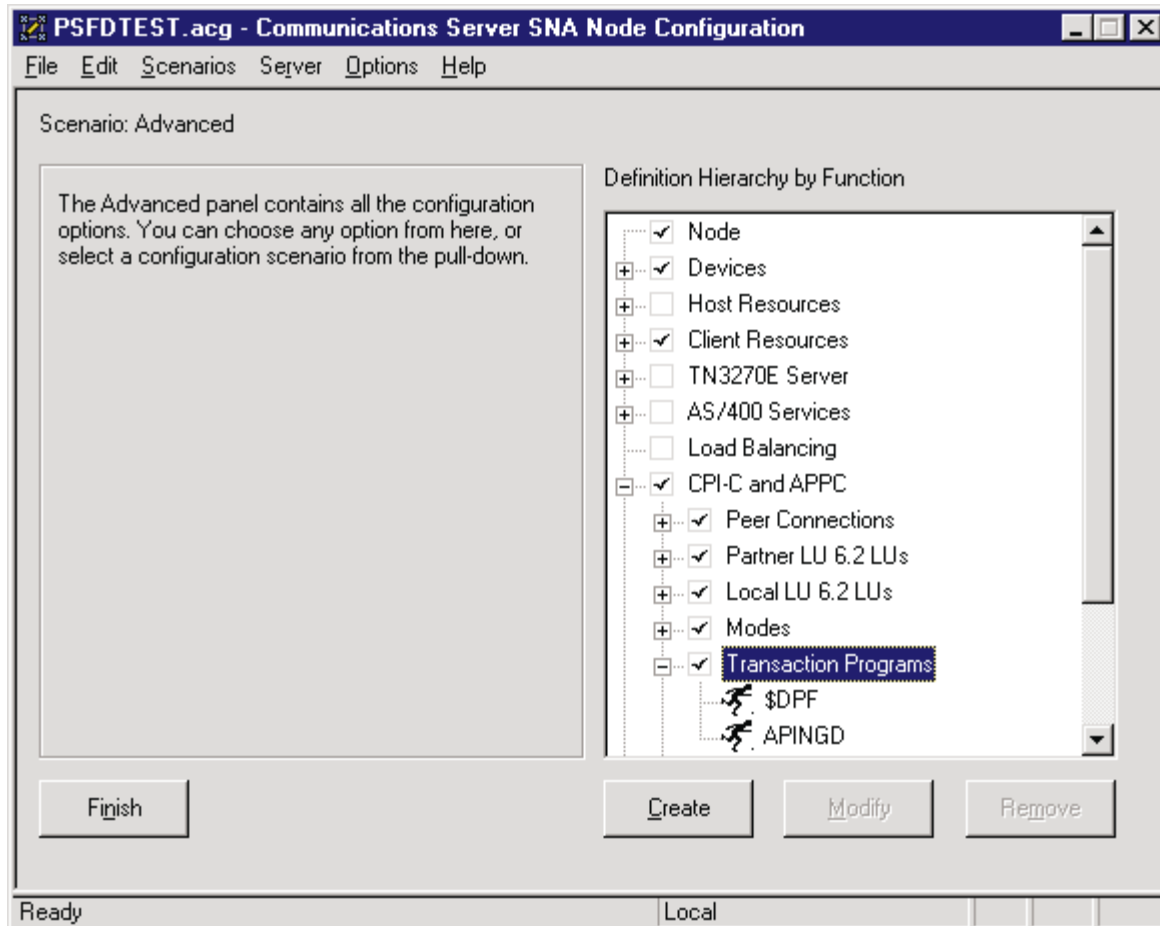


Figure 66. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Transaction Programs (37xx)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 66), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Transaction Programs** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Transaction Program notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

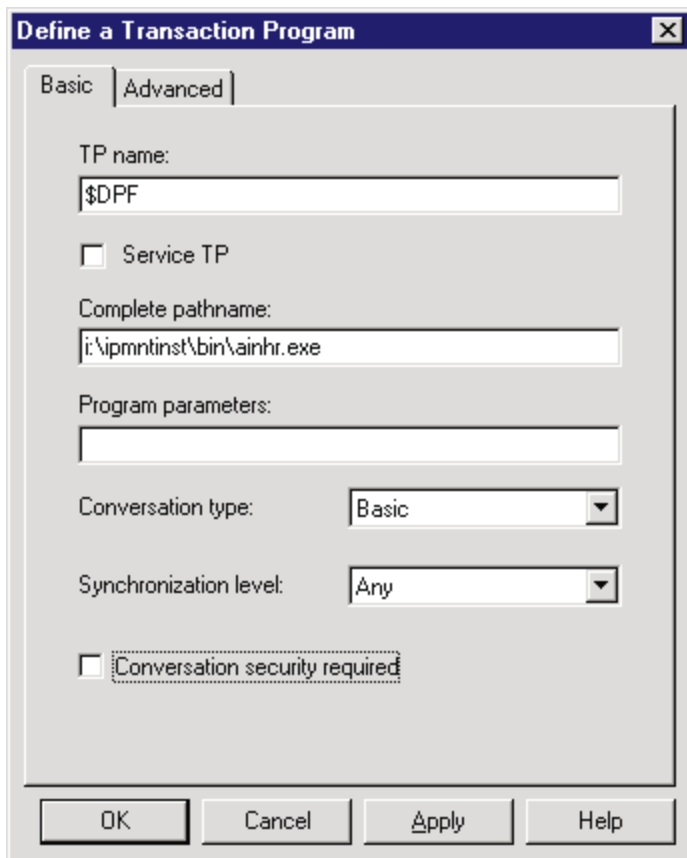


Figure 67. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Basic Tab (37xx)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 67), supply the following values:

TP name

Specifies a 1- to 64-byte character string for the program that uses the advanced program-to-program communications (APPC) system to communicate with a partner application program at the partner node. Enter **\$DPF**. If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, note that this value changes from a binary 30F0F0F0 to a non-binary **\$DPF**. Ensure that the **Service TP** check box is unchecked because it indicates a non-binary value.

Complete pathname

Specifies an 1- to 255-byte character string that describes the location of the program to run. The location can include the drive, the directory, the subdirectory, and the file name. In this example, `d:\ipmntinst\bin\ainhr.exe` specifies the location where Infoprint Manager for NT is installed on your system.

Conversation type

Specifies the conversation type allowed to start the transaction programs (TPs) that use an LU 6.2 session. Select **Basic**.

Synchronization level

Specifies the level allowed on allocation requests that start the local and remote transaction programs (TPs). Select **Any**.

Conversation security required

Allows controlled access to system resources through security parameters.

If this check box is selected, conversation security information is required to start the TP. Incoming allocation requests for this TP without the conversation security information will be rejected. Do not check this box.

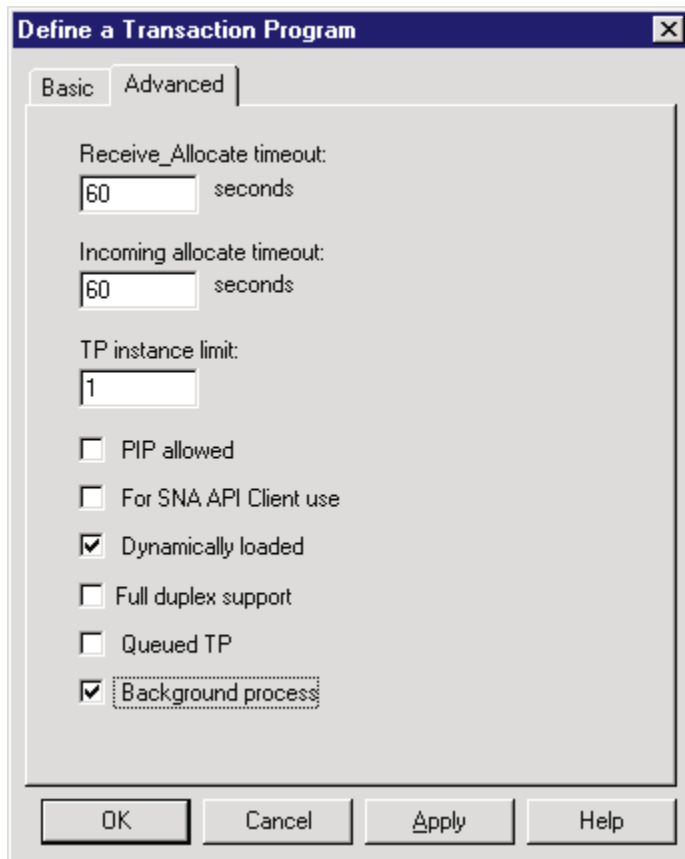


Figure 68. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Advanced Tab (37xx)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 68), supply the following values:

Receive_Allocate timeout

Specifies a value between 0 and 65535 seconds that identifies the time that a **Receive_Allocate** verb will be queued while waiting for an **Attach**. Specify 60 .

Incoming allocate timeout

Specifies a value between 0 and 65535 seconds that identifies the time that an incoming **Attach** will be queued waiting for a **Receive_Allocate**. Specify 60 .

TP instance limit

Specifies a value between 0 and 65535 seconds that identifies the maximum number of concurrently active TP instances. Specify at least 1 (or the number of LUs that you have defined). 0 means no limit.

Dynamically loaded

Specifies whether the transaction program (TP) can be dynamically started by an allocation request received on a conversation. Select the check box to dynamically load the TP.

Background process

Specifies that the program will run in the background. Only 32-bit programs can multitask in the Windows NT environment. Select the check box to use the background process.

Note: Ensure that **Dynamically loaded** and **Background process** (the two items checked in Figure 68 on page 57) are the only items checked. If you specify other options, this transaction program will not work.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Once you have completed creating this configuration, go to “Chapter 9. Starting an IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT Configuration” on page 229.

Local or Remote 37xx Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheets

Use the following work sheets to configure PSF Direct on both the host PSF and Infoprint Manager for NT:

- Use Table 2 to see how Communications Server for NT configuration settings relate to other configuration settings.
- Use Table 3 on page 60 to record your own Communications Server for NT values.

37xx Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheet Example

Table 2. 37xx Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheet Example

Communication Server	Value	Infoprint Manager	VTAM	NCP
Define the Node: Fully-qualified CP name	DEVTESTB		PU <i>name</i> PU CPNAME	
Define the Node: Local Node ID	05DC021B		PU IDBLK PU IDNUM	
Define a LAN Device: Receive window count	7		PU MAXOUT	
Define a LAN Device: Maximum PIU size	65535			
Define a LAN Connection: Destination address	400023101088			LINE LOCADD
Define a Partner LU 6.2: Partner LU name	USIBMBQ.FSAES618	APPLID	ATCSTR $_{xx}$ NETID APPL <i>name</i>	
Define a Local LU 6.2: Local LU name	PSFDC4LU	LUNAME	LU <i>name</i>	
Define a Local LU 6.2: Dependent LU	Not selected (address 0)		LU LOCADDR	
Define a Mode: Mode name	BLANK			
Define a Mode: Receive pacing window size	16		MODEENT SRCVPAC	
Define a Mode: Maximum RU size	1024		MODEENT RUSIZES	

37xx Token-Ring Configuration Blank Work Sheet

Table 3. 37xx Token-Ring Configuration Blank Work Sheet

Communication Server	Value	Infoprint Manager	VTAM	NCP
Define the Node: Fully-qualified CP name			PU <i>name</i> PU CPNAME	
Define the Node: Local Node ID			PU IDBLK PU IDNUM	
Define a LAN Device: Receive window count			PU MAXOUT	
Define a LAN Device: Maximum PIU size				
Define a LAN Connection: Destination address				LINE LOCADD
Define a Partner LU 6.2: Partner LU name		APPLID	ATCSTRxx NETID APPL <i>name</i>	
Define a Local LU 6.2: Local LU name		LUNAME	LU <i>name</i>	
Define a Local LU 6.2: Dependent LU			LU LOCADDR	
Define a Mode: Mode name				
Define a Mode: Receive pacing window size			MODEENT SRCVPAC	
Define a Mode: Maximum RU size			MODEENT RUSIZES	

Chapter 5. Local 3172 Token-Ring Configuration

Figure 69 shows a local 3172 token-ring configuration.

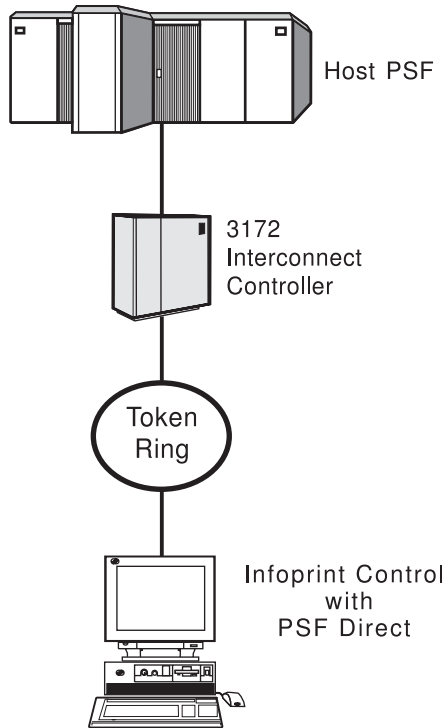


Figure 69. Local 3172 Token-Ring Configuration

This chapter describes how to create a local 3172 token-ring configuration. It contains guidelines and examples for the following tasks:

- “Local 3172 Host Configuration” on page 62
 - “Specifying the JES2 Initialization Statement” on page 62
 - “Configuring the Host PSF Printer” on page 62
 - “Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx)” on page 65
 - “Specifying the VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn)” on page 66
 - “Specifying the VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program” on page 67
 - “Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry” on page 67
 - “Specifying the VTAM Switched Major Node” on page 68
 - “Specifying the VTAM External Communication Adapter (XCA) Major Node” on page 72
- “Specifying Communications Server for NT Configuration Profiles” on page 73
 - “Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles” on page 74
 - “Local 3172 Node Setup” on page 75
 - “Local 3172 Device Configuration” on page 79
 - “Enabling SNA API Clients for Local 3172” on page 84
 - “Local 3172 Peer Connections Configuration” on page 86

- "Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for Local 3172" on page 91
- "Local LU 6.2 Configuration for Local 3172" on page 94
- "Mode Configuration for Local 3172" on page 97
- "Transaction Program Configuration for Local 3172" on page 100

Note: Before performing this configuration, review "Chapter 3. Preconfiguration Tasks" on page 13.

At the end of the chapter, there are two configuration work sheets. The first work sheet (Table 5 on page 104) is filled out with the values from the examples. The second work sheet (Table 6 on page 105) is blank for your own values.

Local 3172 Host Configuration

This section provides guidelines and examples for the following tasks:

- "Specifying the JES2 Initialization Statement"
- "Configuring the Host PSF Printer"
- "Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx)" on page 65
- "Specifying the VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn)" on page 66
- "Specifying the VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program" on page 67
- "Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry" on page 67
- "Specifying the VTAM Switched Major Node" on page 68
- "Specifying the VTAM External Communication Adapter (XCA) Major Node" on page 72

For each task, this section shows the pertinent parameters. It describes which of these require you to specify *variable_names* and which require a specific name or number, such as **MODETAB=MODEIBM** or **FMPROF=X'13'**. An underlined value (such as WCONNECT) indicates that the value is a system default.

Specifying the JES2 Initialization Statement

Define the host PSF printer as you would any other Systems Network Architecture (SNA)-attached printer. For example, on an OS/390 system you must provide either JES2 or JES3 initialization statements.

Figure 70 shows an example.

```
PRT618 CLASS=Y,MARKS=YES,START=NO,MODE=FSS,FSS=WTRES600, X
PRMODE=(LINE,PAGE),UCS=0
```

Figure 70. JES2 Initialization Statement Example (Local 3172)

Configuring the Host PSF Printer

The manner in which a host PSF printer is configured depends on the operating system. You will use one of the following statements:

- Print Services Facility (PSF) for OS/390 **PRINTDEV** statement
- PSF/VSE **PRINTDEV** statement
- Parameters in the PSF/VM **OPTIONS PDM** file

On each operating system, PSF supports specification of both the application program ID (**APPLID**) and the logical unit name (**LUNAME**).

```
.  
. .  
.  
APPLID=appl_prog  
LUNAME=lu_name  
.  
.  
.
```

Figure 71. Host PSF Printer Guidelines (Local 3172)

On some operating systems, PSF also supports other configuration parameters. The following text describes these parameters (listed in order of importance) and notes whether they are required or optional:

APPLID (required)

Specifies the application program that is the SNA logical unit provided by Virtual Telecommunications Access Method (VTAM) and used by PSF. The **APPLID** value must match:

- An **APPL** statement name in a VTAM application program major node
- The second part of the **Partner LU name** field on the **Basic** tab of the Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook (Figure 106 on page 92)

LUNAME (required)

Specifies the SNA logical unit with which PSF tries to initiate a session. The **LUNAME** value must match:

- An **LU** statement name in a VTAM switched major node
- The **Local LU name** field on the **Basic** tab of the Define a Local LU 6.2 notebook (Figure 109 on page 95)

LOGMODE (optional)

Specifies the VTAM logon mode table entry that defines characteristics of the session between the logical units identified by the **APPLID** and **LUNAME** parameters. The **LOGMODE** parameter identifies an entry within a logon mode table. The **MODETAB** operand on the VTAM switched major node **LU** statement identifies the logon mode table. If you omit the **LOGMODE** parameter, the **DLOGMOD** operand on the VTAM switched major node **LU** statement identifies the entry within the logon mode table.

Note that if the logical unit identified by the **LUNAME** parameter is a cross-domain resource, you must not use the **LOGMODE** parameter.

SETUP (optional)

Specify **SETUP=FORMS** to cause the Job Entry Subsystem (JES) to issue forms setup messages to the operator.

By default, JES issues forms setup messages to the operator for channel-attached printers, but does not issue forms setup messages to the operator for SNA-attached printers.

MGMTMODE ={IMMED | OUTAVAIL | DIALIN} (optional)

Determines how the host PSF program and PSF Direct initiate communication.

IMMED

Causes the host PSF program to initiate communication when it starts.

OUTAVAIL

Causes the host PSF program to initiate communication when there is available output to print.

DIALIN

Causes the host PSF program to initiate communication only after a switched line becomes available. The switched line can become available either when VTAM dials out or when the remote node dials in.

Note that if you specify **DIALIN**:

- Do not use the **LOGMODE** parameter.
- Include the **LOGAPPL** operand on the VTAM switched major node **LU** statement.
- Ensure that the **LOGAPPL** operand on the VTAM switched major node **LU** statement matches the **APPLID** value.

FAILURE={WCONNECT | STOP} (optional)

Specifies whether or not the host PSF program re-attempts communication after a printer or communication failure. If you do not specify a value for the **FAILURE** parameter, it defaults to **WCONNECT**.

WCONNECT

Specifies that the host PSF program attempts to communicate again.

STOP Specifies that the operator must restart the host PSF program.

DISCINTV (optional)

Specifies the interval (in seconds) that the host PSF program waits for output to become available to print. If no output becomes available, the host PSF program ends communication with the printer.

Specify 0 to cause the host PSF program to maintain communication indefinitely. If you do not specify a value for **DISCINTV**, it defaults to 0.

Figure 72 on page 65 shows an example of a single **PRTDEV** statement for a device named PRT618. Note that if an installation has multiple printers defined for receiving PSF Direct jobs, you must define a separate **PRTDEV** statement for each printer.

```

//WTRES600 PROC
//*
//STEP01 EXEC PGM=APSPPIEP,REGION=4096K
//*
//STEPLIB DD DSN=SYSTEM.PSF.V220.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//*
//JOBHDR OUTPUT PAGEDEF=A06462, /* JOB HEADER PAGEDEF */
// FORMDEF=A10110 /* JOB HEADER FORMDEF */
//JOBTLR OUTPUT PAGEDEF=A06462, /* JOB TRAILER PAGEDEF */
// FORMDEF=A10110 /* JOB TRAILER FORMDEF */
//DSHDR OUTPUT PAGEDEF=A06462, /* DATA SET HEADER PAGEDEF*/
// FORMDEF=A10110 /* DATA SET HEADER FORMDEF*/
//MSGDS OUTPUT PAGEDEF=A06462, /* MESSAGE DATASET PAGEDEF*/
// FORMDEF=A10110 /* MESSAGE DATASET FORMDEF*/
//*
//FONT01 DD DSN=SYS1.FONTLIB,DISP=SHR
//OLAY01 DD DSN=SYS1.OVERLIB,DISP=SHR
//PSEG01 DD DSN=SYS1.PSEGLIB,DISP=SHR
//FDEF01 DD DSN=SYS1.FDEFLIB,DISP=SHR
//PDEF01 DD DSN=SYS1.PDEFLIB,DISP=SHR
//*
//PRT618 PRINTDEV FONTDD=*.FONT01, /* FONT LIBRARY DD */
// OVLydd=*.OLAY01, /* OVERLAY LIBRARY DD */
// PSEGDD=*.PSEG01, /* SEGMENT LIBRARY DD */
// PDEFDD=*.OLAY01, /* PAGEDEF LIBRARY DD */
// FDEFDD=*.OLAY01, /* FORMDEF LIBRARY DD */
// JOBHDR=*.JOBHDR, /* JOB HEADER DD */
// JOBTLR=*.JOBTLR, /* JOB TRAILER DD */
// DSHDR=*.DSHDR, /* DATA SET HEADER DD */
// MESSAGE=*.MSGDS, /* MESSAGE DATA DD */
// PAGEDEF=A06462, /* DEFAULT PAGEDEF */
// FORMDEF=A10110, /* DEFAULT FORMDEF */
// CHARS=(GT10,GC15,GB10,GR10,), /* DEFAULT FONT SET*/
// PIMSG=YES, /* ACCUMULATE DATA SET MESSAGES */
// SETUP=FORMS, /* ISSUE FORMS SETUP MESSAGES */
// MGMTMODE=OUTAVAIL, /* START WHEN OUTPUT AVAILABLE */
// DISCINTV=60, /* DISCONNECT INTERVAL -- SECS */
// LOGMODE=IBM3820T, /* LOGON MODE TABLE ENTRY */
// APPLID=FSAES618, /* APPLICATION PGM NAME */
// LUNAME=PSFDC4LU /* LOGICAL UNIT NAME */
//PRT618 ENDCNTL

```

Figure 72. JES2 External Writer Procedure Example (Local 3172)

Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx)

You must specify the values illustrated in Figure 73 and described below.

```

CONFIG=nn,          ATCCON MEMBER OF VTAMLST      X
NETID=network_id,  NETWORK IDENTIFIER          X
SSCPID=nn,         SSCP IDENTIFIER              X
.
.
.

```

Figure 73. VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) Guidelines (Local 3172)

CONFIG

Specifies the **ATCCON***nn* member to use.

NETID

Specifies the network identifier for the host system. The first part of the

Partner LU name field on the **Basic** tab of the Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook (Figure 106 on page 92) must match the **NETID** value.

SSCPID

Specifies the system services control point (SSCP) at the host. The SSCPID is a decimal integer from 0 to 65535.

The SSCP, normally VTAM, provides several network management functions. They include managing dependent logical units and accepting Network Management Vector Transports, such as alerts. Alerts often include information about devices that are unavailable or require corrective action.

To configure a PSF Direct host receiver to send alerts to this SSCP, the least significant portion of the **SNA System Services Control Point ID** value defined for the PSF Direct host receiver must be the hexadecimal equivalent of the SSCPID value. (For information about configuring the host receiver, see "Defining the PSF Direct Host Receiver" on page 232.) The **SNA System Services Control Point ID** must be in the form **05xxxxxxxx**, where *x* is a hexadecimal digit.

For example, to configure a PSF Direct host receiver to send alerts to an SSCP with an **SSCPID** value of 283, the host receiver's **SNA System Services Control Point ID** value must be 05000000011B.

Figure 74 shows an example.

```
CONFIG=00,      ATCCON MEMBER OF VTAMLST      X
NETID=USIBMBQ, NETWORK IDENTIFIER      X
SSCPID=1,       SSCP IDENTIFIER        X
.
.
.
```

Figure 74. VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) Example (Local 3172)

Specifying the VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn)

The VTAM configuration list indicates the application program major nodes that should become available when VTAM starts. Include the application program major node that contains the application program that PSF uses.

```
appl_prog_major_node,      X
.
.
.
```

Figure 75. VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn) Guidelines (Local 3172)

Figure 76 shows an example.

```
PSFAPPLS,      X
.
.
.
```

Figure 76. VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn) Example (Local 3172)

Specifying the VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program

The pertinent operands for the VTAM application program major node and application program are illustrated in Figure 77 and described below.

```
appl_prog_major_node, VBUILD TYPE=APPL           X
appl_prog,           APPL AUTH=ACQ,EAS=1,SONSCIP=YES X
.
.
.
```

Figure 77. VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program Guidelines (Local 3172)

The host PSF program does not support application programs that use **APPC=YES** or **PARSESS=YES**. The default value for both **APPC** and **PARSESS** is **NO**.

Figure 78 shows an example.

```
PSFAPPLS, VBUILD TYPE=APPL           X
FSAES618, APPL AUTH=ACQ,EAS=1,SONSCIP=YES X
.
.
.
```

Figure 78. VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program Example (Local 3172)

Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry

The operands for the VTAM mode table are illustrated in Figure 79 and described below.

```
table_name  MODETAB           X
entry_name  MODEENT LOGMODE=IBM3820T,FMPROF=X'13',TSPROF=X'07', X
.
.
.
PRIPROC=X'B0',SECPROT=X'B0',COMPROT=X'B0B1' X
PSERVIC=X'06020000000000000000200' X
PSNDPAC=X'10',SRCVPAC=X'10',SSNDPAC=X'00' X
RUSIZES=X'8787'
```

Figure 79. VTAM Mode Table and Entry Guidelines (Local 3172)

PSNDPAC

Specifies the primary send pacing count. This value influences performance and can be adjusted as desired. A value of X'10' produces good throughput in most configurations.

SRCVPAC

Specifies the secondary receive pacing count. This value influences performance and can be adjusted as desired. A value of X'10' produces good throughput in most configurations.

RUSIZES

Specifies the maximum request unit (RU) sizes from the primary and secondary logical units. The RU sizes influence performance and can be adjusted as desired. A value of X'8787' means 1024 bytes for both RU sizes and produces good throughput in most configurations.

The **RUSIZES** specification influences other configuration parameters. These include:

- The **Maximum RU size** field on the **Advanced** tab of the Define a Mode notebook (Figure 113 on page 99)
- The **MAXSTL** operand in the IBM Network Control Program (NCP) **LINE** statement

Figure 80 shows an example.

```

MODEIBM      MODETAB
IBM3820T     MODEENT LOGMODE=IBM3820T,FMPROF=X'13',TSPROF=X'07', X
.
.
.
PRIPROC=X'B0',SECPROT=X'B0',COMPROT=X'B0B1' X
PSERVIC=X'06020000000000000000200' X
PSNDPAC=X'10',SRCVPAC=X'10',SSNDPAC=X'00' X
RUSIZES=X'8787'

```

Figure 80. VTAM Mode Table and Entry Example (Local 3172)

Specifying the VTAM Switched Major Node

A different set of statements and values is required depending on whether:

- A *calling* Communications Server for NT link station initiates a link connection with a 37xx communication controller.
- A *listening* Communications Server for NT link station waits for the 37xx communication controller to initiate a link connection.

A calling Communications Server link station requires the statements and values shown in Figure 81.

```

.
.
.
node_name VBUILD TYPE=SWNET
*
pu_name  PU      ADDR=nn,          ADDRESS REQUIRED, BUT IGNORED X
          CPNAME=cp_name,        CONTROL POINT NAME          X
          IDBLK=nnn,            BLOCK ID                    X
          IDNUM=nnnnn,          PHYSICAL UNIT ID            X
.
.
.
          MAXOUT=7,             LINK LEVEL WINDOW           X
          MODETAB=mode_table,    LOGON MODE TABLE           X
          DLOGMOD=mode_entry,    LOGON MODE TABLE ENTRY     X
          VPACING=0,             NO PACING TO BOUNDARY NODE
*
lu_name  LU      LOCADDR=nn,      INDEPENDENT LU

```

Figure 81. VTAM Switched Major Node Guidelines: Calling Link Station (Local 3172)

A listening Communications Server link station requires the statements and values shown in Figure 82 on page 69.

```

.
.
.
node_name VBUILD TYPE=SWNET,MAXGRP=1,MAXNO=1
*
pu_name  PU      ADDR=nn,           ADDRESS REQUIRED, BUT IGNORED  X
          CPNAME=cp_name,      CONTROL POINT NAME           X
          IDBLK=nnn,          BLOCK ID                      X
          IDNUM=nnnnn,        PHYSICAL UNIT ID             X
.
.
.
          MAXOUT=7,           LINK LEVEL WINDOW             X
          MODETAB=mode_table, LOGON MODE TABLE             X
          DLOGMOD=mode_entry, LOGON MODE TABLE ENTRY           X
          VPACING=0,          NO PACING TO BOUNDARY NODE
*
path_name PATH  DIALNO=xx044000nnnnnnnn,
          GRPNM=ncp_group,
*
lu_name      LU   LOCADDR=nn,    INDEPENDENT LU

```

Figure 82. VTAM Switched Major Node Guidelines: Listening Link Station (Local 3172)

The following describes the pertinent operands on the **VBUILD** statement:

TYPE Specify **SWNET** to indicate that the node is a switched major node.

MAXGRP

Specifies the number of unique path groups (**GROUP** names) that are defined in the **GRPNM** operand of all **PATH** statements within the switched major node. There is one unique path group in the switched major node guideline presented in Figure 82.

MAXNO

Specifies the number of unique token-ring addresses that are defined in the **DIALNO** operand of all **PATH** statements within the switched major node. There is one unique token-ring address in the switched major node guideline presented in Figure 82.

The following describes the pertinent operands on the **PU** statement.

Note: The **DLOGMOD**, **MODETAB**, and **VPACING** operands are **LU** operands, but are included here on the **PU** statement. VTAM definitions support a “sift-down effect” that allows you to code an operand on a higher-level statement so you do not need to code it on each lower-level statement for which the same value is desired. There is only one logical unit in the guideline presented here, so the sift-down effect is for demonstration only. If the **DLOGMOD**, **MODETAB**, and **VPACING** operands are specified on the **PU** statement, they do not have to be specified on any of the **LU** statements.

ADDR

Specifies the address of the physical unit. Note that this operand is required, but ignored.

CPNAME (optional)

Identifies the control point (CP). The value specified for **CPNAME** must match the second part of the **Fully qualified CP name** field on the **Basic** tab of the Define the Node notebook (Figure 89 on page 76). By convention, the **CPNAME** value usually matches the **PU** name.

Either the **CPNAME** operand or both the **IDBLK** and the **IDNUM** operands are required. **CPNAME** can only be used with PU type 2.1 nodes, such as Communications Server for NT.

IDBLK (optional)

Specifies a 3–digit hexadecimal string that identifies the product type in a SNA network. The combined values of the **IDBLK** and **IDNUM** operands must match the **Local Node ID** value on the **Basic** tab of the Define the Node notebook (Figure 89 on page 76).

Either the **CPNAME** operand or both the **IDBLK** and the **IDNUM** operands are required.

IDNUM (optional)

Specifies a 5–digit hexadecimal string that identifies a physical unit. The combined values of the **IDBLK** and **IDNUM** operands must match the **Local Node ID** value on the **Basic** tab of the Define the Node notebook (Figure 89 on page 76).

Either the **CPNAME** operand or both the **IDBLK** and the **IDNUM** operands are required.

MAXDATA (optional)

Specifies the maximum amount of data (in bytes) that the physical unit can receive in one path information unit (PIU). This amount includes the transmission header (TH) and the request/response header (RH).

Note that **MAXDATA** is ignored for type 2.1 nodes, such as Communications Server for NT, that are attached through an NCP with peripheral node type 2.1 support. The type 2.1 node indicates the maximum path information unit (PIU) size when the connection is established. The value that SNA Server/6000 supplies can be configured using the **Maximum PIU size** field on the **Advanced** tab of the Define a LAN Device notebook (Figure 95 on page 81).

MAXOUT

Specifies the maximum number of PIUs that are sent to the physical unit before waiting for a response from that physical unit. For optimum performance, the **MAXOUT** value must be equal to, or greater than, the **Receive window count** field in the **Advanced** tab of the Define a LAN Device notebook (Figure 95 on page 81). The **Receive window count** field specifies how many frames are received by the link station before Communications Server for NT sends an acknowledgement.

MAXPATH (optional)

Specifies the number of dial-out paths to the physical unit. Figure 82 on page 69 shows one dial-out path.

MODETAB

Specifies the name of the logon mode table that contains entries that describe session characteristics.

DLOGMOD

Specifies the name of the logon mode table entry that describes session characteristics.

VPACING

Determines how VTAM paces the flow of the data from VTAM to the boundary node to which the logical unit is connected. In this configuration, the boundary node is the communication controller. A value of zero means

that no pacing is performed for sessions with the logical unit, or that the largest possible pacing is used if the session is adaptively paced.

The following describes the pertinent operands on the **PATH** statement:

DIALNO=xx044000nnnnnnnnn (optional)

This parameter value has three parts:

- xx** Specifies the token-ring interface coupler (TIC) number in the communication controller.
- 04** Specifies the service access point (SAP). This value must always be 04.

4000nnnnnnnnn

Specifies the token-ring address of the token-ring adapter in the NT workstation. Although token-ring addresses include twelve hexadecimal digits, the VTAM **DIALNO** operand only accepts digits in the range 0-9. Therefore, an alternate token-ring address that contains only digits in the range 0-9 must be assigned to the token-ring adapter in the NT workstation.

GRPNM

Refers to a logical **GROUP** statement in the NCP definitions.

The following describes the pertinent operands on the **LU** statement:

LOCADDR

LOCADDR=0 specifies that this logical unit is an independent logical unit. An SSCP-LU session does not have to be established prior to an LU-LU session with an independent logical unit. For independent logical units, do *not* select **Dependent LU** on the **Basic** tab of the Define a Local LU 6.2 notebook (Figure 109 on page 95).

SSCPFM (optional)

The **SSCPFM** operand indicates the type of request units (RUs) that the logical unit supports over its SSCP-LU session. The guidelines illustrated for both the calling link station and the listening link station use an independent logical unit. Therefore, the **SSCPFM** operand is not specified. If you require a dependent logical unit, specify **SSCPFM=USSCS**.

Figure 83 on page 72 and Figure 84 on page 72 show examples for a calling link station.

```

.
.
.
PSFDC4SW  VBUILD TYPE=SWNET
*
DEVTESTB  PU      ADDR=04,          ADDRESS REQUIRED, BUT IGNORED X
           CPNAME=DEVTESTB,        CONTROL POINT NAME          X
.
.
.
           MAXDATA=1033,           MAXIMUM PIU SIZE            X
           MODETAB=MODEIBM,         LOGON MODE TABLE           X
           DLOGMOD=IBM3820T,        LOGON MODE TABLE ENTRY     X
           VPACING=0,               NO PACING TO BOUNDARY MODE
*
           PATH  DIALNO=400059550067, TOKEN-RING ADAPTER ADDRESS X
           GRPNM=PSFDC461          NO PACING TO BOUNDARY NODE
*
PSFDC4LU  LU      LOCADDR=0,        INDEPENDENT LU

```

Figure 83. VTAM Switched Major Node Example with CPNAME (Local 3172)

```

.
.
.
PSFDC4SW  VBUILD TYPE=SWNET
*
DEVTESTB  PU      ADDR=04,          ADDRESS REQUIRED, BUT IGNORED X
           IDBLK=05D,              BLOCK ID                     X
           IDNUM=00000,           PHYSICAL UNIT ID            X
.
.
.
           MAXDATA=1033,           MAXIMUM PIU SIZE            X
           MODETAB=MODEIBM,         LOGON MODE TABLE           X
           DLOGMOD=IBM3820T,        LOGON MODE TABLE ENTRY     X
           VPACING=0,               NO PACING TO BOUNDARY MODE
*
           PATH  DIALNO=400059550067, TOKEN-RING ADAPTER ADDRESS X
           GRPNM=PSFDC461          NO PACING TO BOUNDARY NODE
*
PSFDC4LU  LU      LOCADDR=0,        INDEPENDENT LU

```

Figure 84. VTAM Switched Major Node Example with IDBLK and IDNUM (Local 3172)

Specifying the VTAM External Communication Adapter (XCA) Major Node

The keywords and values for the 3172 establishment controller definitions are illustrated in Figure 85 and described below.

```

node_name  VBUILD TYPE=XCA
port_name  PORT   ADAPNO=n,   X
           CUADDR=nnn,     X
           MEDIUM=RING
group_name GROUP  DIAL=YES
line_name  LINE   CALL=INOUT
pu_name    PU

```

Figure 85. VTAM XCA Major Node Guidelines (Local 3172)

The following describes the pertinent operands on the **VBUILD** statement:

TYPE Specify **XCA** to indicate that the node is an External Communication Adapter major node.

The following describes the pertinent operands on the **PORT** statement:

ADAPNO

Specifies the adapter number in the 3172 interconnect controller.

CUADDR

Defines the 3-digit hexadecimal channel control unit address that is used for the attached local area network (LAN).

MEDIUM

Specify **RING** for a token-ring network.

The following describes the pertinent operands on the **GROUP** statement:

DIAL Specify **YES** to indicate that the lines in the group require switched line control protocols.

The following describes the pertinent operands on the **LINE** statement:

CALL Specifies whether the link station in the 3172 interconnect controller should call out to the remote link station, or whether the remote link station should call into the 3172 interconnect controller link station. Specify **CALL=INOUT**, which enables either calling or listening link stations to be configured in SecureWay Communication Server for Windows NT.

Figure 86 shows an example.

```
PSFDC4XA  VBUILD  TYPE=XCA
*
PSFDC4P1  PORT    ADAPNO=3,   X
                CUADDR=5FF,  X
                TIMER=60,    X
                MEDIUM=RING
*
PSFDC4G1  GROUP   DIAL=YES
*
PSFDC4LI  LINE    CALL=INOUT
*
PSFDC4P1  PU
```

Figure 86. VTAM XCA Major Node Example (Local 3172)

Specifying Communications Server for NT Configuration Profiles

This section contains instructions and guidelines for configuring the Communications Server for NT profiles. It includes the following tasks:

- “Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles” on page 74
- “Local 3172 Node Setup” on page 75
- “Local 3172 Device Configuration” on page 79
- “Enabling SNA API Clients for Local 3172” on page 84
- “Local 3172 Peer Connections Configuration” on page 86
- “Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for Local 3172” on page 91
- “Local LU 6.2 Configuration for Local 3172” on page 94

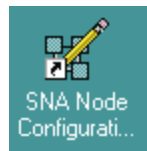
- “Mode Configuration for Local 3172” on page 97
- “Transaction Program Configuration for Local 3172” on page 100

Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles

Use the following procedure to access the IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT applications that are described in “What is IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT?” on page 2.

Note that this procedure assumes that you have dragged the icons for **SNA Node Configuration** and **SNA Node Operations** to your desktop after they were created at installation.

1. From your NT desktop view, double-click the **SNA Node Configuration** icon that resides on your desktop:



2. At the Welcome to Communications Server Configuration! pop-up window, select the **New** button for a new configuration) and click the **Next>** button. Communications Server creates an *xxx.acg* file (where *xxx* represents the file name you select in this window. This *xxx.acg* file resides in the C:\IBMCS\private directory, where C is the drive where you installed IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT. For users migrating from PSF Direct on an OS/2 operating system, this *xxx.acg* file is the equivalent of the OS/2 Communications Manager Communications Server *xxx.ndf* file.

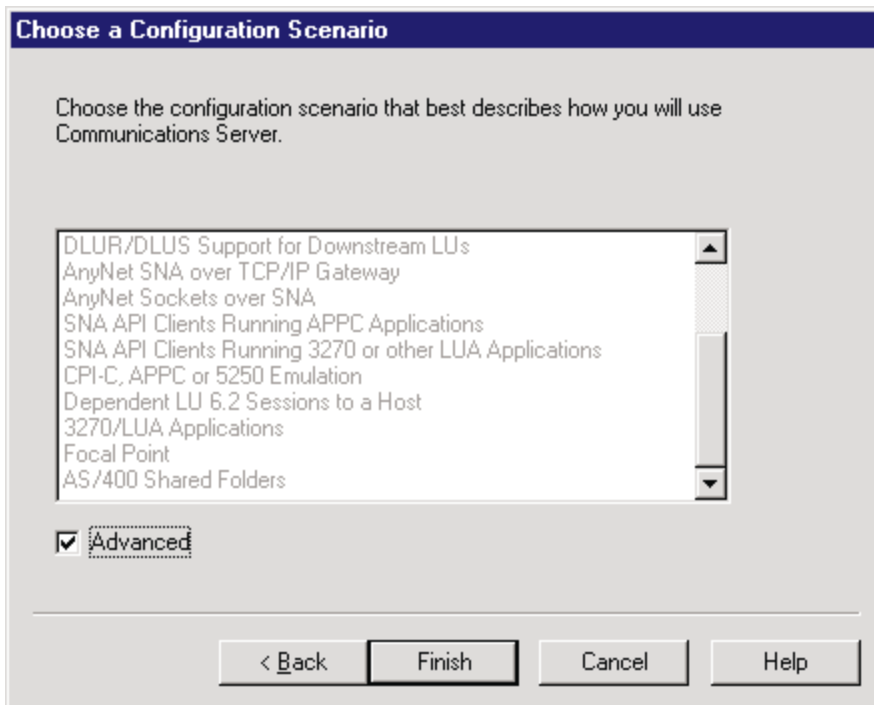


Figure 87. Choose a Configuration Scenario Window (Local 3172)

3. In the Choose a Configuration Scenario window (Figure 87 on page 74), check the **Advanced** box, which causes the display to turn gray. Click the **Finish** button.
4. From the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 88), you are ready to begin configuring your system for PSF Direct.

Local 3172 Node Setup

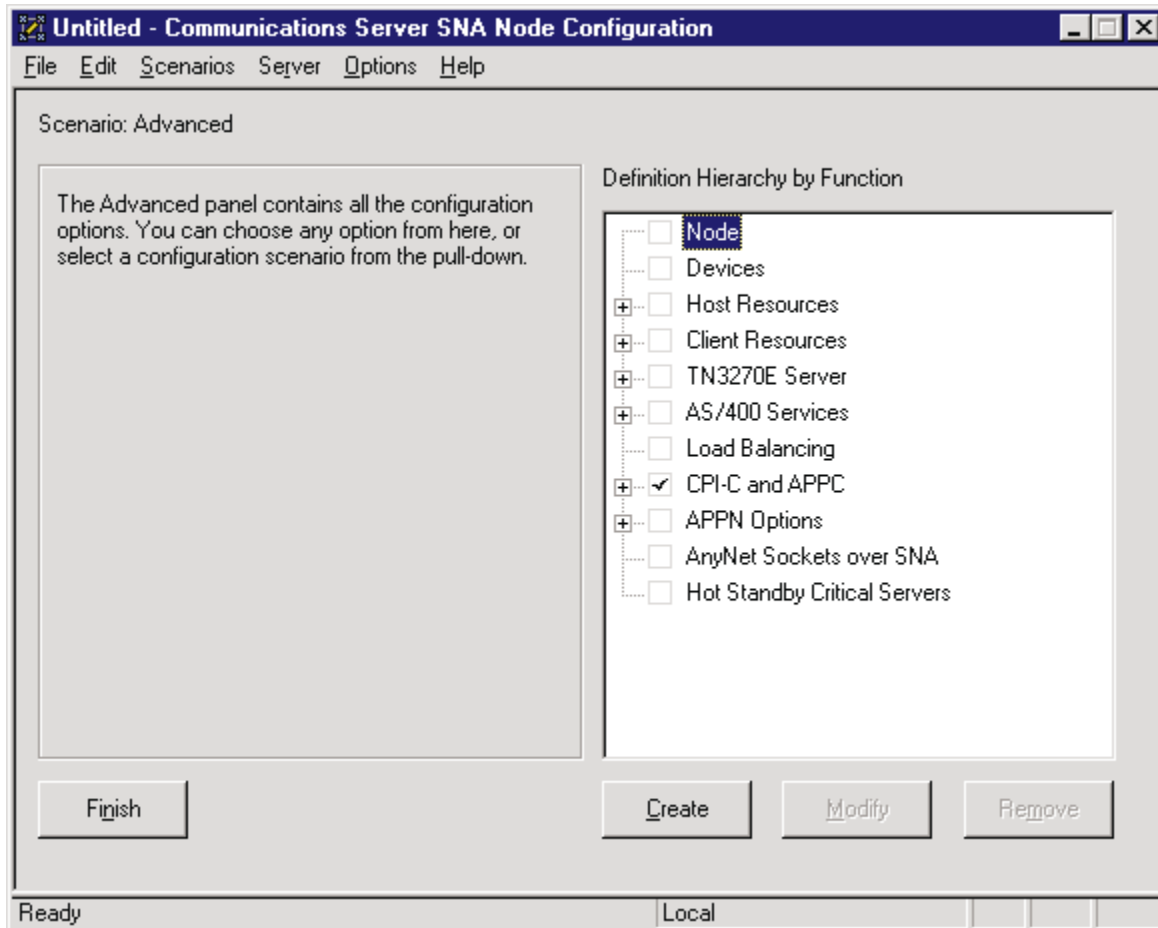


Figure 88. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Node (Local 3172)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 88), right-click the **Node** box and select the **Create** option. The Define the Node notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

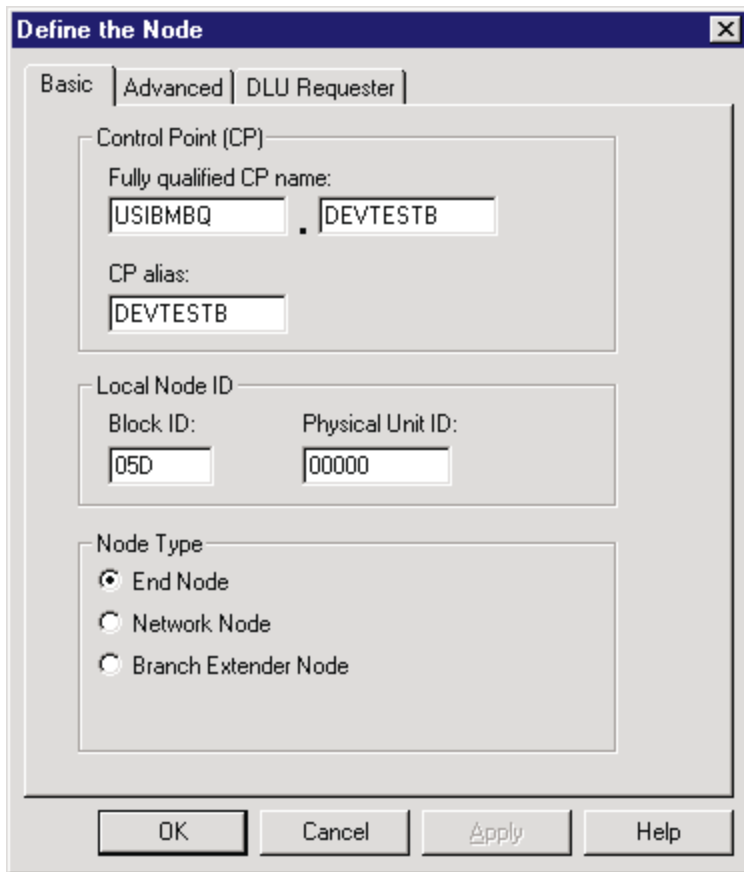


Figure 89. Define the Node Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 89), specify values for the following parameters:

Fully qualified Control Point (CP) name

Specifies the name of the component that manages the resources of that node. If the **CPNAME** operand is used in the VTAM switched major node **PU** statement (see “Specifying the VTAM Switched Major Node” on page 68), then the second part of this value must match the value of the **CPNAME** operand. By convention, the **CPNAME** is usually the same as the **PU** name.

CP alias

Specifies an alternative name for the CP. Local applications can use this name, instead of the **Fully qualified Control Point (CP) name**, to refer to the local CP.

Local Node ID

Specifies both the **Block ID** and the **Physical Unit ID**. The **Block ID** is a 3-digit hexadecimal string that identifies the product type in an SNA network. The **Physical Unit ID** is a 5-digit hexadecimal string that identifies a physical unit (PU).

If the **IDBLK** and **IDNUM** operands are used in the VTAM switched major node **PU** statement (see “Specifying the VTAM Switched Major Node” on page 68), then the **Local Node ID** value must match the combined values of the **IDBLK** and **IDNUM** operands. The **IDBLK** operand is normally 071 for Communications Server for NT.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system, **Local Node ID** matches the **XID Node ID** parameter.

Node Type

Specifies the type of node. Take the default value, **End node**.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system, **Node Type** matches the **Control Point Type** parameter.

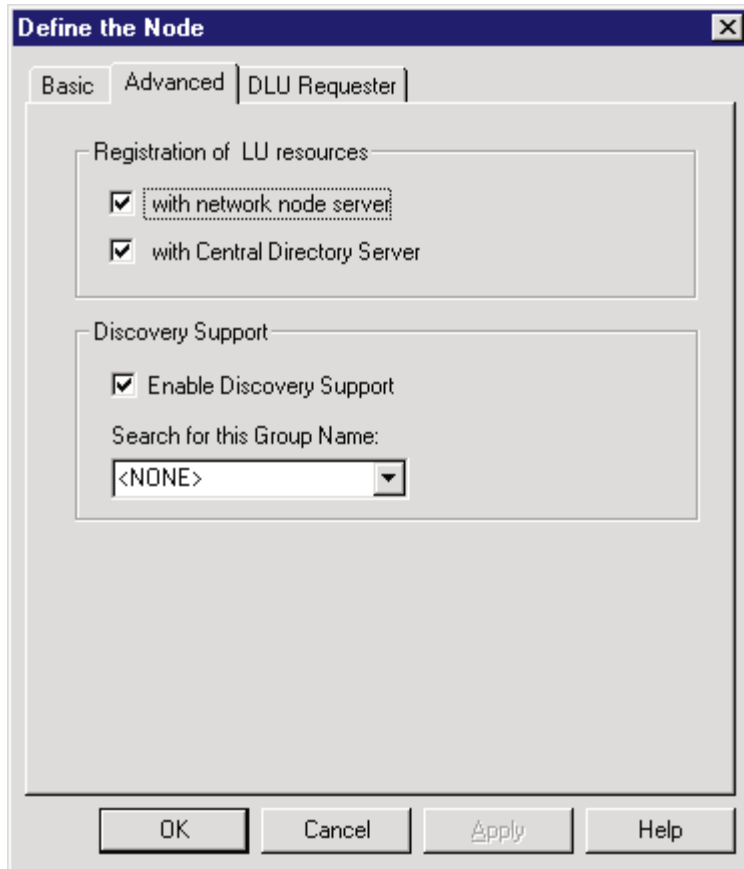


Figure 90. Define the Node Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 90), specify values for the following parameters:

Registration of LU resources

Specifies that directory information about the local logical units (LUs) 6.2 is sent to the server. As the example shows, check both the **Network node server** and the **Central Directory Server**.

Discovery Support

Specifies a LAN address resolution protocol that can be used to find another node that matches given search values. Adjust the search parameter to search for APPN network nodes, nodes that provide SNA boundary function, or AS/400s. Select the check box to enable discovery support.

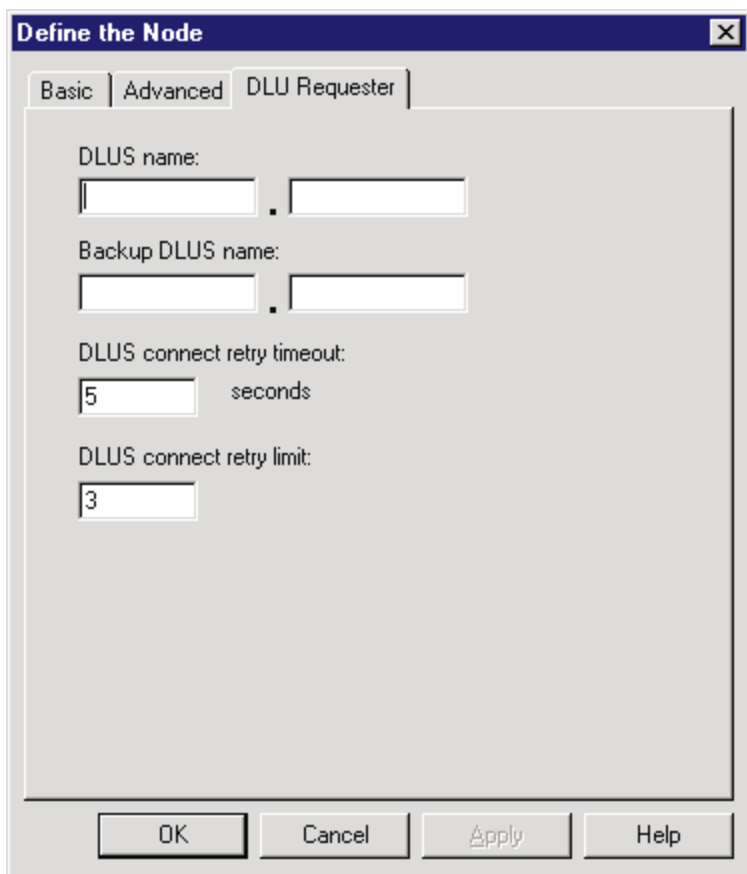


Figure 91. Define the Node Notebook: DLU Requester Tab (Local 3172)

On the **DLU Requester** tab (Figure 91), accept the default values for the following parameters:

DLUS connect retry timeout

Specifies the time between attempts to reconnect a dependent logical unit server (DLUS). This parameter is based on the **DLUS connect retry limit** parameter. Take the default of 5.

DLUS connect retry limit

Specifies the maximum number of attempts to reconnect a DLUS without receiving an acknowledgment in the time set by the **DLUS connect retry timeout** parameter. Take the default of 3.

Click **OK** to save these configuration settings.

Local 3172 Device Configuration

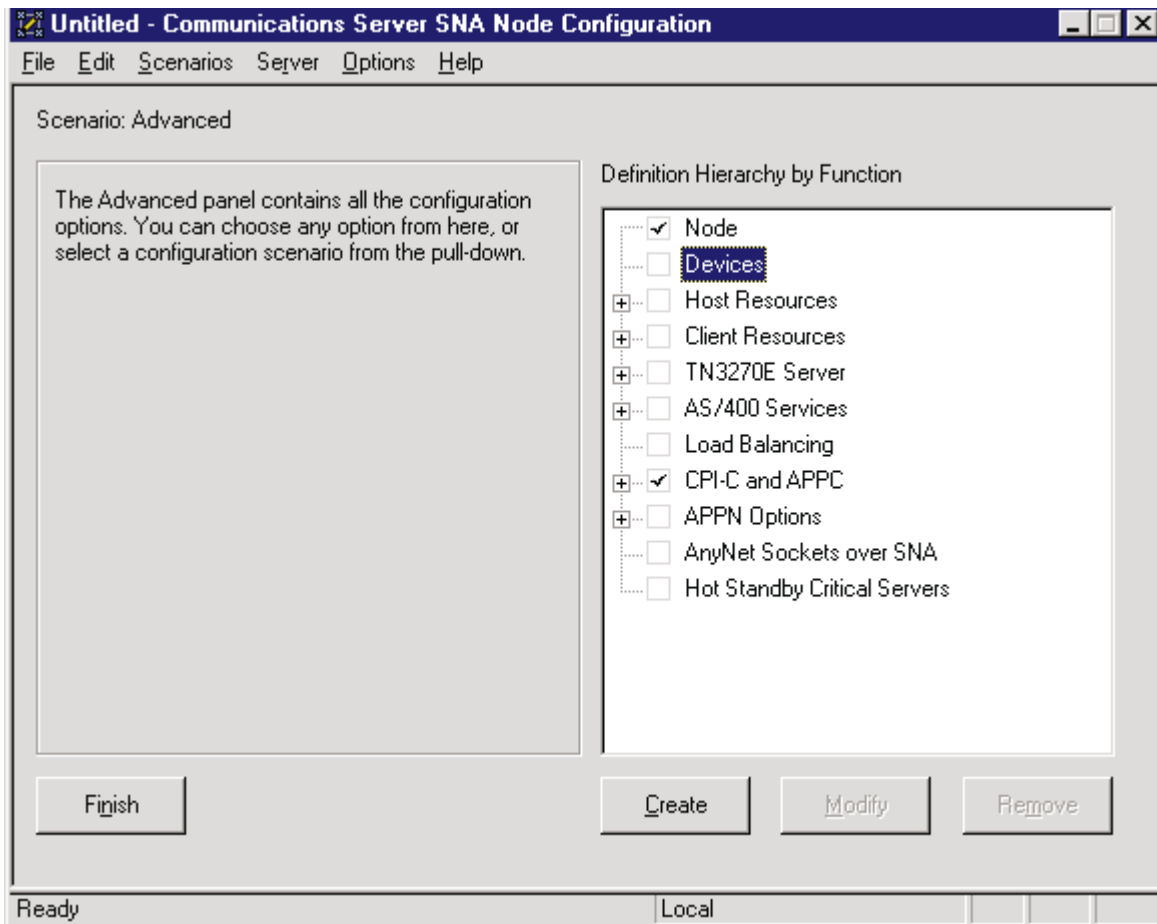


Figure 92. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Devices (Local 3172)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 92), right-click the **Devices** box and select the **Create** option. The Device Type pop-up window (Figure 93) opens.

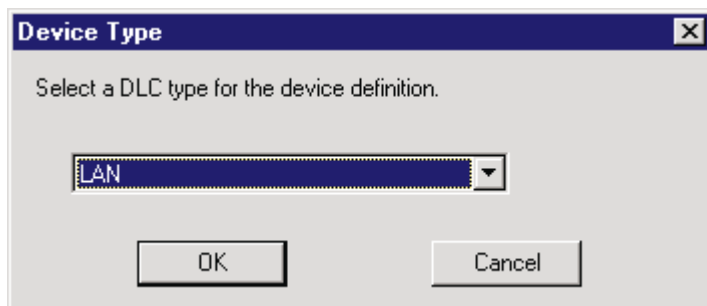


Figure 93. Device Type Window (Local 3172)

Select **LAN** as your data link control (DLC) type. A DLC is a set of rules that nodes on a data link (such as an SDLC link or a token ring) use to accomplish an orderly exchange of information.

Click **OK** to save this configuration setting.

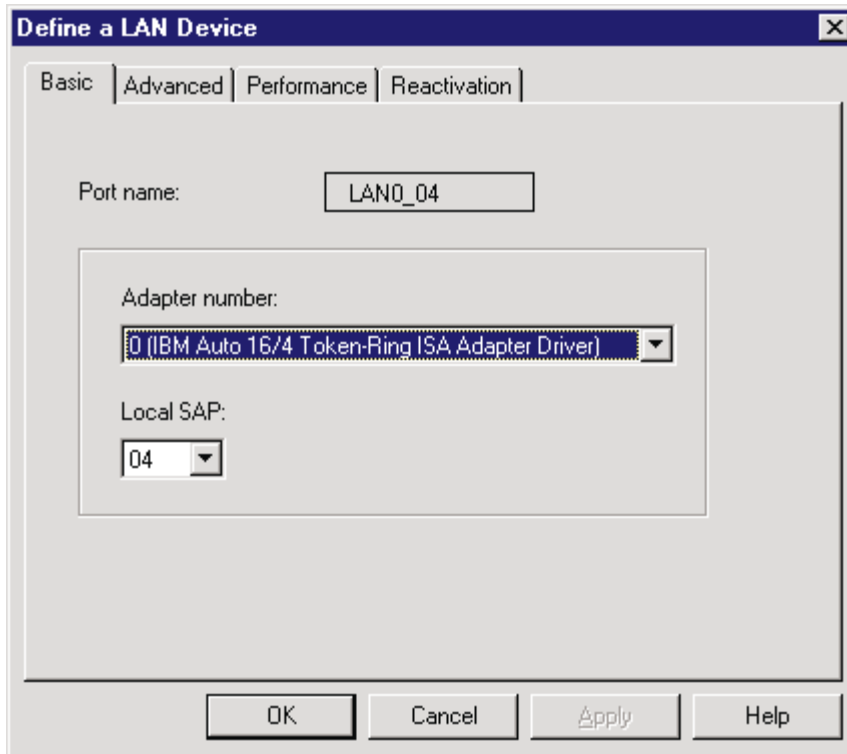


Figure 94. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Basic** tab of the Define a LAN Device notebook (Figure 94), supply the following values:

Port name

Specifies the port name of the physical connection to the link hardware. This value consists of the word **LAN**, the adapter number, and the local SAP number, with an underscore between the adapter number and the local SAP number. Accept the value that is displayed.

Adapter number

Specifies a value from 0 to 7 that uniquely identifies this adapter. You may have both token-ring and ethernet adapters defined at your installation. Ensure that you select the proper token-ring LAN adapter.

Local SAP

Specifies the local service access point (SAP) number of the local port as a hexadecimal value from 04 through FC. Note that this number must be a multiple of four. Take the default of 04.

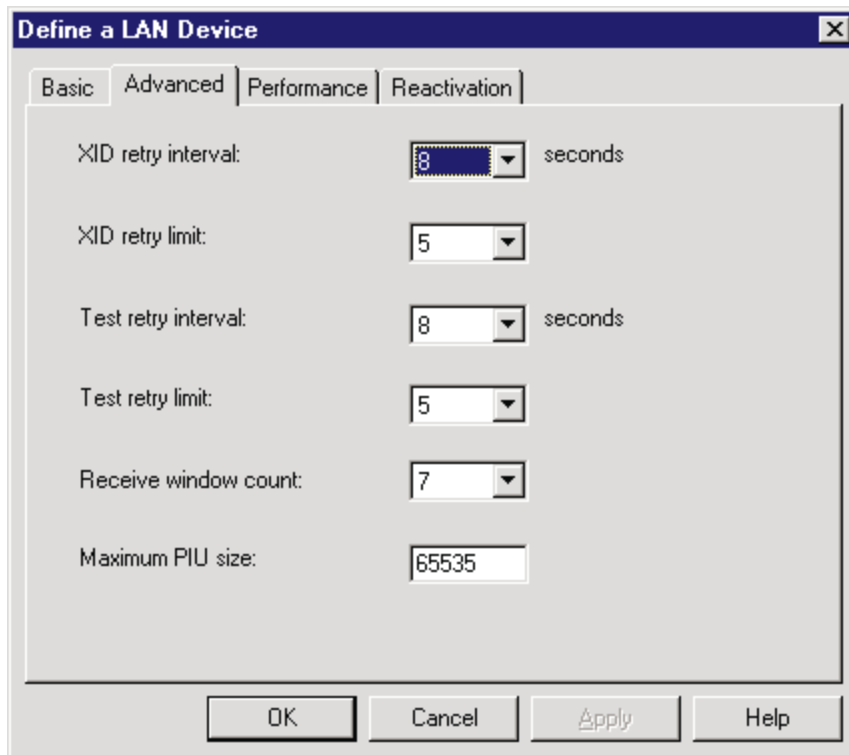


Figure 95. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 95), supply the following values:

XID retry interval

Specifies the time the link station waits for a reply to a previous **XID** command before resending that command. Specify 8. If the link station is a calling link station, this value causes it to try to establish a link connection with the local 3172 communication controller every 8 seconds, until a link connection can be established.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, this parameter replaces the **Response Timeout** parameter from the **Token-Ring SNA DLC** profile.

XID retry limit

Specifies the maximum number of times an **XID** command will be retransmitted before Communications Server for NT presumes that the link is broken and stops retrying. Specify 5. The previous parameter defines the interval between the attempts.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, this parameter replaces the **XID Retransmit count** parameter from the **Token-Ring SNA DLC** profile.

Test retry interval

Specifies the time between attempts to find the adjacent link station on the LAN. This parameter is needed to establish communication with the network and does not necessarily relate to VTAM or the PSF host system. The number of times an **XID** is sent is based on the configured **XID retry limit**.

Test retry limit

Specifies the number of times Communications Server attempts to find the adjacent link station on the LAN. Specify a value from 3 to 30.

Receive window count

Specifies a value that should be equal to the **MAXOUT** value in the VTAM switched major node **PU** statement. The **Receive window count** defines the size of the link-level window. It specifies the maximum number of frames to receive before sending a link-level acknowledgement. The VTAM **PU MAXOUT** value indicates the number of frames the local 3172 communication controller sends before waiting for a link-level acknowledgement. If the **MAXOUT** operand is less than the **Receive window count** field, extremely poor throughput can result. The default **MAXOUT** value is 1. The default **Receive window count** value is 8. You must adjust these defaults to produce acceptable throughput.

Maximum PIU size

Specifies a value between 99 and 65535 bytes that represents the maximum number of bytes in the data buffer that SNA sessions use for this link. If the **Maximum PIU size** exceeds the frame size supported by your local device driver, the value will be reduced to match the frame size.

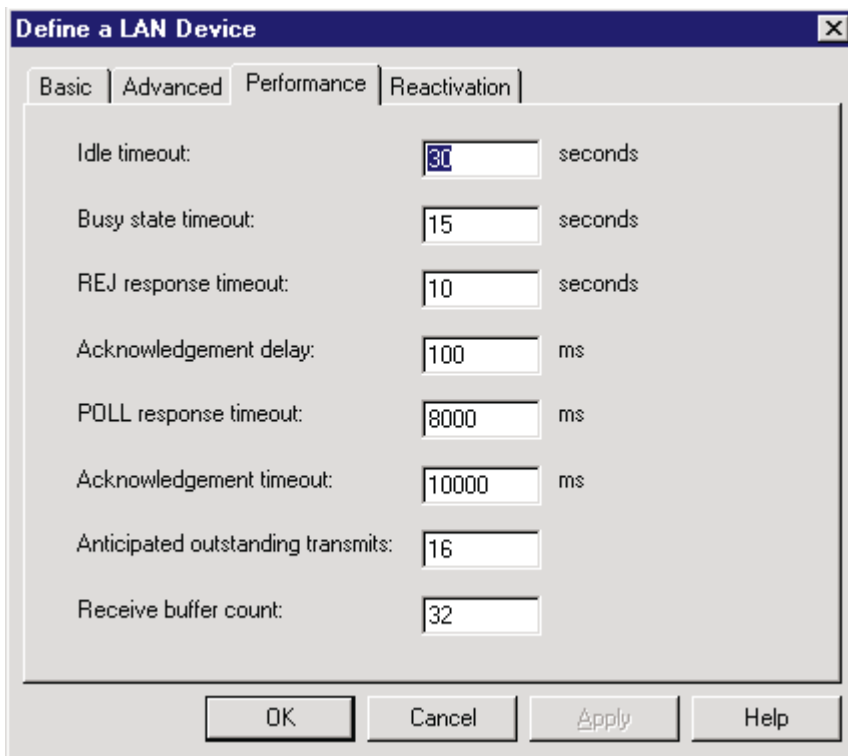


Figure 96. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Performance Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Performance** tab (Figure 96), accept the default values.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, see Table 4 on page 83 for a map of the parameters on the **Performance** tab to the corresponding AIX values.

Table 4. Windows NT and AIX Parameters for LAN Device Performance (Local 3172)

Windows NT Parameter	AIX Parameter
Idle timeout	Inactivity time-out
Busy state timeout	n/a
Acknowledgement delay	n/a
Acknowledgement timeout	Acknowledgement timeout
POLL response timeout	n/a
Anticipated outstanding transmits	Transmit window count
Receive buffer count	n/a

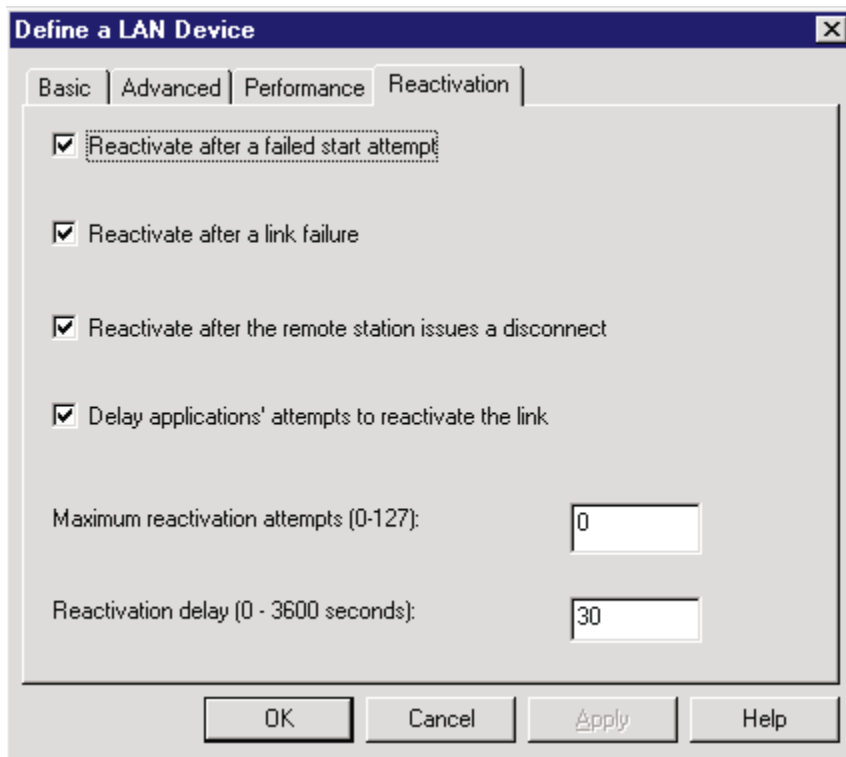


Figure 97. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Reactivation Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Reactivation** tab (Figure 97), accept the default values.

Click **OK** to save these configuration settings.

Enabling SNA API Clients for Local 3172

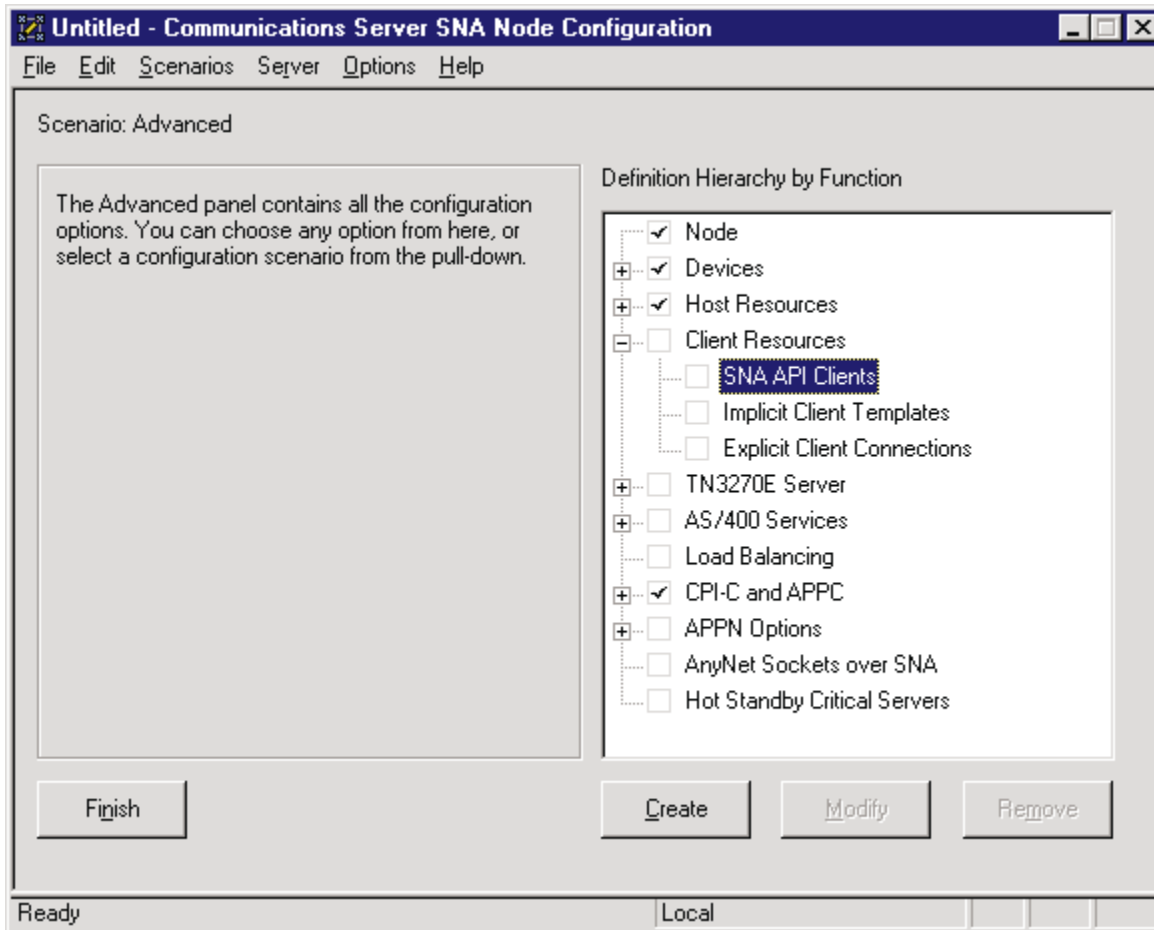


Figure 98. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: SNA API Clients (Local 3172)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 98), right-click the **Client Resources** box, then the **SNA API Clients** box. The SNA Clients window opens.

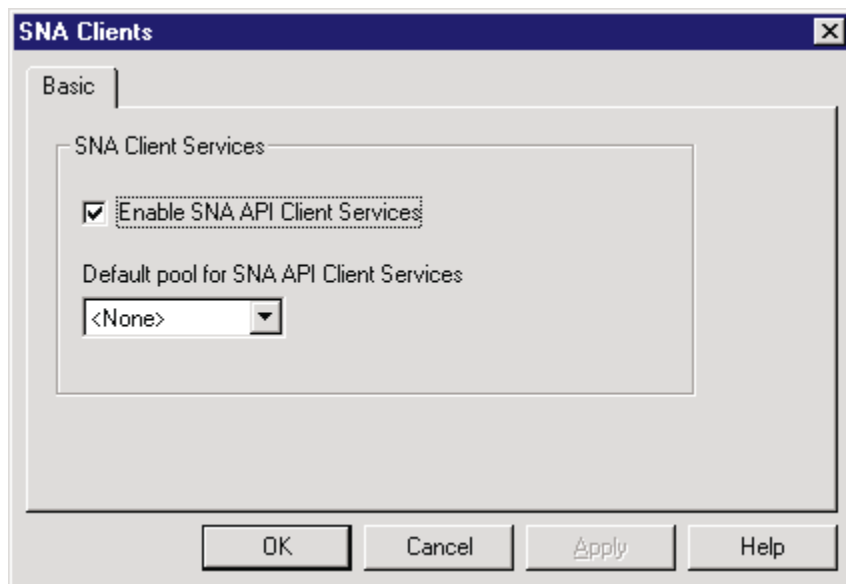


Figure 99. SNA Clients Window (Local 3172)

In the SNA Clients window (Figure 99), check the **Enable SNA API Client Services** box.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Local 3172 Peer Connections Configuration

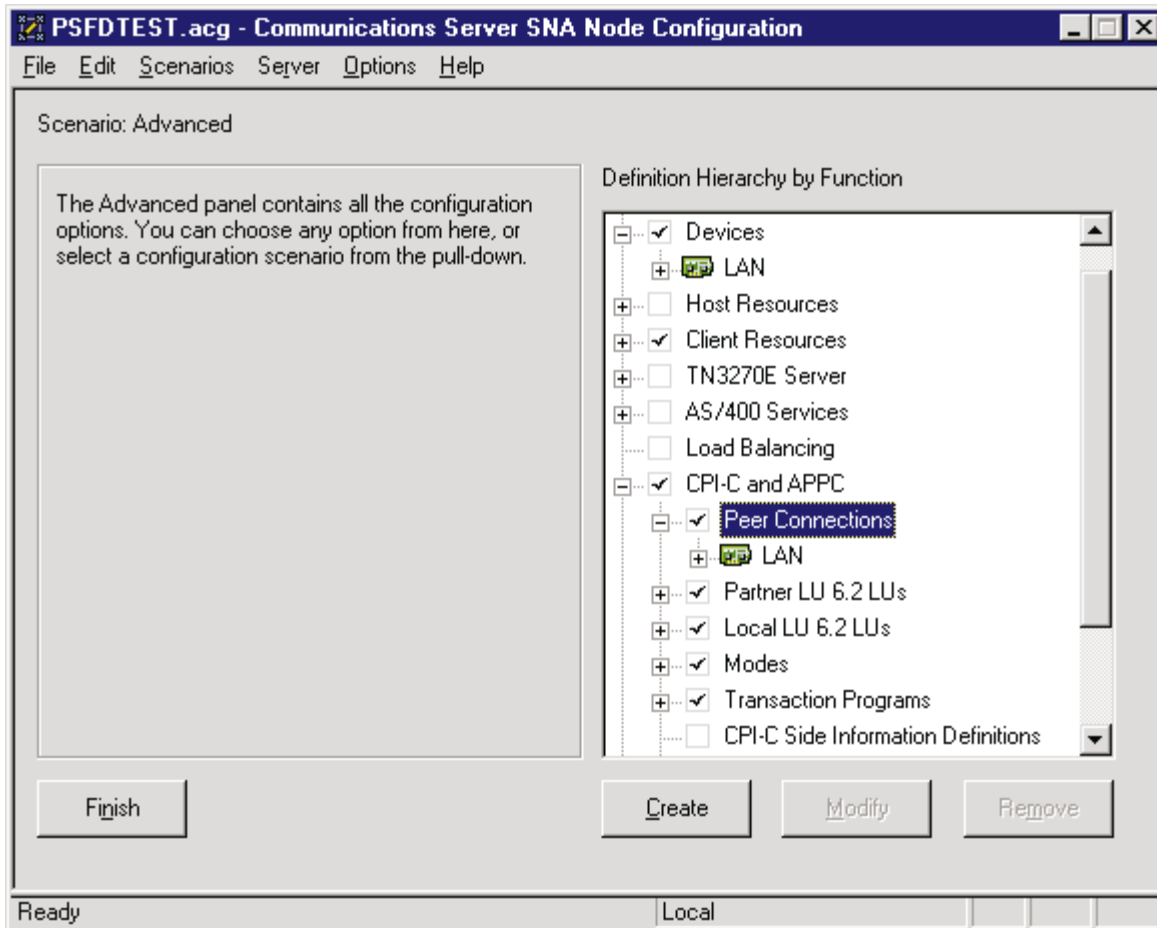


Figure 100. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Peer Connections (Local 3172)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 100), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Peer Connections** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a LAN Connection notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

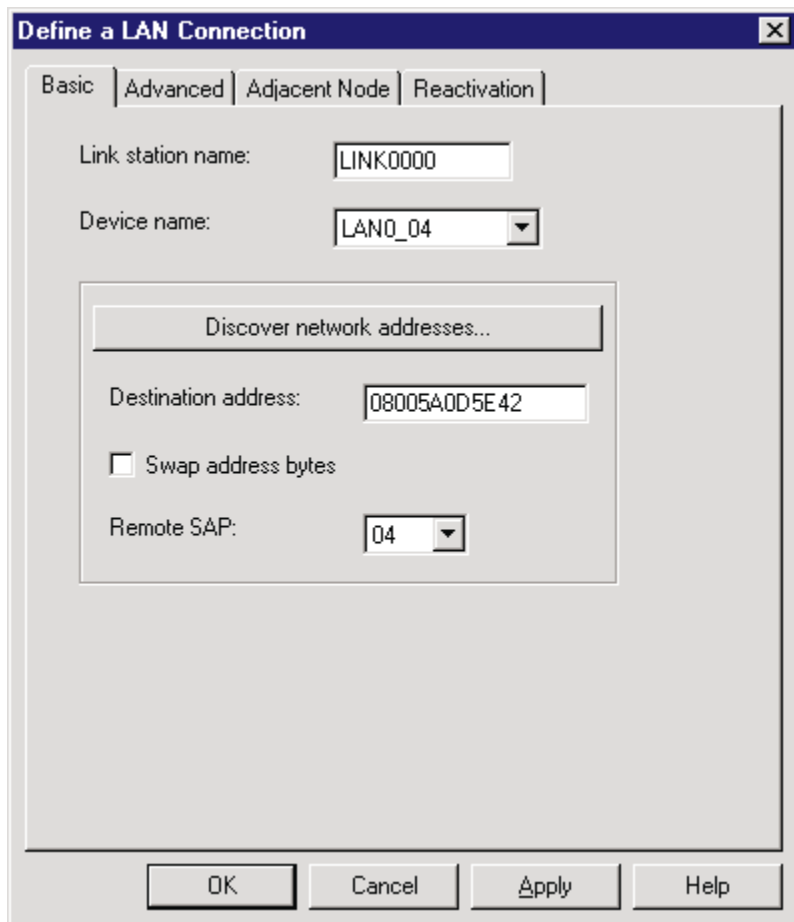


Figure 101. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 101), supply the following values:

Link station name

Specifies a 1- to 8-byte character string that is used to identify a connection. The contents of this field will vary, depending on the number of links at your installation.

Device name

Specifies the name of the port associated with this link station. This value must match the **Port name** value specified on the **Basic** tab of the Define a LAN Device notebook (Figure 94 on page 80).

Destination address

Specifies a 12-character hexadecimal string that specifies the address to activate a connection to the destination. This value must be specified so the NT system can search for and call the PSF host program.

Swap address bytes

Check this field to bit-swap the address in the **Destination address** field. You may need to select this check box if the next link in the network is an Ethernet link. If not, you can use the default (unchecked).

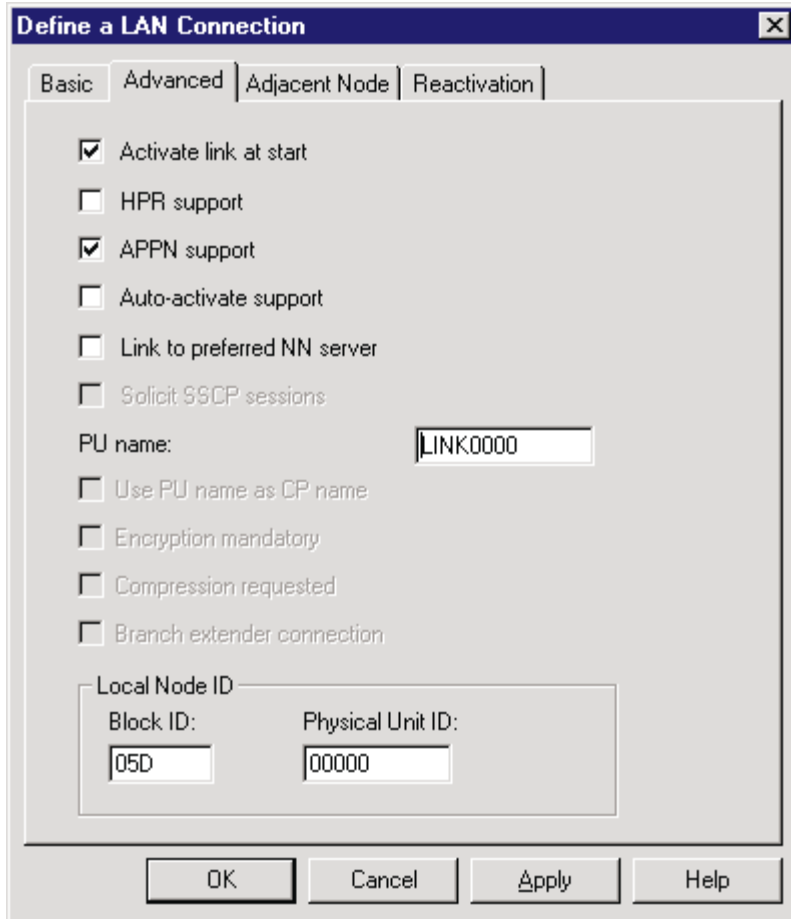


Figure 102. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 102), supply the following values:

Activate link at start

Specifies that you will use the link reactivation values specified in the port (device) link reactivation definition. Ensure that you select this check box.

APPN support

Specifies whether this connection supports CP-CP sessions. Select the check box to specify APPN support.

PU name

Specifies the physical unit (PU) name. This is the name of the component that manages and monitors the resources (such as attached links and adjacent link station) associated with a node. The default PU name is automatically created. You can change this definition.

Block ID

Identifies the product type in an SNA network.

Physical Unit ID

Identifies the physical unit (PU) or component that manages and monitors the resources (such as attached links and adjacent link stations that are associated with a node.

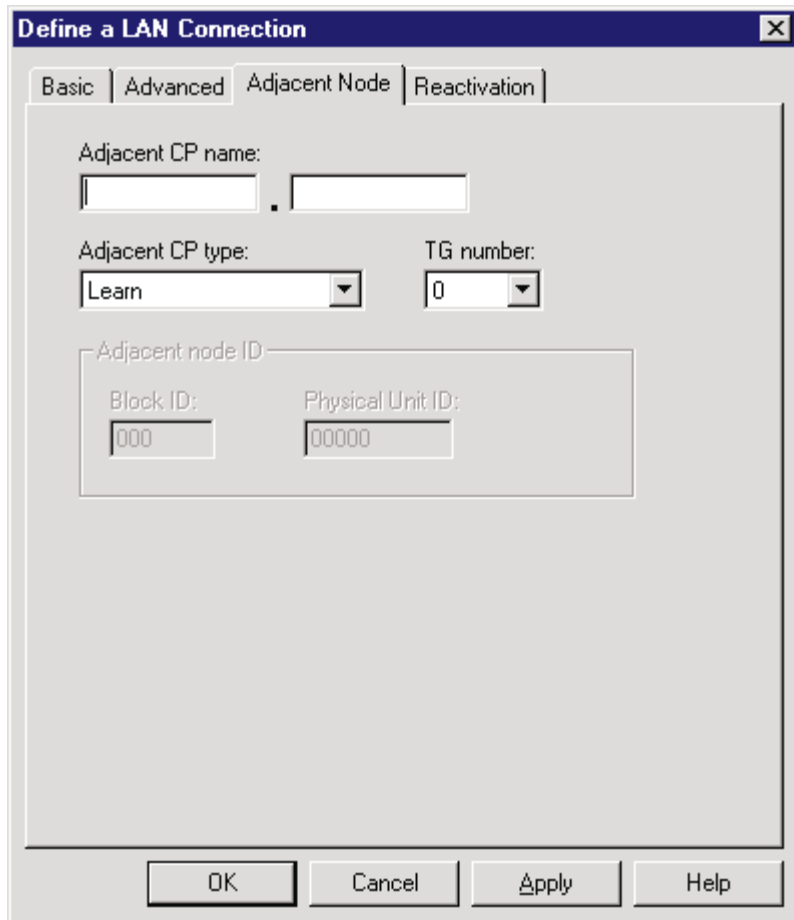


Figure 103. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Adjacent Node Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Adjacent Node** tab (Figure 103), accept the default values.

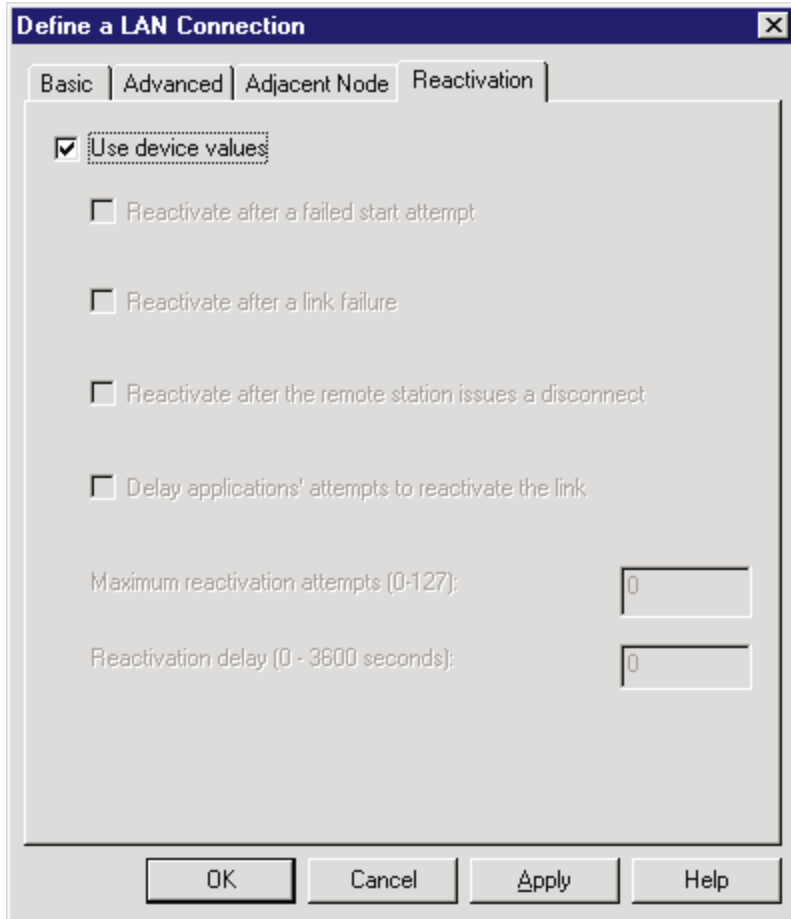


Figure 104. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Reactivation Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Reactivation** tab (Figure 104), accept the default values.

Note that after you select **OK**, a pop-up window appears asking:
Do you want to automatically route all APPC sessions over this connection?

You must reply yes before the configuration is accepted.

Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for Local 3172

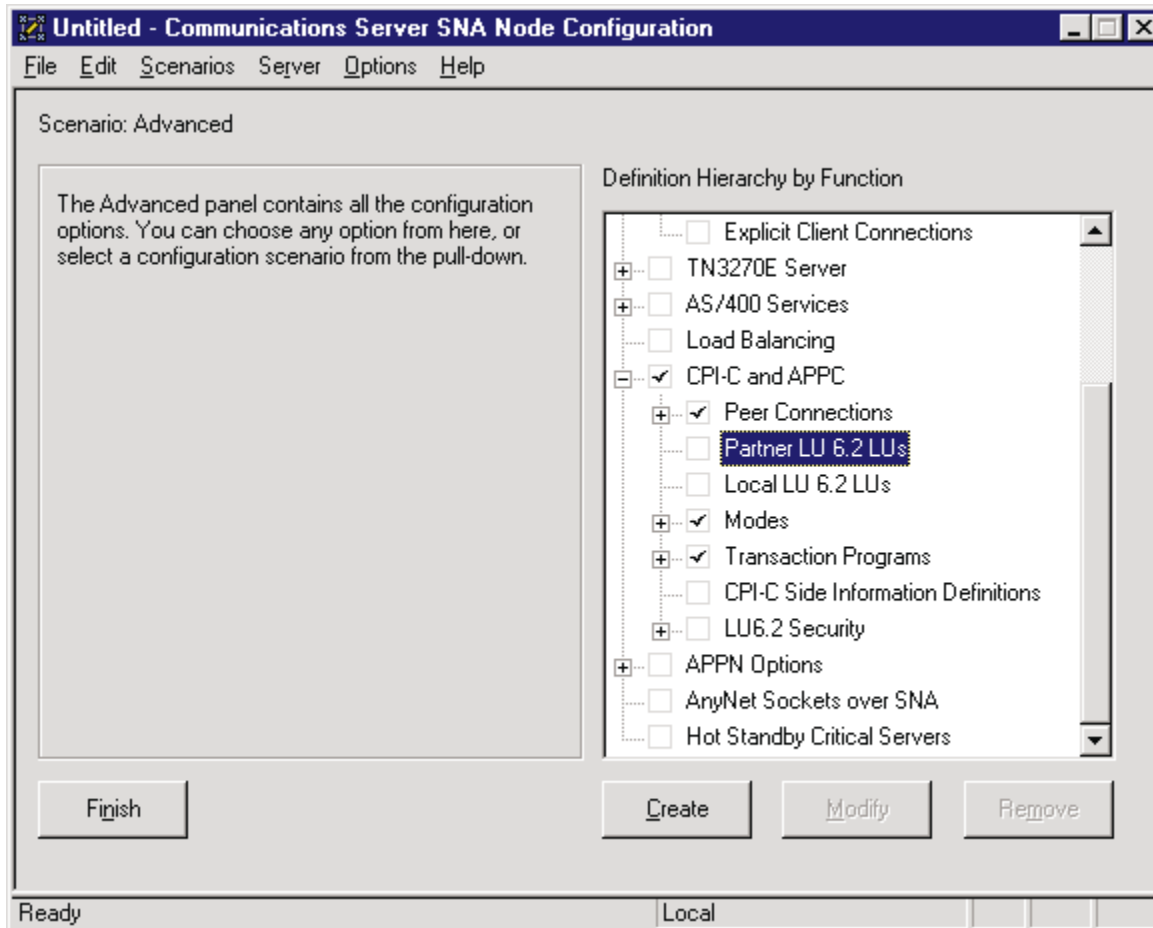


Figure 105. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Partner LU 6.2 LUs (Local 3172)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 105), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Partner LU 6.2 LUs** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

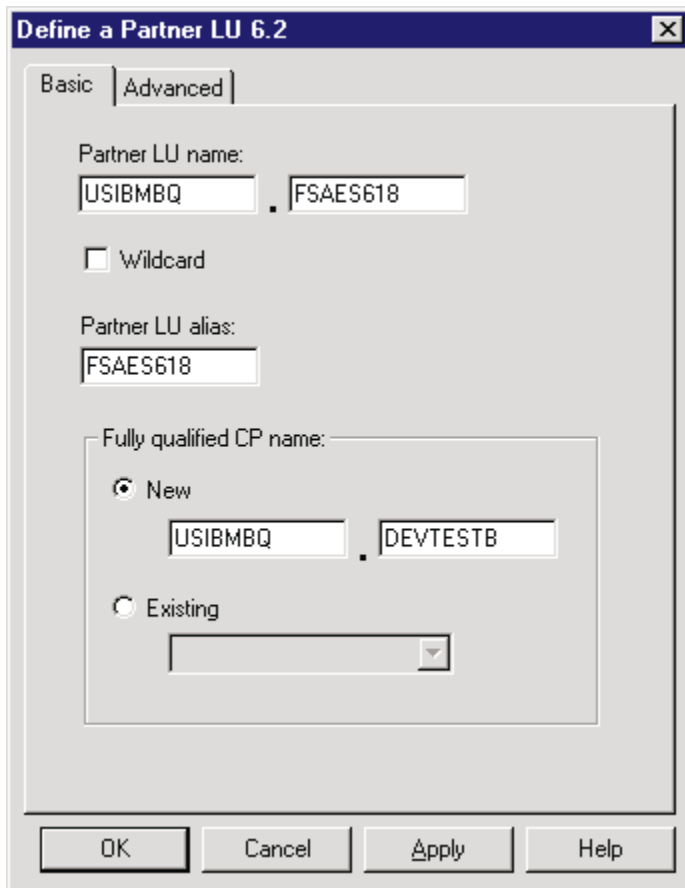


Figure 106. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 106), supply the following values:

Partner LU name

Specifies the network identifier of the network in which the host PSF program resides (followed by a period), and the logical unit name used by the host PSF program. The network identifier portion must match the **NETID** value in the VTAM start option list (ATCSTRxx) (see “Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx)” on page 65). The logical unit name portion must match the **APPLID** parameter in one of these places:

- The PSF for OS/390 **PRINTDEV** statement
- The PSF/VSE **PRINTDEV** statement
- the PSF/VM **OPTIONS PDM** file

That **APPLID** parameter on the PSF host system must also match an **APPL** statement in a VTAM application program major node. (Do not check the **Wildcard** check box.)

Partner LU alias

Specifies the alternate name for the partner LU. Local applications can use this name, instead of the fully qualified LU name, to refer to the partner LU. While you can choose any meaningful value, IBM recommends specifying the second qualifier of the **Partner LU name**.

Fully qualified CP name

Select: **New** to enter the fully qualified CP name of the partner LU’s

owning control point. Communications Server for NT requires this field. Infoprint Manager uses this field as the target for any alerts sent by the PSF Direct program.

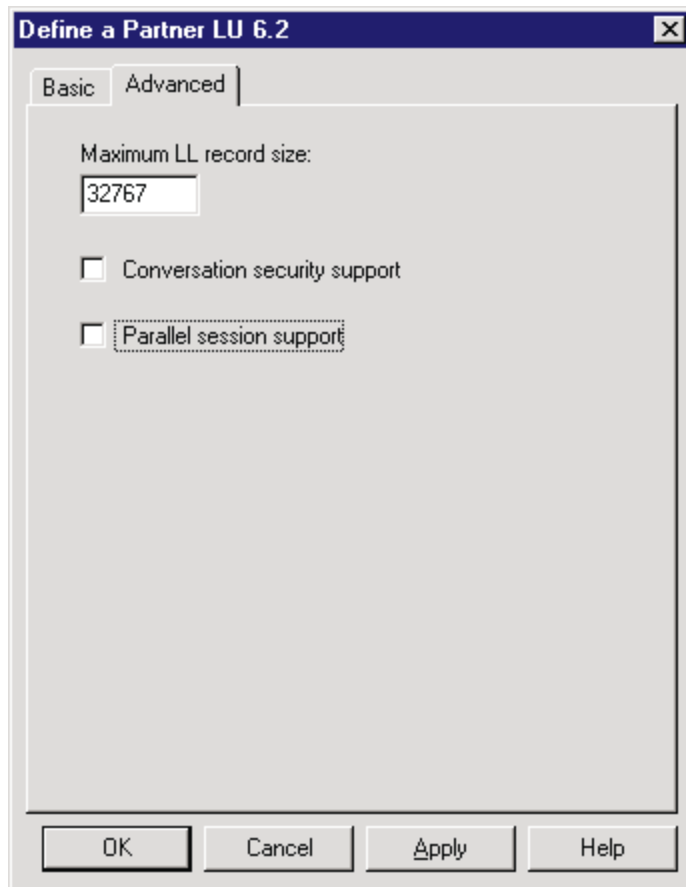


Figure 107. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 107), supply the following values:

Maximum LL record size

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the maximum size of the logical record in the data stream for basic conversations. Specify the default (32767), because the PSF host program and the PSF Direct host receiver should both be able to handle the full range.

Conversation security support

Specifies that the partner logical unit (LU) is authorized to validate the user identifiers for the local LUs. Select the check box to specify conversation security support if you have matching support on the host PSF program. If not, leave this box unchecked.

Parallel session support

Specifies whether the partner LU supports two or more currently active sessions between the same two LUs by using different pairs of network addresses or session identifiers. Because neither PSF Direct nor the PSF host programs support two sessions with the same partner LU, do not select this check box.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Local LU 6.2 Configuration for Local 3172

Dependent or Independent LU?

This procedure configures an *independent* LU. You cannot use it to configure a *dependent* LU. If you require dependent LUs, see “Deciding whether to Define a Dependent or an Independent LU” on page 14.

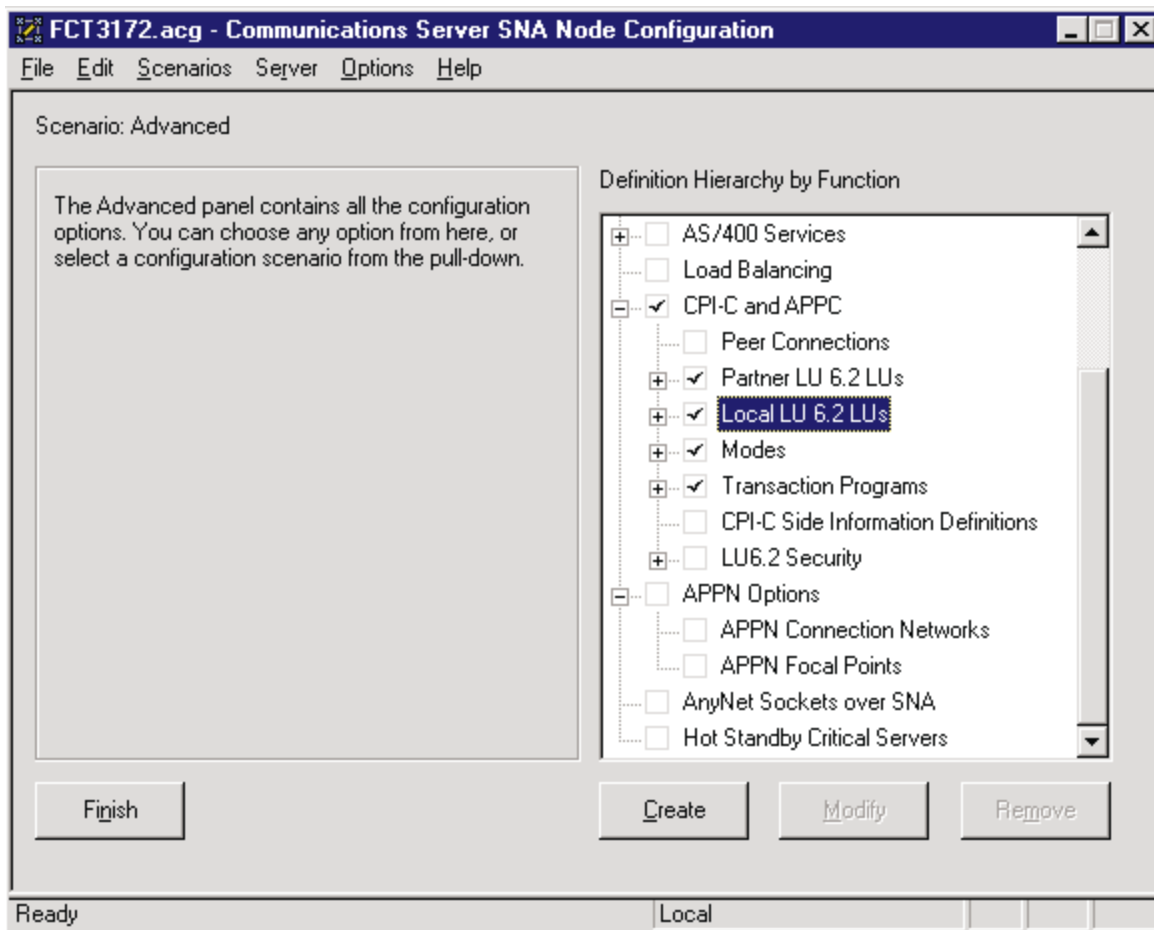


Figure 108. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Local LU 6.2 LUs (Local 3172)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 108), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Local LU 6.2 LUs** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Local LU 6.2 notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

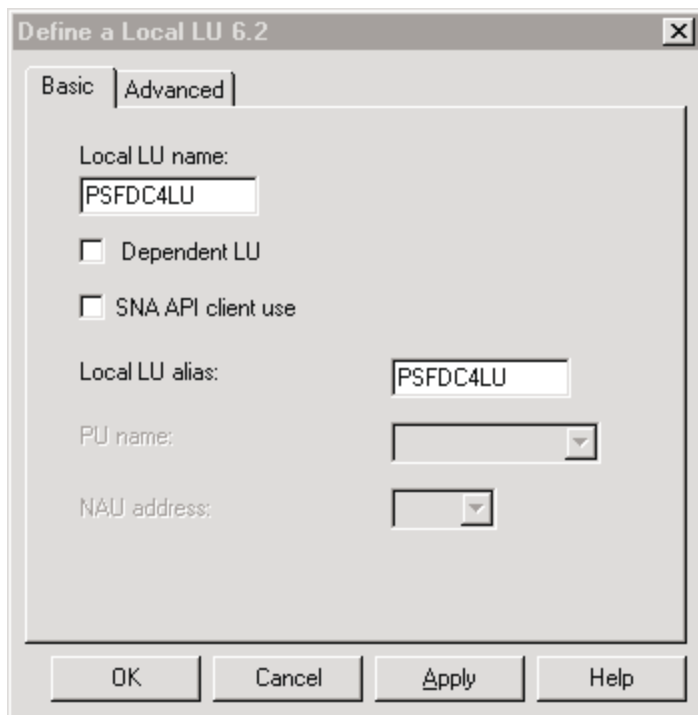


Figure 109. Define a Local LU 6.2 Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 109), supply the following values:

Local LU name

Specifies a 1- to 8-byte character string that identifies your workstation and gives transaction programs access to the network. This name must match the partner LU that you have defined at the host PSF program.

Local LU alias

Specifies the name for the local LU that is used by Infoprint Manager when configuring the PSF Direct host receiver.

Dependent LU

Specifies whether this LU requires assistance from a system services control point (SSCP) in order to initiate an LU-LU session. When this check box is selected, the LU must be specified as dependent on the host PSF program. Because this procedure is for an independent LU, do not check the box.

SNA API client use

Because this LU will be used by a server-based transaction program (TP), do not check this box.

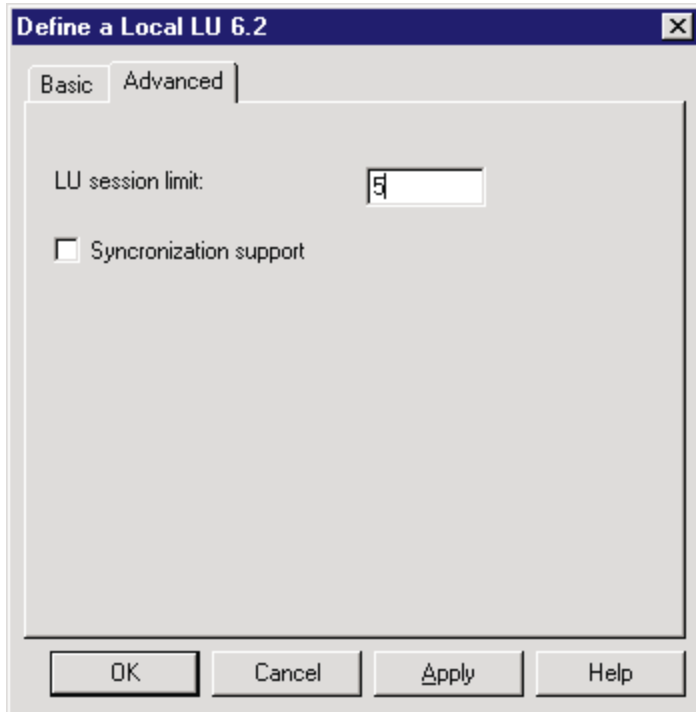


Figure 110. Define a Local LU 6.2 Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 110), supply the following values:

LU session limit

Specifies the maximum number of sessions that the LU supports as a value between 0 and 65535. Specify 5.

Note: The application program supports only one LU session at a time, but the SNA session can support more.

Synchronization support

Select this check box if another application is supplying synchronization point management (DB/2, for example). In this instance, do not select it.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Mode Configuration for Local 3172

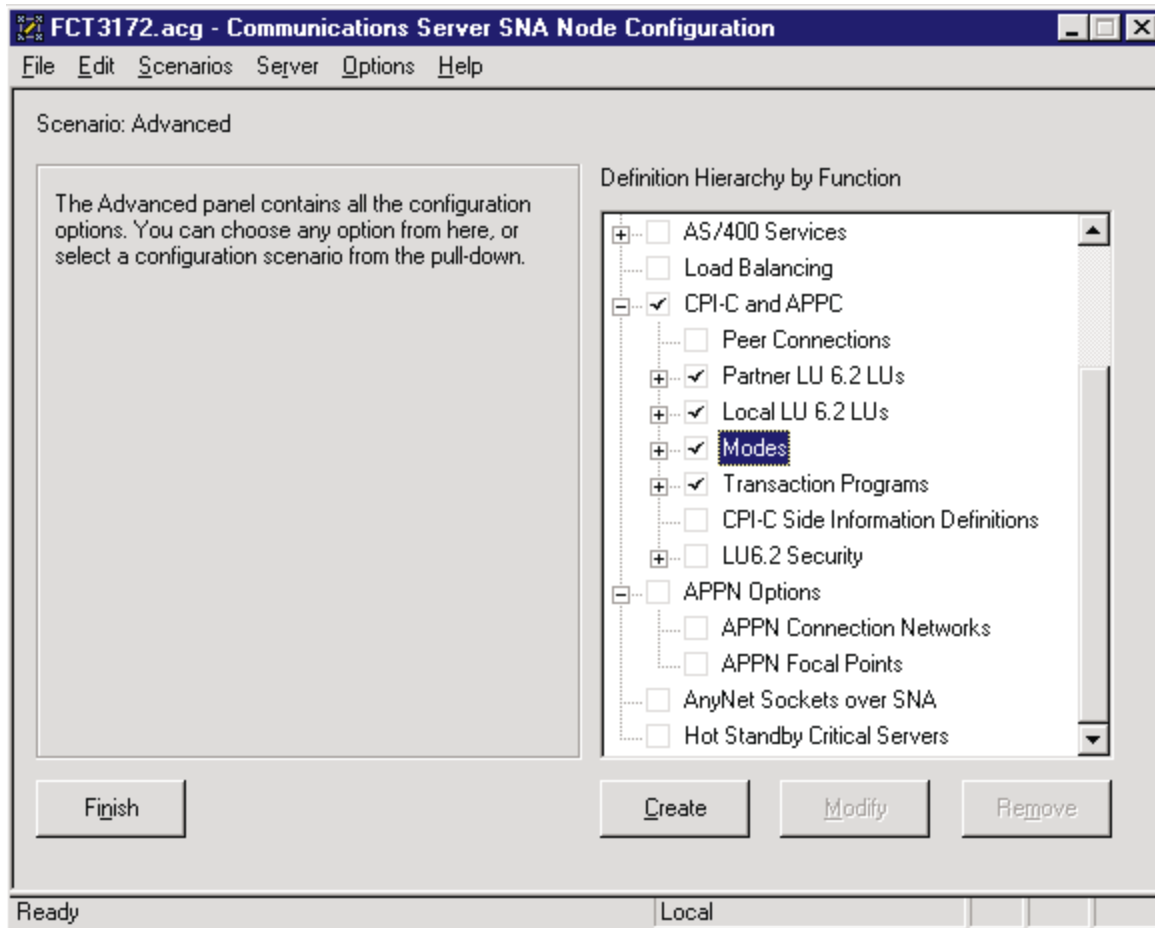


Figure 111. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Modes (Local 3172)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 111), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Modes** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Mode notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

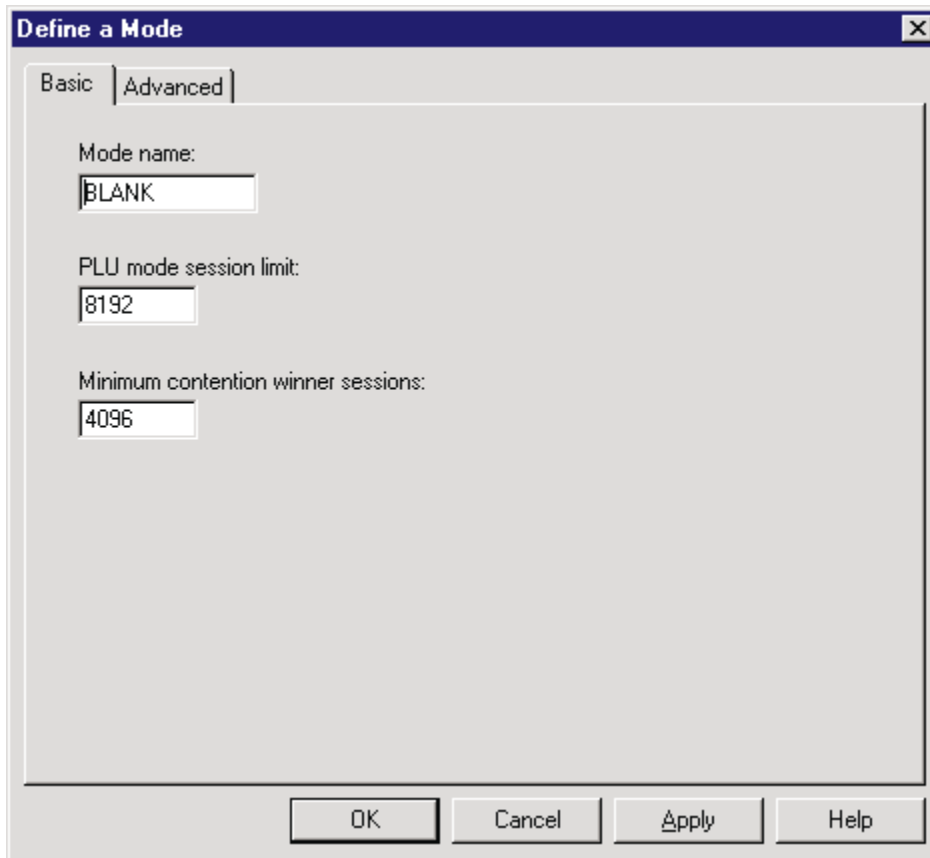


Figure 112. Define a Mode Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 112), supply the following values:

Mode name

Specifies the characteristics for the session that will be allocated for the conversation. The initiator uses this value. The **Mode name** in the **BLANK** profile is 8 spaces.

PLU mode session limit

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the primary logical unit (PLU) mode session limit, or maximum number of concurrently active LU-LU sessions that a particular LU can support. Take the default.

Minimum contention winner sessions

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the minimum number of sessions that a local LU using this mode can activate to win a contention with a partner. Take the default.

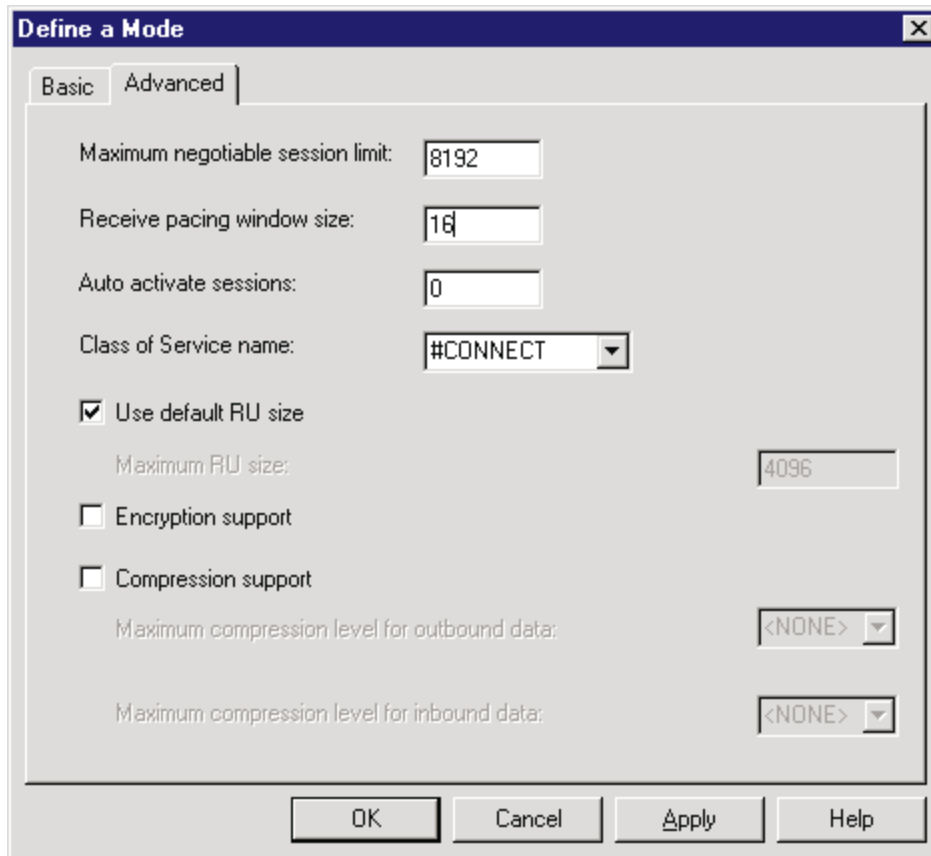


Figure 113. Define a Mode Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 113), supply the following values:

Maximum negotiable session limit

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the maximum number of sessions allowed in this mode between any local logical unit (LU) and partner LU. Take the default.

Receive pacing window size

Specifies the secondary receive pacing count. The lesser of this parameter's value and the **SRCVPAC** value in the VTAM **MODEENT** statement is used. (See "Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry" on page 67.) A value of 16 produces good throughput in most configurations. This parameter influences performance and can be adjusted as desired.

Auto activate sessions

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the number of parallel LU 6.2 sessions to automatically start when an initial session starts using this mode. Specify 0 so that no parallel sessions can start automatically for this application.

Class of Service name

Specifies the name of a set of transport network characteristics. Select the default: **#CONNECT** .

Use default RU size

Instructs the node to use the default maximum size for the request/response unit (RU) sent and received on the sessions. Do not select the check box.

Maximum RU size

Set this value to 1024, if it does not automatically specify that value when you remove the check from the **Use default RU size** parameter above.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Transaction Program Configuration for Local 3172

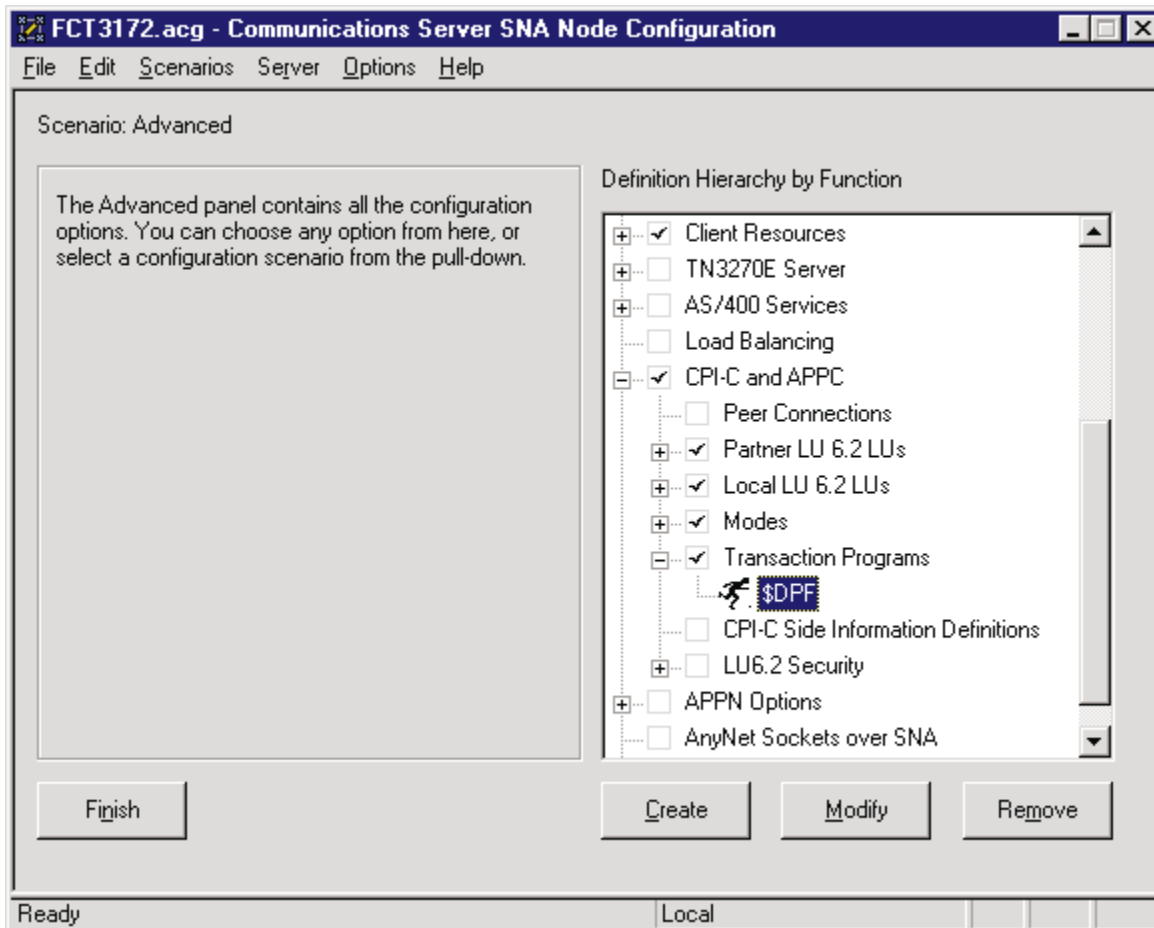


Figure 114. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Transaction Programs (Local 3172)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 114), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Transaction Programs** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Transaction Program notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

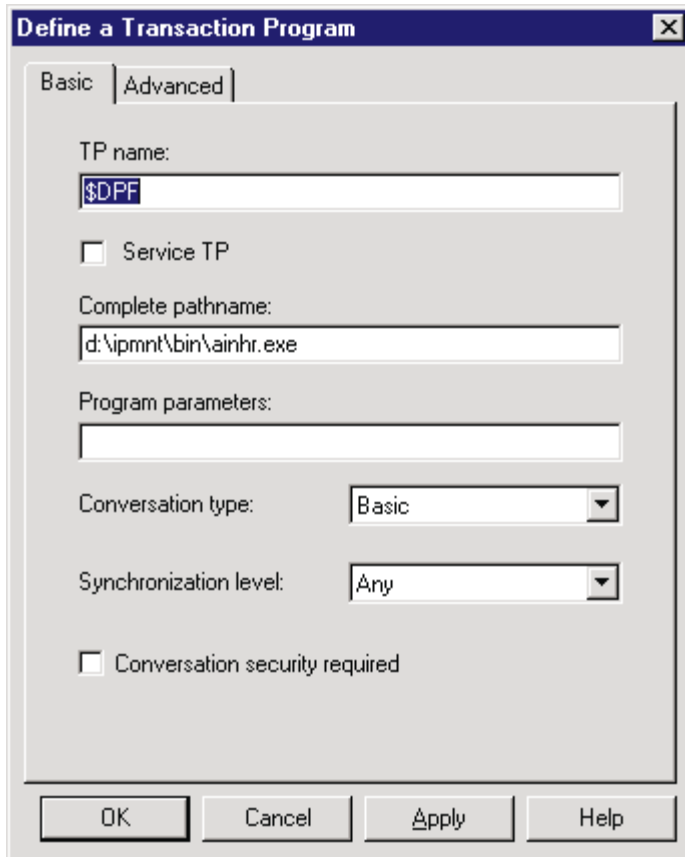


Figure 115. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 115), supply the following values:

TP name

Specifies a 1- to 64-byte character string for the program that uses the advanced program-to-program communications (APPC) system to communicate with a partner application program at the partner node. Enter **\$DPF**. If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, note that this value changes from a binary 30F0F0F0 to a non-binary **\$DPF**. Ensure that the **Service TP** check box is unchecked because it indicates a non-binary value.

Complete pathname

Specifies an 1- to 255-byte character string that describes the location of the program to run. The location can include the drive, the directory, the subdirectory, and the file name. In this example, `d:\ipmnt\bin\ainhr.exe` specifies the location where Infoprint Manager for NT is installed on your system.

Conversation type

Specifies the conversation type allowed to start the transaction programs (TPs) that use an LU 6.2 session. Select **Basic**.

Synchronization level

Specifies the level allowed on allocation requests that start the local and remote transaction programs (TPs). Select **Any**.

Conversation security required

Allows controlled access to system resources through security parameters.

If this check box is selected, conversation security information is required to start the TP. Incoming allocation requests for this TP without the conversation security information will be rejected. Do not check this box.

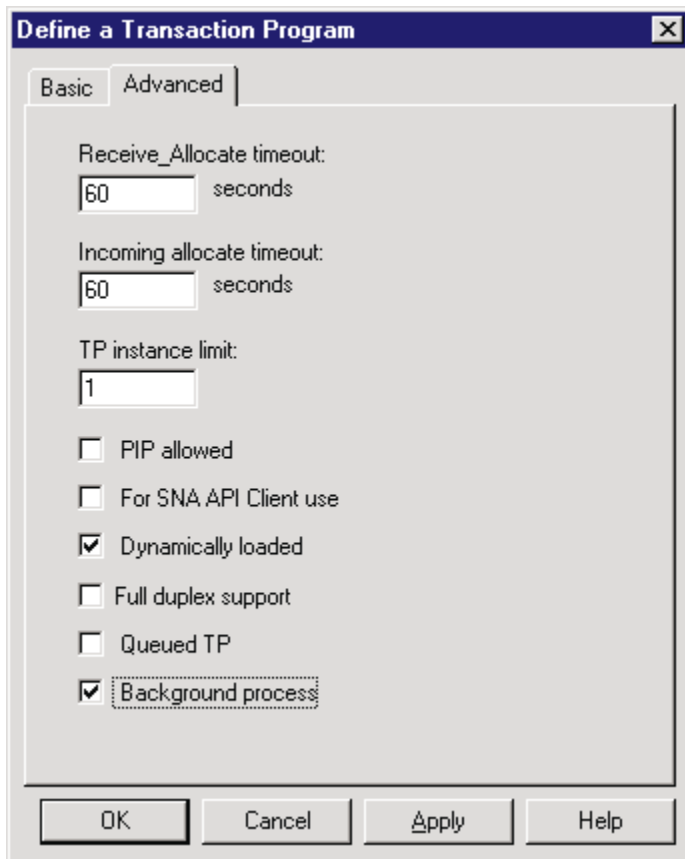


Figure 116. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3172)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 116), supply the following values:

Receive_Allocate timeout

Specifies a value between 0 and 65535 seconds that identifies the time that a **Receive_Allocate** verb will be queued while waiting for an **Attach**. Specify 60.

Incoming allocate timeout

Specifies a value between 0 and 65535 seconds that identifies the time that an incoming **Attach** will be queued waiting for a **Receive_Allocate**. Specify 60.

TP instance limit

Specifies a value between 0 and 65535 seconds that identifies the maximum number of concurrently active TP instances. Specify at least 1 (or the number of LUs that you have defined). 0 means no limit.

Dynamically loaded

Specifies whether the transaction program (TP) can be dynamically started by an allocation request received on a conversation. Select the check box to dynamically load the TP.

Background process

Specifies that the program will run in the background. Only 32-bit programs can multitask in the Windows NT environment. Select the check box to use the background process.

Note: Ensure that **Dynamically loaded** and **Background process** (the two items checked in Figure 116 on page 102) are the only items checked. If you specify other options, this transaction program will not work.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Once you have completed creating this configuration, go to “Chapter 9. Starting an IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT Configuration” on page 229.

Local 3172 Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheets

Use the following work sheets to configure PSF Direct on both the host PSF and Infoprint Manager for NT:

- Use Table 5 to see how Communications Server for NT configuration settings relate to other configuration settings.
- Use Table 6 on page 105 to record your own Communications Server for NT values.

Local 3172 Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheet Example

Table 5. Local 3172 Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheet Example

Communication Server	Value	Infoprint Manager	VTAM	3172
Define the Node: Fully-qualified CP name	DEVTESTB		PU <i>name</i> PU CPNAME	
Define the Node: Local Node ID	05D00000		PU IDBLK PU IDNUM	
Define a LAN Device: Receive window count	7		PU MAXOUT	
Define a LAN Device: Maximum PIU size	65535			
Define a LAN Connection: Destination address	08005A0D5E42			Universal MAC address
Define a Partner LU 6.2: Partner LU name	USIBMBQ.FSAES618	APPLID	ATCSTR xx NETID APPL <i>name</i>	
Define a Local LU 6.2: Local LU name	PSFDC4LU	LUNAME	LU <i>name</i>	
Define a Local LU 6.2: Dependent LU	Not selected (address 0)		LU LOCADDR	
Define a Mode: Mode name	BLANK			
Define a Mode: Receive pacing window size	16		MODEENT SRCVPAC	
Define a Mode: Maximum RU size	1024		MODEENT RUSIZES	

Local 3172 Token-Ring Configuration Blank Work Sheet

Table 6. Local 3172 Token-Ring Configuration Blank Work Sheet

Communication Server	Value	Infoprint Manager	VTAM	3172
Define the Node: Fully-qualified CP name			PU <i>name</i> PU CPNAME	
Define the Node: Local Node ID			PU IDBLK PU IDNUM	
Define a LAN Device: Receive window count			PU MAXOUT	
Define a LAN Device: Maximum PIU size				
Define a LAN Connection: Destination address				Universal MAC address
Define a Partner LU 6.2: Partner LU name		APPLID	ATCSTRxx NETID APPL <i>name</i>	
Define a Local LU 6.2: Local LU name		LUNAME	LU <i>name</i>	
Define a Local LU 6.2: Dependent LU			LU LOCADDR	
Define a Mode: Mode name				
Define a Mode: Receive pacing window size			MODEENT SRCVPAC	
Define a Mode: Maximum RU size			MODEENT RUSIZES	

Chapter 6. Local 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration

Figure 117 shows a local 3174 token-ring gateway configuration.

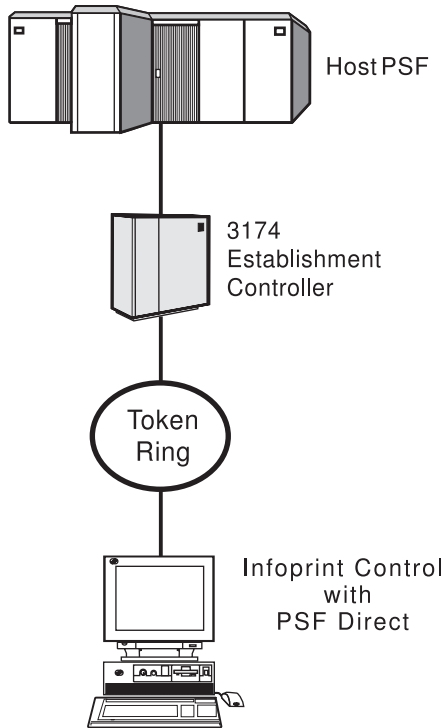


Figure 117. Local 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration

This chapter describes how to create a local 3174 token-ring gateway configuration. It contains guidelines and examples for the following tasks:

- “Local 3174 Host Configuration” on page 108
 - “Specifying the JES2 Initialization Statement” on page 108
 - “Configuring the Host PSF Printer” on page 108
 - “Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx)” on page 111
 - “Specifying the VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn)” on page 112
 - “Specifying the VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program” on page 113
 - “Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry” on page 113
 - “Specifying the VTAM Local Major Node” on page 114
 - “Configuring the 3174 Establishment Controller” on page 115
- “Specifying Communications Server for NT Configuration Profiles” on page 117
 - “Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles” on page 117
 - “Local 3174 Node Setup” on page 119
 - “Local 3174 Device Configuration” on page 123
 - “Local 3174 Peer Connections Configuration” on page 128
 - “Local LU 6.2 Configuration for Local 3174” on page 132
 - “Enabling SNA API Clients for Local 3174” on page 135

- "Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for Local 3174" on page 137
- "Mode Configuration for Local 3174" on page 140
- "Transaction Program Configuration for Local 3174" on page 143

Note: Before performing this configuration, review "Chapter 3. Preconfiguration Tasks" on page 13. You must define an alternate token-ring address (local MAC address) for your Infoprint Windows NT server.

At the end of the chapter, there are two configuration work sheets. The first work sheet (Table 8 on page 147) is filled out with the values from the examples. The second work sheet (Table 9 on page 148) is blank for your own values.

Local 3174 Host Configuration

This section provides guidelines and examples for the following tasks:

- "Specifying the JES2 Initialization Statement"
- "Configuring the Host PSF Printer"
- "Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx)" on page 111
- "Specifying the VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn)" on page 112
- "Specifying the VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program" on page 113
- "Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry" on page 113
- "Specifying the VTAM Local Major Node" on page 114
- "Configuring the 3174 Establishment Controller" on page 115

For each task, this section shows the pertinent parameters. It describes which of these require you to specify *variable_names* and which require a specific name or number, such as `MODETAB=MODEIBM` or `FMPROF=X'13'`. An underlined value (such as WCONNECT) indicates that the value is a system default.

Specifying the JES2 Initialization Statement

Define the host PSF printer as you would any other Systems Network Architecture (SNA)-attached printer. For example, on an OS/390 system you must provide either JES2 or JES3 initialization statements.

Figure 118 shows an example.

```
PRT618 CLASS=Y,MARKS=YES,START=NO,MODE=FSS,FSS=WTRES600, X
PRMODE=(LINE,PAGE),UCS=0
```

Figure 118. JES2 Initialization Statement Example (Local 3174)

Configuring the Host PSF Printer

The manner in which a host PSF printer is configured depends on the operating system. You will use one of the following statements:

- Print Services Facility (PSF) for OS/390 `PRINTDEV` statement
- PSF/VSE `PRINTDEV` statement
- Parameters in the PSF/VM `OPTIONS PDM` file

On each operating system, PSF supports specification of both the application program ID (`APPLID`) and the logical unit name (`LUNAME`).

```
.  
. .  
.  
APPLID=appl_prog  
LUNAME=lu_name  
.  
.  
.
```

Figure 119. Host PSF Printer Guidelines (Local 3174)

On some operating systems, PSF also supports other configuration parameters. The following text describes these parameters (listed in order of importance) and notes whether they are required or optional:

APPLID (required)

Specifies the application program that is the SNA logical unit provided by Virtual Telecommunications Access Method (VTAM) and used by PSF. The **APPLID** value must match:

- An **APPL** statement name in a VTAM application program major node
- The second part of the **Partner LU name** field on the **Basic** tab of the Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook (Figure 154 on page 138)

LUNAME (required)

Specifies the SNA logical unit with which PSF tries to initiate a session. The **LUNAME** value must match:

- An **LU** statement name in a VTAM switched major node
- The **LU name** field in the Host LU Definition window (Figure 149 on page 133)

LOGMODE (optional)

Specifies the VTAM logon mode table entry that defines characteristics of the session between the logical units identified by the **APPLID** and **LUNAME** parameters. The **LOGMODE** parameter identifies an entry within a logon mode table. The **MODETAB** operand on the VTAM **LU** statement identifies the logon mode table. If you omit the **LOGMODE** parameter, the **DLOGMOD** operand on the VTAM **LU** statement identifies the entry within the logon mode table.

Note that if the logical unit identified by the **LUNAME** parameter is a cross-domain resource, you must not use the **LOGMODE** parameter.

SETUP (optional)

Specify **SETUP=FORMS** to cause the Job Entry Subsystem (JES) to issue forms setup messages to the operator.

By default, JES issues forms setup messages to the operator for channel-attached printers, but does not issue forms setup messages to the operator for SNA-attached printers.

MGMTMODE ={IMMED | OUTAVAIL | DIALIN} (optional)

Determines how the host PSF program and PSF Direct initiate communication.

IMMED

Causes the host PSF program to initiate communication when it starts.

OUTAVAIL

Causes the host PSF program to initiate communication when there is available output to print.

DIALIN

Causes the host PSF program to initiate communication only after a switched line becomes available. The switched line can become available either when VTAM dials out or when the remote node dials in.

Note that if you specify **DIALIN**:

- Do not use the **LOGMODE** parameter.
- Include the **LOGAPPL** operand on the VTAM LU statement.
- Ensure that the **LOGAPPL** operand on the VTAM LU statement matches the **APPLID** value.

FAILURE={WCONNECT | STOP} (optional)

Specifies whether or not the host PSF program re-attempts communication after a printer or communication failure. If you do not specify a value for the **FAILURE** parameter, it defaults to **WCONNECT**.

WCONNECT

Specifies that the host PSF program attempts to communicate again.

STOP Specifies that the operator must restart the host PSF program.

DISCINTV (optional)

Specifies the interval (in seconds) that the host PSF program waits for output to become available to print. If no output becomes available, the host PSF program ends communication with the printer.

Specify 0 to cause the host PSF program to maintain communication indefinitely. If you do not specify a value for **DISCINTV**, it defaults to 0.

Figure 120 on page 111 shows an example of a single **PRTDEV** statement for a device named PRT618. Note that if an installation has multiple printers defined for receiving PSF Direct jobs, you must define a separate **PRTDEV** statement for each printer.

```

//WTRES600 PROC
//*
//STEP01 EXEC PGM=APSPPIEP,REGION=4096K
//*
//STEPLIB DD DSN=SYSTEM.PSF.V220.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//*
//JOBHDR OUTPUT PAGEDEF=A06462, /* JOB HEADER PAGEDEF */
// FORMDEF=A10110 /* JOB HEADER FORMDEF */
//JOBTLR OUTPUT PAGEDEF=A06462, /* JOB TRAILER PAGEDEF */
// FORMDEF=A10110 /* JOB TRAILER FORMDEF */
//DSHDR OUTPUT PAGEDEF=A06462, /* DATA SET HEADER PAGEDEF*/
// FORMDEF=A10110 /* DATA SET HEADER FORMDEF*/
//MSGDS OUTPUT PAGEDEF=A06462, /* MESSAGE DATASET PAGEDEF*/
// FORMDEF=A10110 /* MESSAGE DATASET FORMDEF*/
//*
//FONT01 DD DSN=SYS1.FONTLIB,DISP=SHR
//OLAY01 DD DSN=SYS1.OVERLIB,DISP=SHR
//PSEG01 DD DSN=SYS1.PSEGLIB,DISP=SHR
//FDEF01 DD DSN=SYS1.FDEFLIB,DISP=SHR
//PDEF01 DD DSN=SYS1.PDEFLIB,DISP=SHR
//*
//PRT618 PRINTDEV FONTDD=*.FONT01, /* FONT LIBRARY DD */
// OVLIDD=*.OLAY01, /* OVERLAY LIBRARY DD */
// PSEGDD=*.PSEG01, /* SEGMENT LIBRARY DD */
// PDEFDD=*.OLAY01, /* PAGEDEF LIBRARY DD */
// FDEFDD=*.OLAY01, /* FORMDEF LIBRARY DD */
// JOBHDR=*.JOBHDR, /* JOB HEADER DD */
// JOBTLR=*.JOBTLR, /* JOB TRAILER DD */
// DSHDR=*.DSHDR, /* DATA SET HEADER DD */
// MESSAGE=*.MSGDS, /* MESSAGE DATA DD */
// PAGEDEF=A06462, /* DEFAULT PAGEDEF */
// FORMDEF=A10110, /* DEFAULT FORMDEF */
// CHARS=(GT10,GC15,GB10,GR10,), /* DEFAULT FONT SET*/
// PIMSG=YES, /* ACCUMULATE DATA SET MESSAGES */
// SETUP=FORMS, /* ISSUE FORMS SETUP MESSAGES */
// MGMTMODE=OUTAVAIL, /* START WHEN OUTPUT AVAILABLE */
// DISCINTV=60, /* DISCONNECT INTERVAL -- SECS */
// LOGMODE=IBM3820T, /* LOGON MODE TABLE ENTRY */
// APPLID=FSAES618, /* APPLICATION PGM NAME */
// LUNAME=PSFDC5LU /* LOGICAL UNIT NAME */
//PRT618 ENDCNTL

```

Figure 120. JES2 External Writer Procedure Example (Local 3174)

Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx)

You must specify the values illustrated in Figure 121 and described below.

```

CONFIG=nn,          ATCCON MEMBER OF VTAMLST      X
NETID=network_id,  NETWORK IDENTIFIER          X
SSCPID=nn,         SSCP IDENTIFIER            X
.
.
.

```

Figure 121. VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) Guidelines (Local 3174)

CONFIG

Specifies the **ATCCON***nn* member to use.

NETID

Specifies the network identifier for the host system. The first part of the

Partner LU name field on the **Basic** tab of the Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook (Figure 154 on page 138) must match the **NETID** value.

SSCPID

Specifies the system services control point (SSCP) at the host. The SSCPID is a decimal integer from 0 to 65535.

The SSCP, normally VTAM, provides several network management functions. They include managing dependent logical units and accepting Network Management Vector Transports, such as alerts. Alerts often include information about devices that are unavailable or require corrective action.

To configure a PSF Direct host receiver to send alerts to this SSCP, the least significant portion of the **SNA System Services Control Point ID** value defined for the PSF Direct host receiver must be the hexadecimal equivalent of the SSCPID value. (For information about configuring the host receiver, see “Defining the PSF Direct Host Receiver” on page 232.) The **SNA System Services Control Point ID** must be in the form **05xxxxxxxx**, where *x* is a hexadecimal digit.

For example, to configure a PSF Direct host receiver to send alerts to an SSCP with an SSCPID value of 283, the host receiver’s **SNA System Services Control Point ID** value must be 05000000011B.

Figure 122 shows an example.

```
CONFIG=00,      ATCCON MEMBER OF VTAMLST      X
NETID=USIBMBQ, NETWORK IDENTIFIER      X
SSCPID=1,      SSCP IDENTIFIER        X
.
.
.
```

Figure 122. VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) Example (Local 3174)

Specifying the VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn)

The VTAM configuration list indicates the application program major nodes that should become available when VTAM starts. Include the application program major node that contains the application program that PSF uses.

```
appl_prog_major_node,      X
.
.
.
```

Figure 123. VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn) Guidelines (Local 3174)

Figure 124 shows an example.

```
PSFAPPLS,      X
.
.
.
```

Figure 124. VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn) Example (Local 3174)

Specifying the VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program

The pertinent operands for the VTAM application program major node and application program are illustrated in Figure 125 and described below.

```

appl_prog_major_node, VBUILD TYPE=APPL           X
appl_prog,           APPL AUTH=ACQ,EAS=1,SONSCIP=YES X
.
.
.

```

Figure 125. VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program Guidelines (Local 3174)

The host PSF program does not support application programs that use **APPC=YES** or **PARSESS=YES**. The default value for both **APPC** and **PARSESS** is **NO**.

Figure 126 shows an example.

```

PSFAPPLS,  VBUILD TYPE=APPL           X
FSAES618,  APPL AUTH=ACQ,EAS=1,SONSCIP=YES X
.
.
.

```

Figure 126. VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program Example (Local 3174)

Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry

The operands for the VTAM mode table are illustrated in Figure 127 and described below.

```

table_name  MODETAB           X
entry_name  MODEENT LOGMODE=IBM3820T,FMPROF=X'13',TSPROF=X'07', X
.
.
.
.
.
PRIPROC=X'B0',SECPROT=X'B0',COMPROT=X'B0B1' X
PSERVIC=X'06020000000000000000200' X
PSNDPAC=X'10',SRCVPAC=X'10',SSNDPAC=X'00' X
RUSIZES=X'8787'

```

Figure 127. VTAM Mode Table and Entry Guidelines (Local 3174)

PSNDPAC

Specifies the primary send pacing count. This value influences performance and can be adjusted as desired. A value of X'10' produces good throughput in most configurations.

SRCVPAC

Specifies the secondary receive pacing count. This value influences performance and can be adjusted as desired. A value of X'10' produces good throughput in most configurations.

RUSIZES

Specifies the maximum request unit (RU) sizes from the primary and secondary logical units. The RU sizes influence performance and can be adjusted as desired. A value of X'8787' means 1024 bytes for both RU sizes and produces good throughput in most configurations.

The **RUSIZES** specification influences other configuration parameters. These include:

- The **Maximum RU size** field on the **Advanced** tab of the Define a Mode notebook (Figure 158 on page 142)
- The **MAXSTL** operand in the IBM Network Control Program (NCP) **LINE** statement

Figure 128 shows an example.

```

MODEIBM      MODETAB                      X
IBM3820T    MODEENT LOGMODE=IBM3820T,FMPROF=X'13',TSPROF=X'07', X
.
.
.
PRIPROC=X'B0',SECPROT=X'B0',COMPROT=X'B0B1' X
PSERVIC=X'060200000000000000000000200' X
PSNDPAC=X'10',SRCVPAC=X'10',SSNDPAC=X'00' X
RUSIZES=X'8787'

```

Figure 128. VTAM Mode Table and Entry Example (Local 3174)

Specifying the VTAM Local Major Node

The operands for the VTAM local major node are illustrated in Figure 129 and described below.

```

.
.
.
node_name  VBUILD TYPE=LOCAL
*
pu_name    PU      CUADDR=nnn,          CHANNEL CONTROL UNIT ADDRESS X
            MAXBFRU=nn,              VTAM BUFFERS FOR RECEIVING X
            MODETAB=mode_entry,      LOGON MODE TABLE X
            DLOGMOD=mode_entry,      LOGON MODE TABLE ENTRY X
            VPACING=0,               NO PACING TO BOUNDARY NODE
*
lu_name    LU      LOCADDR=nn,          DEPENDENT LU

```

Figure 129. VTAM Local Major Node Guidelines (Local 3174)

The following describes the pertinent operands on the **VBUILD** statement:

TYPE Specify **LOCAL** to indicate that the node is a local major node.

The following describes the pertinent operands on the **PU** statement.

Note: The **DLOGMOD**, **MODETAB**, and **VPACING** operands are **LU** operands, but are included here on the **PU** statement. VTAM definitions support a “sift-down effect” that allows you to code an operand on a higher-level statement so you do not need to code it on each lower-level statement for which the same value is desired. There is only one logical unit in the guideline presented here, so the sift-down effect is for demonstration only. If the **DLOGMOD**, **MODETAB**, and **VPACING** operands are specified on the **PU** statement, they do not have to be specified on any of the **LU** statements.

CUADDR

Specifies the 3-digit hexadecimal number that identifies the channel control

unit address used when activating the physical unit. The value must match a channel control unit address supplied when the operating system was generated.

MAXBFRU

Specifies the number of buffer units that VTAM uses to receive data from the physical unit. These buffer units are elements of the IOBUF buffer pool.

Always specify **MAXBFRU** so that the baseno value for the IOBUF multiplied by **MAXBFRU** is equal to or greater than the **maximum RU size** used by the controller:

$$\text{baseno} \times \text{MAXBFRU} \geq \text{maximum_RU_size}$$

For example, a **MAXBFRU** value of 10 is adequate for a baseno value of 128 and a maximum RU size of 1024.

MODETAB

Specifies the name of the logon mode table that contains entries that describe session characteristics.

DLOGMOD

Specifies the name of the logon mode table entry that describes session characteristics.

VPACING

Determines how VTAM paces the flow of data from VTAM to the boundary node that performs pacing for the channel-attached SNA device. A value of zero means that no pacing is performed for sessions with the logical unit, or that the largest possible pacing is used if the session is adaptively paced.

The following describes the pertinent operands on the **LU** statement:

LOCADDR

To use a dependent logical unit, specify a value between 1 and 255 for **LOCADDR**. Also, in the Host LU Definition window (Figure 149 on page 133), specify **Dependent LU 6.2** for the **LU model type** field, and the **LOCADDR** value for the **Host NAU address** field.

Figure 130 shows an example.

```

.
.
.
PSFDC5MJ  VBUILD TYPE=LOCAL
*
PSFDC5PU  PU      CUADDR=790,          CHANNEL CONTROL UNIT ADDRESS  X
           MAXBFRU=10,              VTAM BUFFERS FOR RECEIVING    X
           MODETAB=MODEIBM,          LOGON MODE TABLE             X
           DLOGMOD=IBM3820T,         LOGON MODE TABLE ENTRY      X
           VPACING=0,                NO PACING TO BOUNDARY NODE
*
PSFDC5LU  LU      LOCADDR=1,          DEPENDENT LU

```

Figure 130. VTAM Local Major Node Example (Local 3174)

Configuring the 3174 Establishment Controller

The keywords and values for the 3174 establishment controller are illustrated in Figure 131 on page 116 and described below.

```

.
.
.
CONFIGURATION SUPPORT C RELEASE 3
900: TOKEN-RING ADDRESS FOR THE GATEWAY
      4000 nnnn nnnn
940: RING ADDRESS ASSIGNMENT
      S@ Ring@,      SAP
.
.
.
      nn 4000 nnnn nnnn
      nn nnnn nnnn nnnn      04
      DLOGMOD=IBM3820T,
941: RING TRANSMISSION DEFINITION
      F W
      nn nnnn nnnn nnnn
      nn nnnn nnnn nnnn      n n

```

Figure 131. 3174 Establishment Controller Guidelines (Local 3174)

900: Token-Ring Address for the Gateway

Specify the token-ring address for the gateway. The address must be a local MAC address in the form **4000 nnnn nnnn** .

940: Ring Address Assignment

This configuration item includes several pertinent parameters:

S@ Indicates the subchannel address. Values are supplied automatically on the **Ring Address Assignment** panel. The first **S@** value specifies the subchannel address for the gateway. The remaining **S@** values specify subchannel addresses for ring-attached physical units.

Ring@ Indicates the token-ring address. The first **Ring@** value specifies the token-ring address for the gateway and is supplied automatically on the **Ring Address Assignment** panel.

Specify a token-ring address for each ring-attached physical unit. Local MAC addresses are preferable to universal MAC addresses. Local MAC addresses are in the form **4000 nnnn nnnn**.

SAP Accept the default service access point (SAP) value, 04.

941: Ring Transmission Definition

This configuration item includes two pertinent parameters:

F Indirectly specifies the transmit I-frame size.

To prevent basic information units (BIUs) from being broken into pieces, choose a transmit I-frame size that is at least 9 bytes larger than the maximum RU size. The maximum RU size is the lesser of the value represented by the VTAM **MODEENT** statement **RUSIZES** operand and the **Maximum RU size** field on the **Advanced** tab of the Define a Mode notebook (Figure 158 on page 142).

W Specifies the transmit window size. The transmit window size is the number of frames that the 3174 sends to the physical unit before waiting for a link-level acknowledgement.

The **Receive window count** field on the **Advanced** tab of the Define a LAN Device notebook (Figure 141 on page 125) specifies

the maximum number of frames that Communications Server for NT receives before sending a link-level acknowledgement.

For optimum performance, the transmit window size (**W**) should be equal to the **Receive window count**. If the transmit window size is less than the **Receive window count**, extremely poor throughput can result. In most cases, the default transmit window size value is 2. The default **Receive window count** value is 8. You must adjust these default values to produce acceptable throughput.

```
.  
. .  
CONFIGURATION SUPPORT C RELEASE 3  
900: TOKEN-RING ADDRESS FOR THE GATEWAY  
      4000 3000 1001  
940: RING ADDRESS ASSIGNMENT  
      S@ Ring@,          SAP  
. .  
      C1 4000 3000 1001  
      C2 4000 3000 1002    04  
      DLOGMOD=IBM3820T,  
941: RING TRANSMISSION DEFINITION  
           F    W  
      C1 4000 3000 1001  
      C1 4000 3000 1002    2    7
```

Figure 132. 3174 Establishment Controller Example (Local 3174)

Specifying Communications Server for NT Configuration Profiles

This section contains instructions and guidelines for configuring the Communications Server for NT profiles. It includes the following tasks:

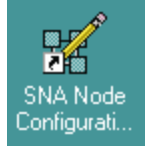
- “Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles”
- “Local 3174 Node Setup” on page 119
- “Local 3174 Device Configuration” on page 123
- “Local 3174 Peer Connections Configuration” on page 128
- “Local LU 6.2 Configuration for Local 3174” on page 132
- “Enabling SNA API Clients for Local 3174” on page 135
- “Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for Local 3174” on page 137
- “Mode Configuration for Local 3174” on page 140
- “Transaction Program Configuration for Local 3174” on page 143

Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles

Use the following procedure to access the IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT applications that are described in “What is IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT?” on page 2.

Note that this procedure assumes that you have dragged the icons for **SNA Node Configuration** and **SNA Node Operations** to your desktop after they were created at installation.

1. From your NT desktop view, double-click the **SNA Node Configuration** icon that resides on your desktop:



2. At the **Welcome to Communications Server Configuration!** pop-up window, select the **New** button for a new configuration) and click the **Next>** button.

Communications Server creates an *xxx.acg* file (where *xxx* represents the file name you select in this window. This *xxx.acg* file resides in the C:\IBMCS\private directory, where C is the drive where you installed IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT. For users migrating from PSF Direct on an OS/2 operating system, this *xxx.acg* file is the equivalent of the OS/2 Communications Manager Communications Server *xxx.ndf* file.

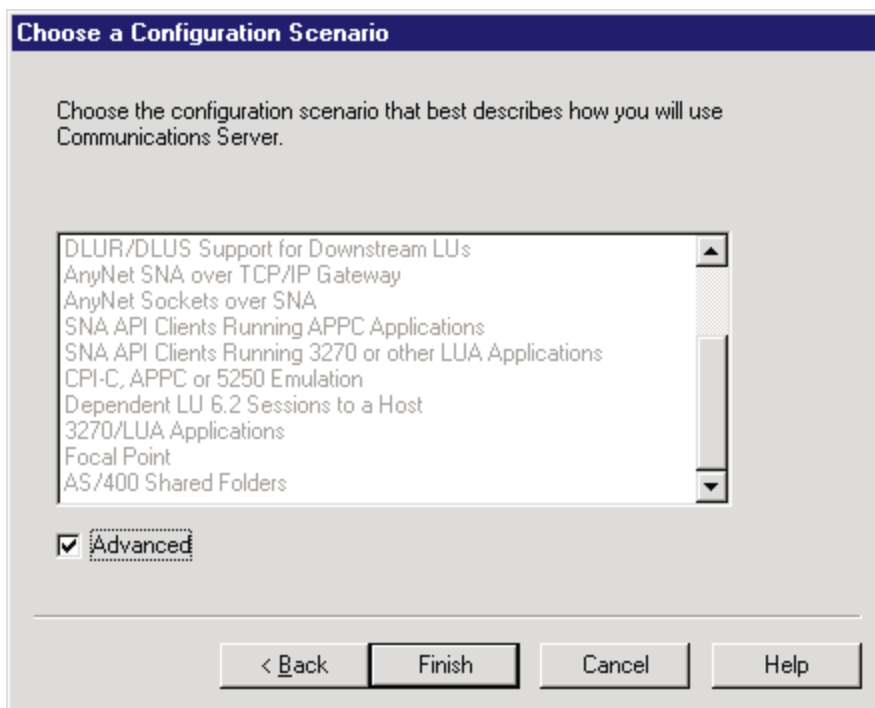


Figure 133. Choose a Configuration Scenario Window (Local 3174)

3. In the Choose a Configuration Scenario window (Figure 133), check the **Advanced** box, which causes the display to turn gray. Click the **Finish** button.
4. From the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 134 on page 119), you are ready to begin configuring your system for PSF Direct.

Local 3174 Node Setup

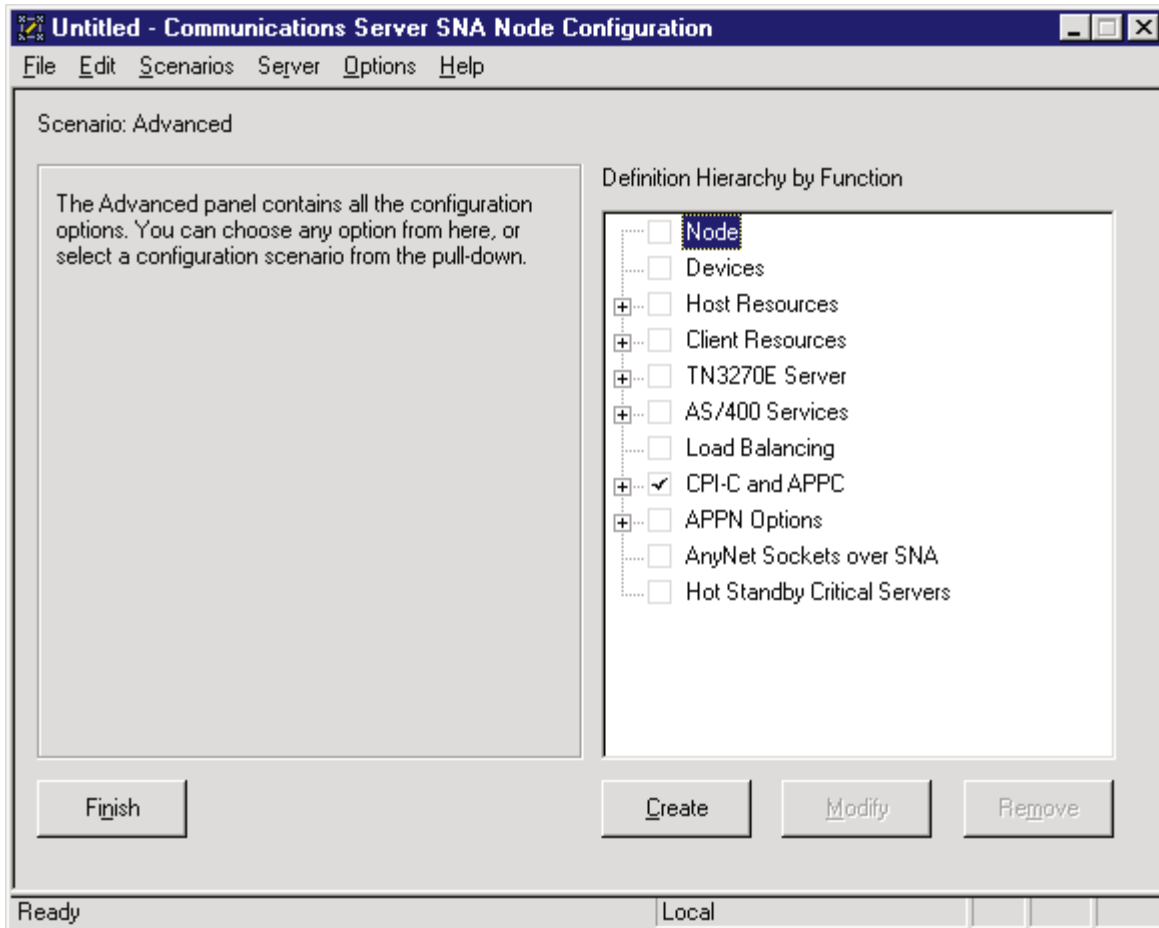


Figure 134. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Node (Local 3174)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 134), right-click the **Node** box and select the **Create** option. The Define the Node notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

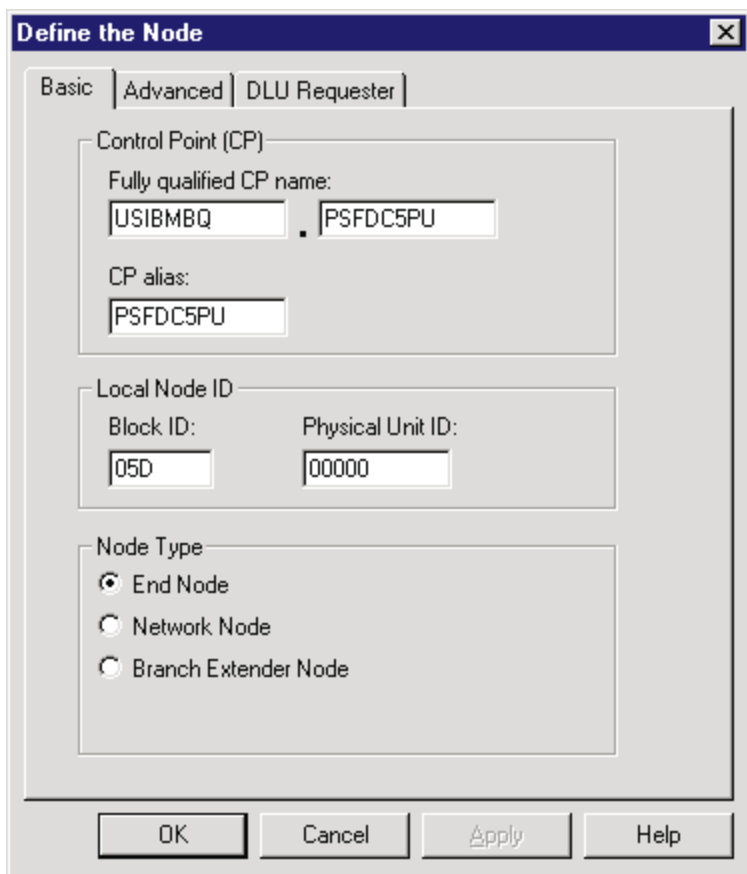


Figure 135. Define the Node Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3174)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 135), specify values for the following parameters:

Fully qualified Control Point (CP) name

Specifies the name of the component that manages the resources of that node. If the **CPNAME** operand is used in the VTAM **PU** statement, then the second part of this value must match the **CPNAME** operand. By convention, the **CPNAME** is usually the same as the **PU** name.

CP alias

Specifies an alternative name for the CP. Local applications can use this name, instead of the **Fully qualified Control Point (CP) name**, to refer to the local CP.

Local Node ID

Specifies both the **Block ID** and the **Physical Unit ID**. The **Block ID** is a 3-digit hexadecimal string that identifies the product type in an SNA network. The **Physical Unit ID** is a 5-digit hexadecimal string that identifies a physical unit (PU).

If the **IDBLK** and **IDNUM** operands are used in the VTAM **PU** statement, then the **Local Node ID** value must match the combined **IDBLK** and **IDNUM** operands. The **IDBLK** operand is normally 071 for Communications Server for NT.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system, **Local Node ID** matches the **XID Node ID** parameter.

Node Type

Specifies the type of node. Take the default value, **End node**.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system, **Node Type** matches the **Control Point Type** parameter.

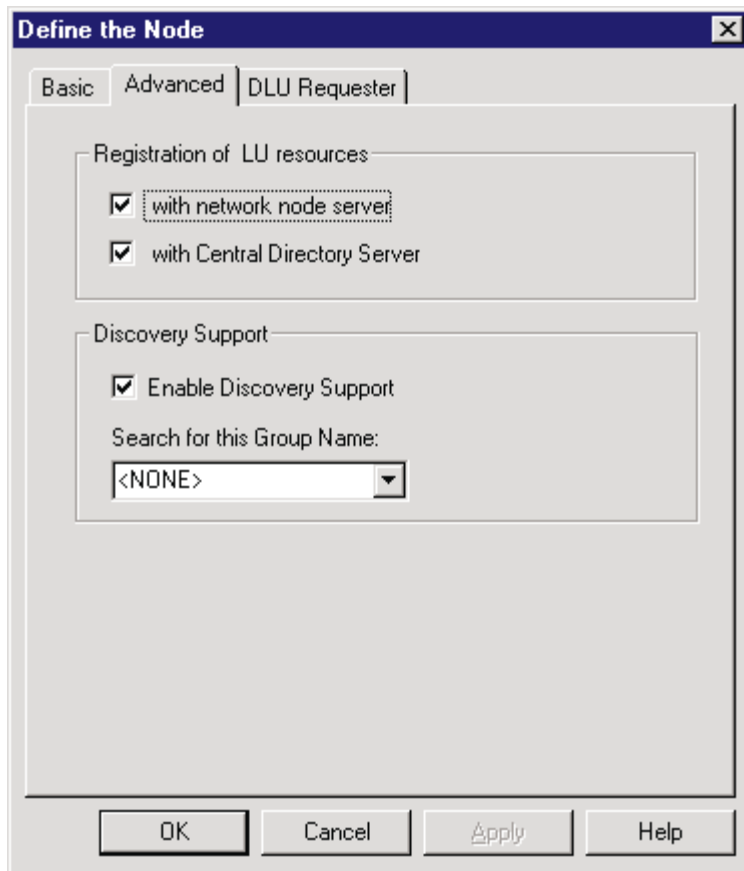


Figure 136. Define the Node Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3174)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 136), specify values for the following parameters:

Registration of LU resources

Specifies that directory information about the local logical units (LUs) 6.2 is sent to the server. As the example shows, check both the **Network node server** and the **Central Directory Server**.

Discovery Support

Specifies a LAN address resolution protocol that can be used to find another node that matches given search values. Adjust the search parameter to search for APPN network nodes, nodes that provide SNA boundary function, or AS/400s. Select the check box to enable discovery support.

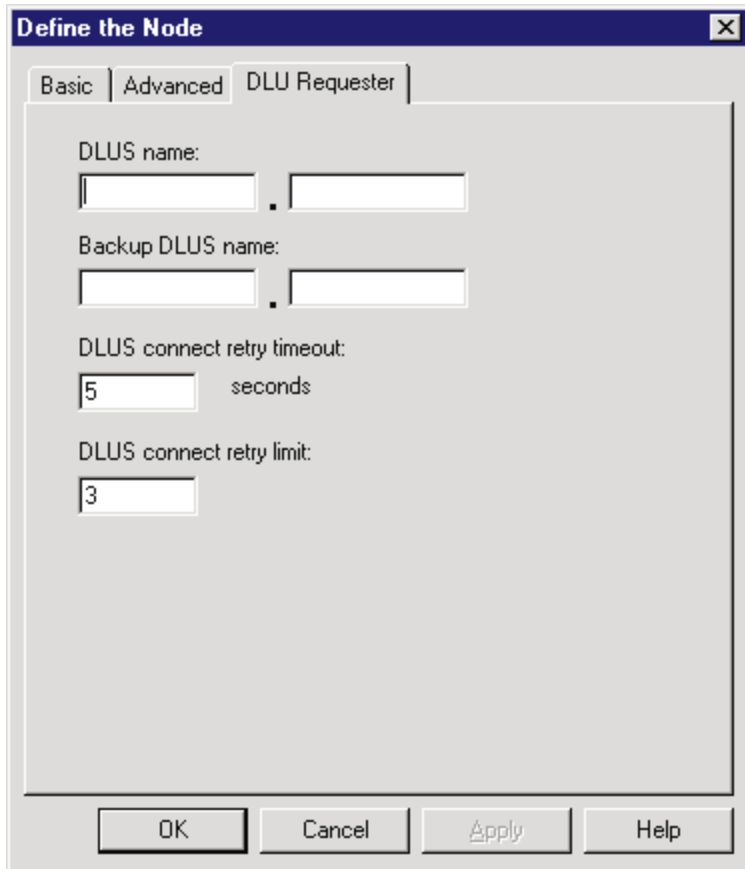


Figure 137. Define the Node Notebook: DLU Requester Tab (Local 3174)

On the **DLU Requester** tab (Figure 137), accept the default values for the following parameters:

DLUS connect retry timeout

Specifies the time between attempts to reconnect a dependent logical unit server (DLUS). This parameter is based on the **DLUS connect retry limit** parameter. Take the default of 5.

DLUS connect retry limit

Specifies the maximum number of attempts to reconnect a DLUS without receiving an acknowledgment in the time set by the **DLUS connect retry timeout** parameter. Take the default of 3.

Click **OK** to save these configuration settings.

Local 3174 Device Configuration

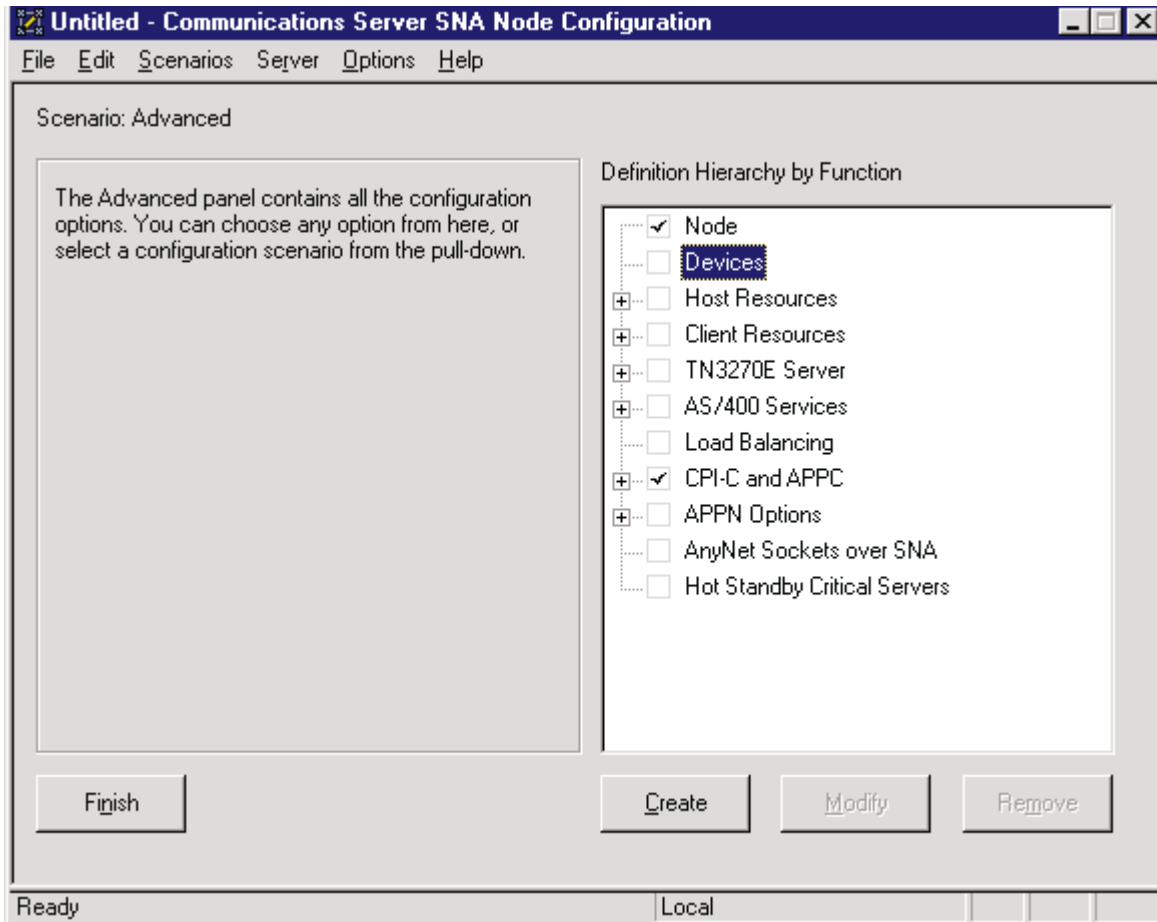


Figure 138. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Devices (Local 3174)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 138), right-click the **Devices** box and select the **Create** option. The Device Type pop-up window (Figure 139) opens.

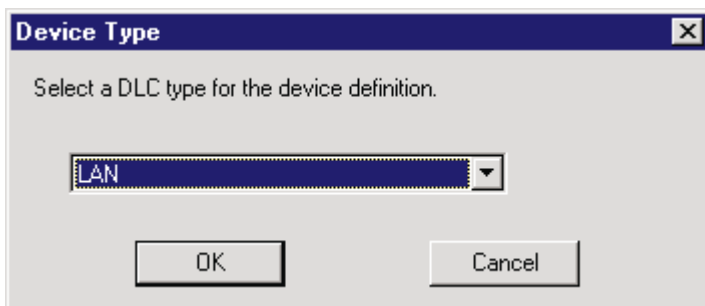


Figure 139. Device Type Window (Local 3174)

Select **LAN** as your data link control (DLC) type. A DLC is a set of rules that nodes on a data link (such as an SDLC link or a token ring) use to accomplish an orderly exchange of information.

Click **OK** to save this configuration setting.

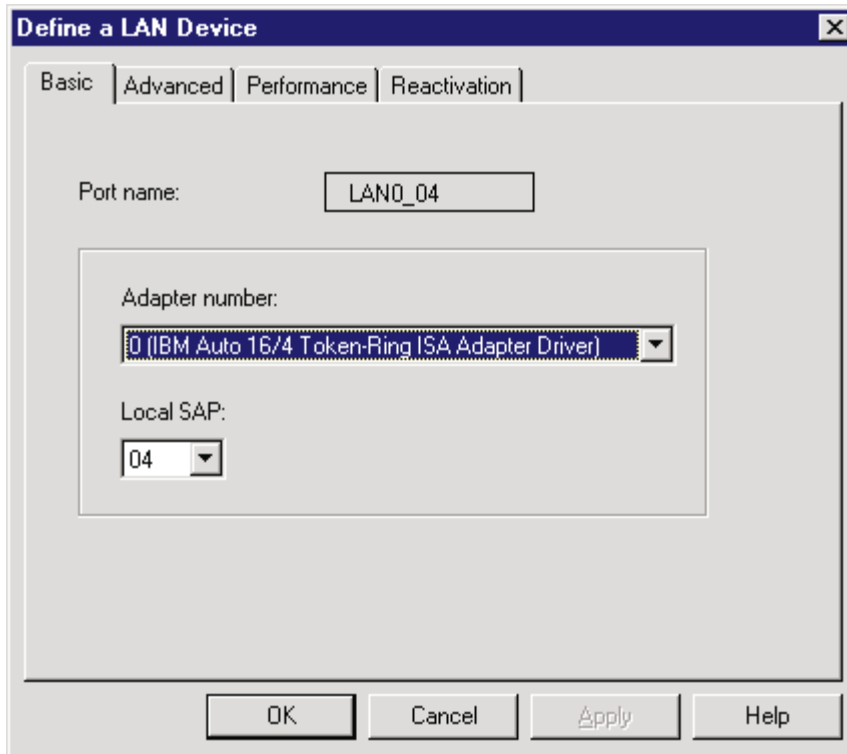


Figure 140. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3174)

On the **Basic** tab of the Define a LAN Device notebook (Figure 140), supply the following values:

Port name

Specifies the port name of the physical connection to the link hardware. This value consists of the word **LAN**, the adapter number, and the local SAP number, with an underscore between the adapter number and the local SAP number. Accept the value that is displayed.

Adapter number

Specifies a value from 0 to 7 that uniquely identifies this adapter. You may have both token-ring and ethernet adapters defined at your installation. Ensure that you select the proper token-ring LAN adapter.

Local SAP

Specifies the local service access point (SAP) number of the local port as a hexadecimal value from 04 through FC. Note that this number must be a multiple of four. Take the default of 04.

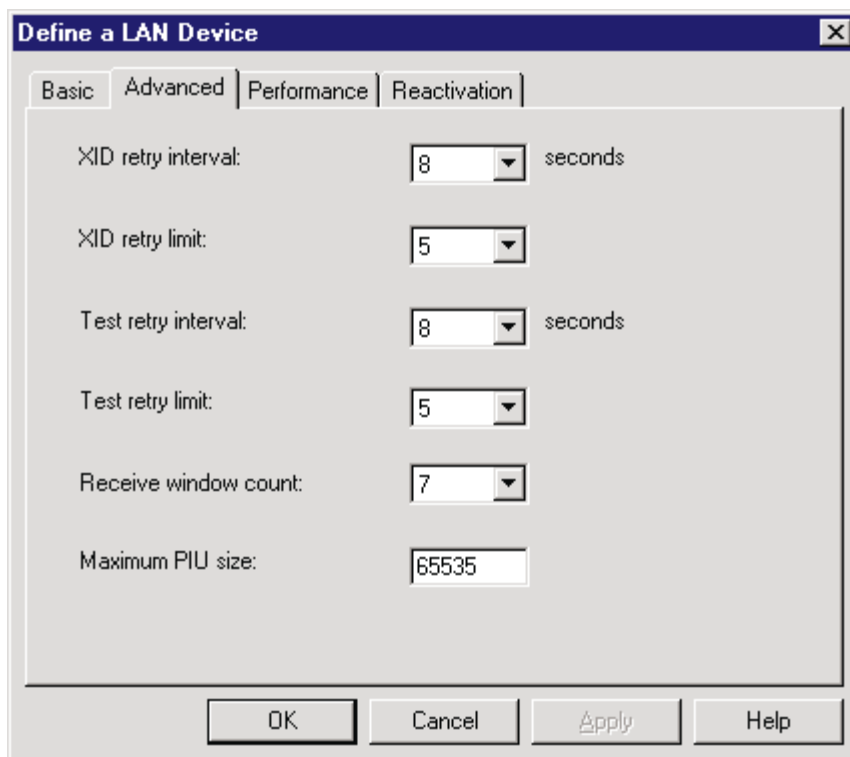


Figure 141. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3174)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 141), supply the following values:

XID retry interval

Specifies the time the link station waits for a reply to a previous **XID** command before resending that command. Specify 60. This value causes the link station to try to establish a link connection with the communication controller every 60 seconds, until a link connection can be established. If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, this parameter replaces the **Response Timeout** parameter from the **Token-Ring SNA DLC** profile.

XID retry limit

Specifies the maximum number of times an **XID** command will be retransmitted before Communications Server for NT presumes that the link is broken and stops retrying. Specify 0. This value indicates that there is no limit on the number of attempts the link station makes to establish a link connection with the communication controller. The previous parameter defines the interval between the attempts. If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, this parameter replaces the **XID Retransmit count** parameter from the **Token-Ring SNA DLC** profile.

Test retry interval

Specifies the time between attempts to find the adjacent link station on the LAN. This parameter is needed to establish communication with the network and does not necessarily relate to VTAM or the PSF host system. The number of times an **XID** is sent is based on the configured **XID retry limit**.

Test retry limit

Specifies the number of times Communications Server attempts to find the adjacent link station on the LAN. Specify a value from 3 to 30.

Receive window count

Defines the size of the link-level window. This value specifies the maximum number of frames to receive before sending a link-level acknowledgement.

Maximum PIU size

Specifies a value between 99 and 65535 bytes that represents the maximum number of bytes in the data buffer that SNA sessions use for this link. If the value of the **Maximum PIU size** exceeds the frame size supported by your local device driver, the value will be reduced to match the frame size.

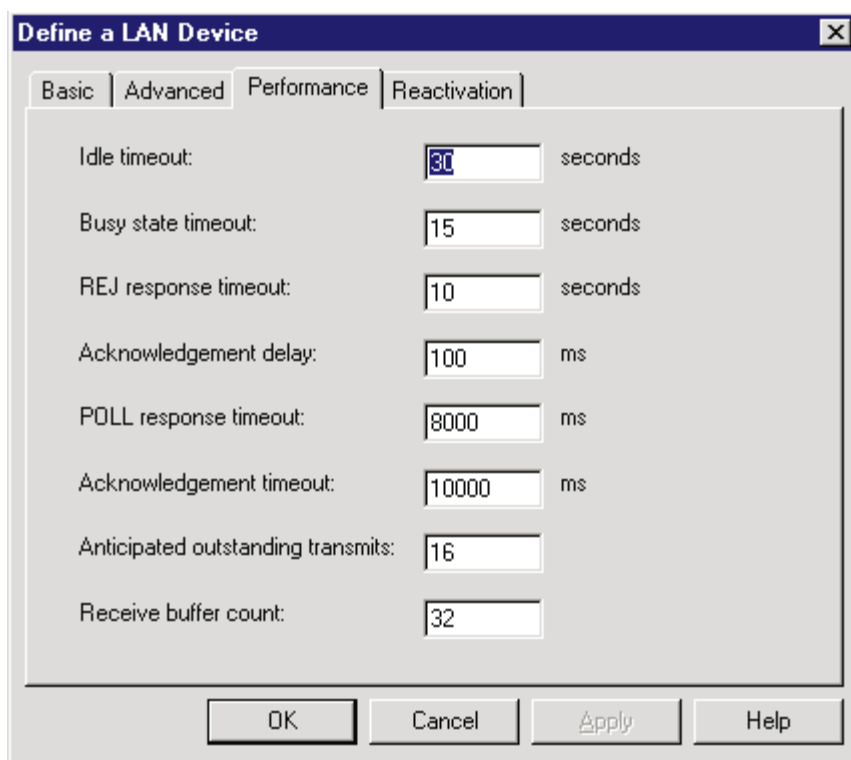


Figure 142. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Performance Tab (Local 3174)

On the **Performance** tab (Figure 142), accept the default values.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, see Table 7 on page 127 for a map of the parameters on the **Performance** tab to the corresponding AIX values.

Table 7. Windows NT and AIX Parameters for LAN Device Performance (Local 3174)

Windows NT Parameter	AIX Parameter
Idle timeout	Inactivity time-out
Busy state timeout	n/a
Acknowledgement delay	n/a
Acknowledgement timeout	Acknowledgement timeout
POLL response timeout	n/a
Anticipated outstanding transmits	Transmit window count
Receive buffer count	n/a

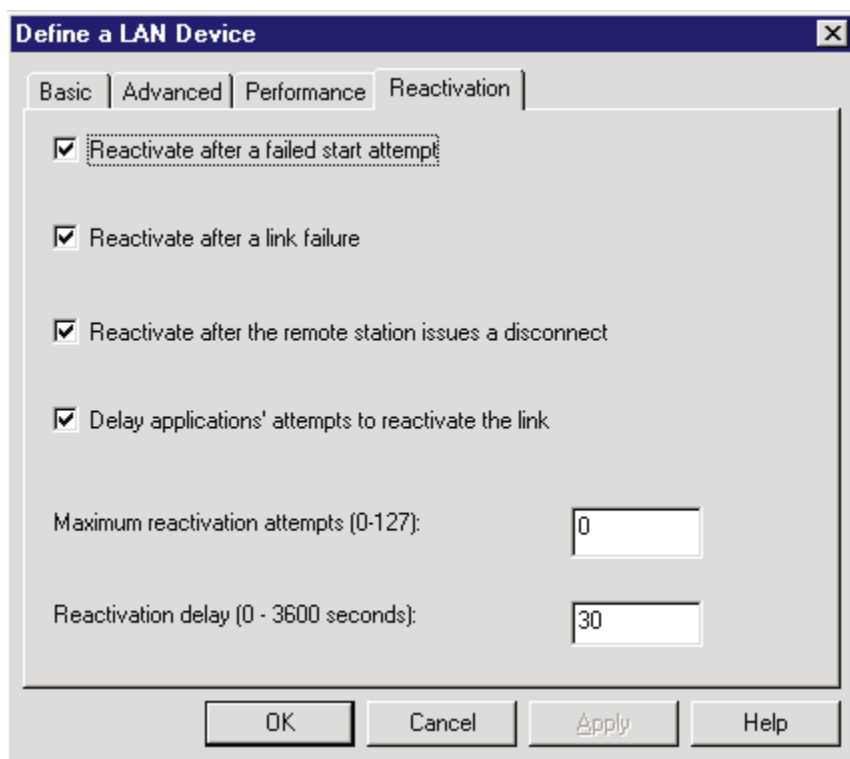


Figure 143. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Reactivation Tab (Local 3174)

On the **Reactivation** tab (Figure 143), accept the default values.

Click **OK** to save these configuration settings.

Local 3174 Peer Connections Configuration

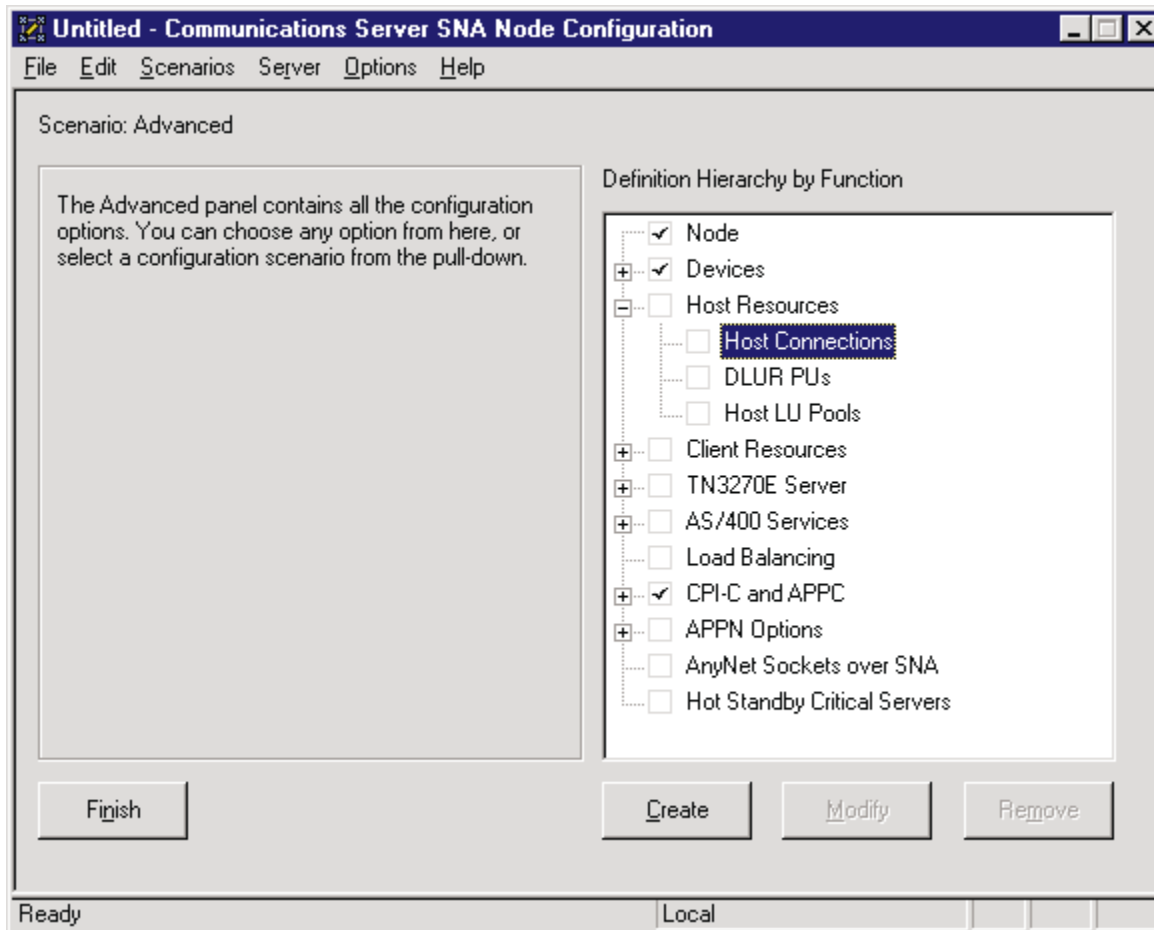


Figure 144. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Host Connections (Local 3174)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 144), right-click the **Host Resources** box, then the **Host Connections** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a LAN Connection notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

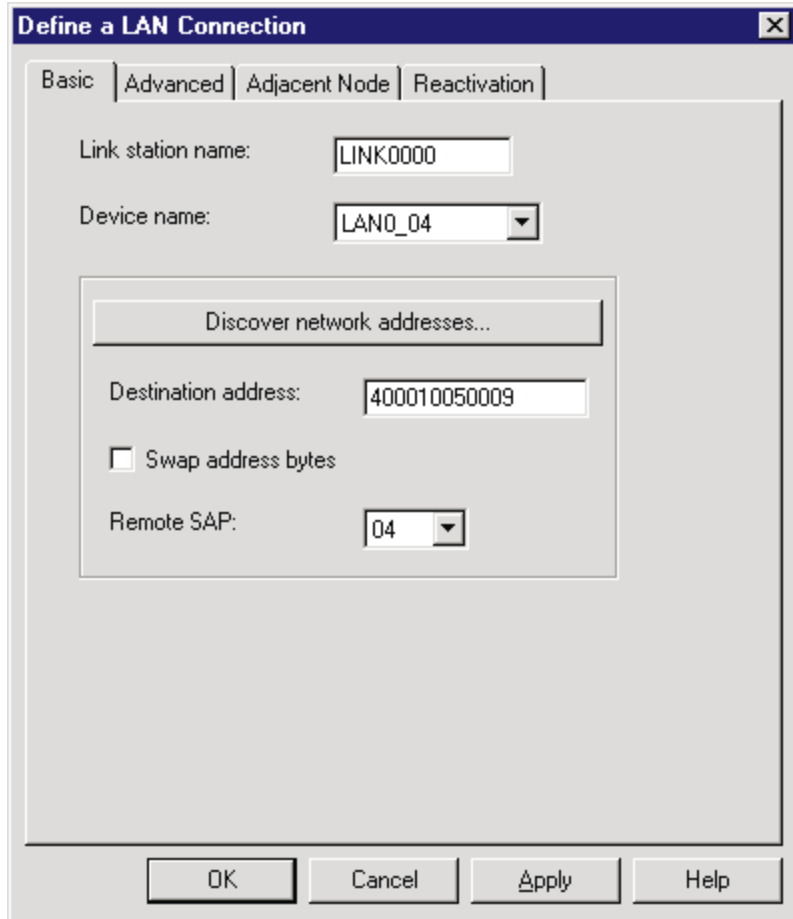


Figure 145. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3174)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 145), supply the following values:

Link station name

Specifies a 1- to 8-byte character string that is used to identify a connection. The contents of this field will vary, depending on the number of links at your installation.

Device name

Specifies the name of the port associated with this link station. This value must match the **Port name** value specified on the **Basic** tab of the Define a LAN Device notebook (Figure 140 on page 124).

Destination address

Specifies a 12-character hexadecimal string that specifies the address to activate a connection to the destination. This value must be specified so the NT system can search for and call the PSF host program.

Swap address bytes

Check this field to bit-swap the address in the **Destination address** field. You may need to select this check box if the next link in the network is an Ethernet link. If not, you can use the default (unchecked).

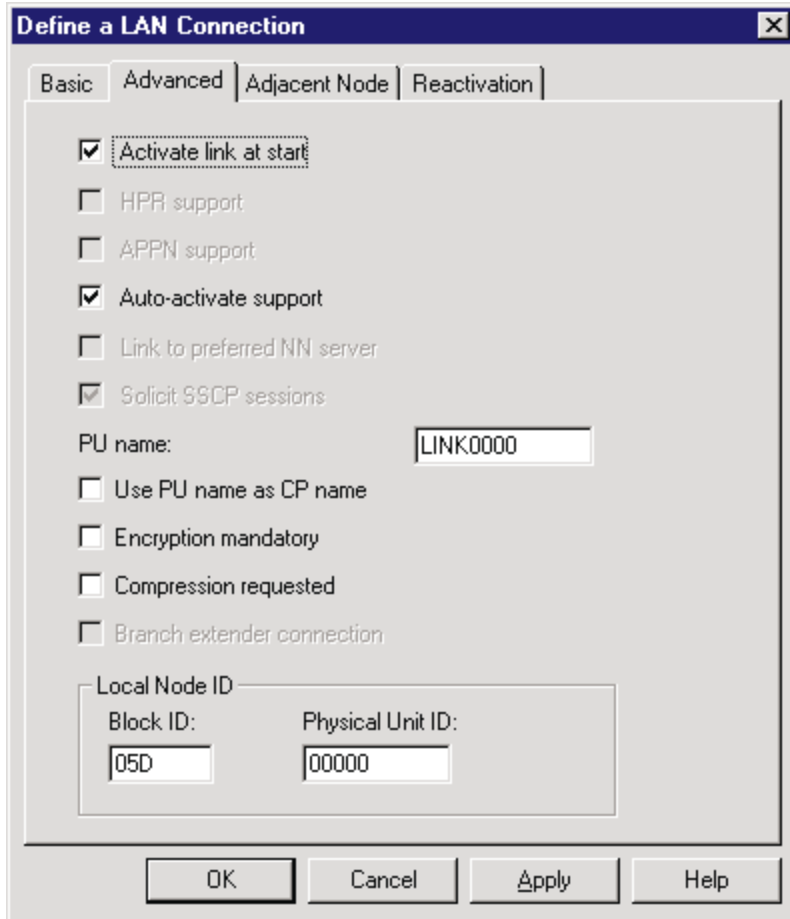


Figure 146. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3174)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 146), supply the following values:

Activate link at start

Specifies that you will use the link reactivation values specified in the port (device) link reactivation definition. Ensure that you select this check box.

APPN support

Specifies whether this connection supports CP-CP sessions. Select the check box to specify APPN support.

PU name

Specifies the physical unit (PU) name is the name of the component that manages and monitors the resources (such as attached links and adjacent link station) associated with a node. The default PU name is automatically created. You can change this definition.

Block ID

Identifies the product type in an SNA network.

Physical Unit ID

Identifies the physical unit (PU) or component that manages and monitors the resources (such as attached links and adjacent link stations) associated with a node.

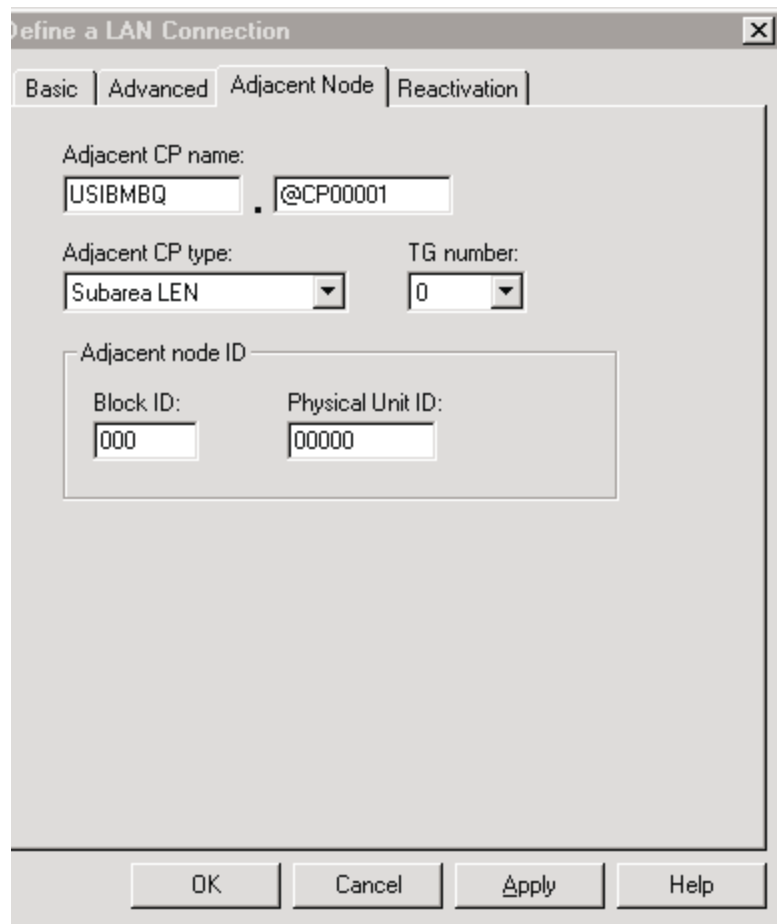


Figure 147. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Adjacent Node Tab (Local 3174)

On the **Adjacent Node** tab (Figure 147), accept the default values.

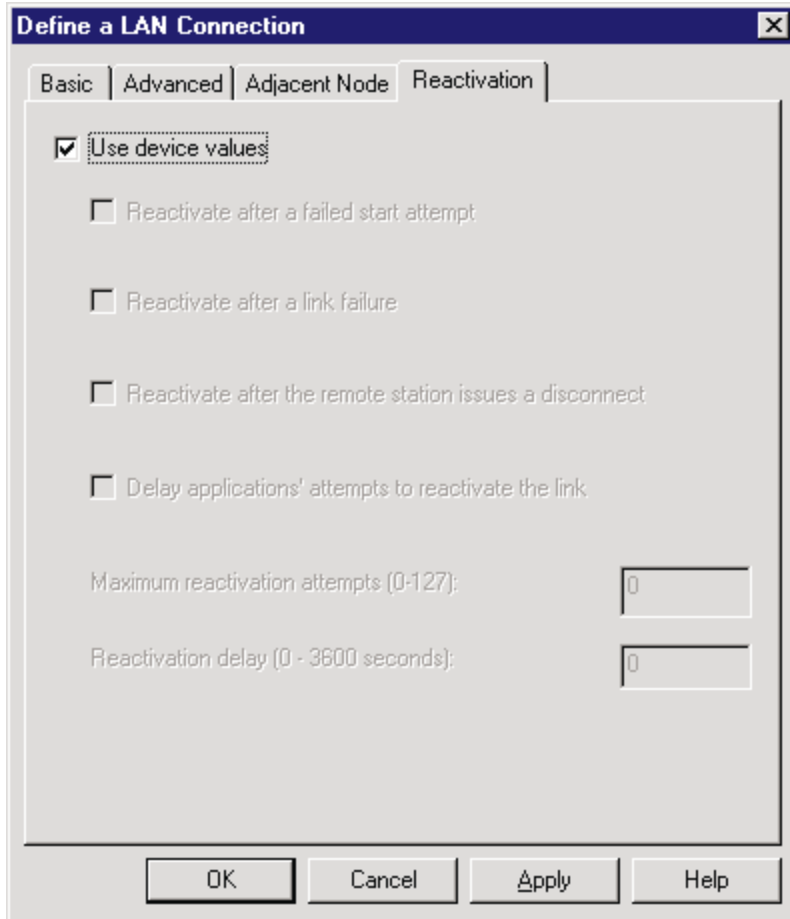


Figure 148. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Reactivation Tab (Local 3174)

On the **Reactivation** tab (Figure 148), accept the default values.

Note that after you select **OK**, a pop-up window appears asking:
Do you want to automatically route all APPC sessions over this connection?

You must reply yes. Then, a pop-up window asks:
Do you wish to create and assign new LUs to this connection?

When you reply yes, the Host LU Definition window (Figure 149 on page 133) appears.

Local LU 6.2 Configuration for Local 3174

Dependent or Independent LU?

This procedure configures a *dependent* LU. You cannot use it to configure an *independent* LU. If you require independent LUs, see "Deciding whether to Define a Dependent or an Independent LU" on page 14.

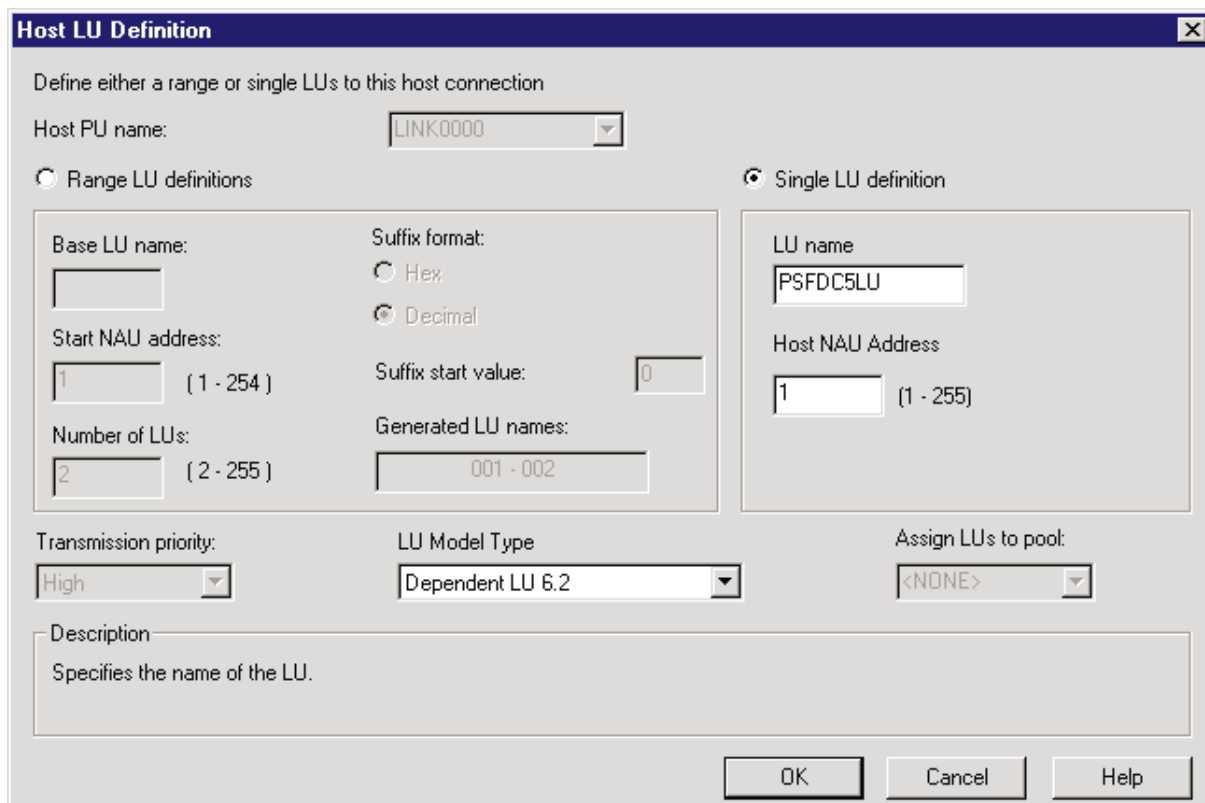


Figure 149. Host LU Definition Window (Local 3174)

In the Host LU Definition window (Figure 149), supply the following values:

Single LU Definition

Specifies that the host link definition can be assigned a single LU definition. Select this button to indicate that the host LU definition is assigned a single link definition.

LU Name

Specifies a 1- to 8-character name of a type of network addressable unit (NAU) that enables end users to communicate with each other and gain access to network resources. The first character must be an uppercase alphabetic character (A-Z) or a special character (@,#,\$). The remaining characters can be alphanumeric characters (A-Z, 0-9) or special characters (@,#,\$). This name must match the Partner LU that is defined for the host PSF program.

Host NAU Address

Specifies a value between 1 and 255 for a dependent LU. This value must match the **LOCADDR** value on the VTAM LU statement (see “Specifying the VTAM Local Major Node” on page 114).

LU Model Type

Specifies the model type and number of the LU that is used by Infoprint Manager when configuring the PSF Direct host receiver. Select **Dependent LU 6.2**.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

To see this defined LU, click the **Host Connections** box in the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 150) until you display the link (LINK0000) and the Dependent LU (PSFDC5LU).

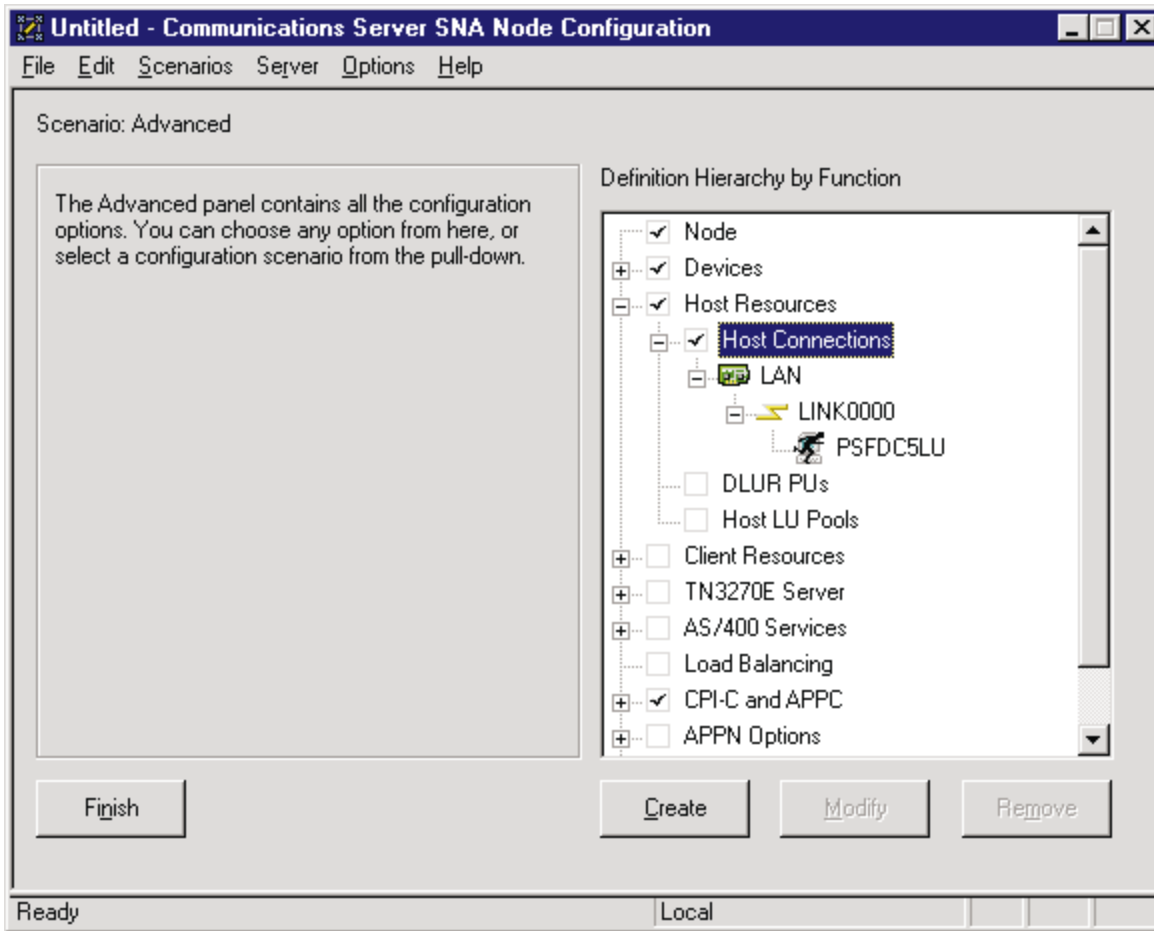


Figure 150. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Defined LU (Local 3174)

Enabling SNA API Clients for Local 3174

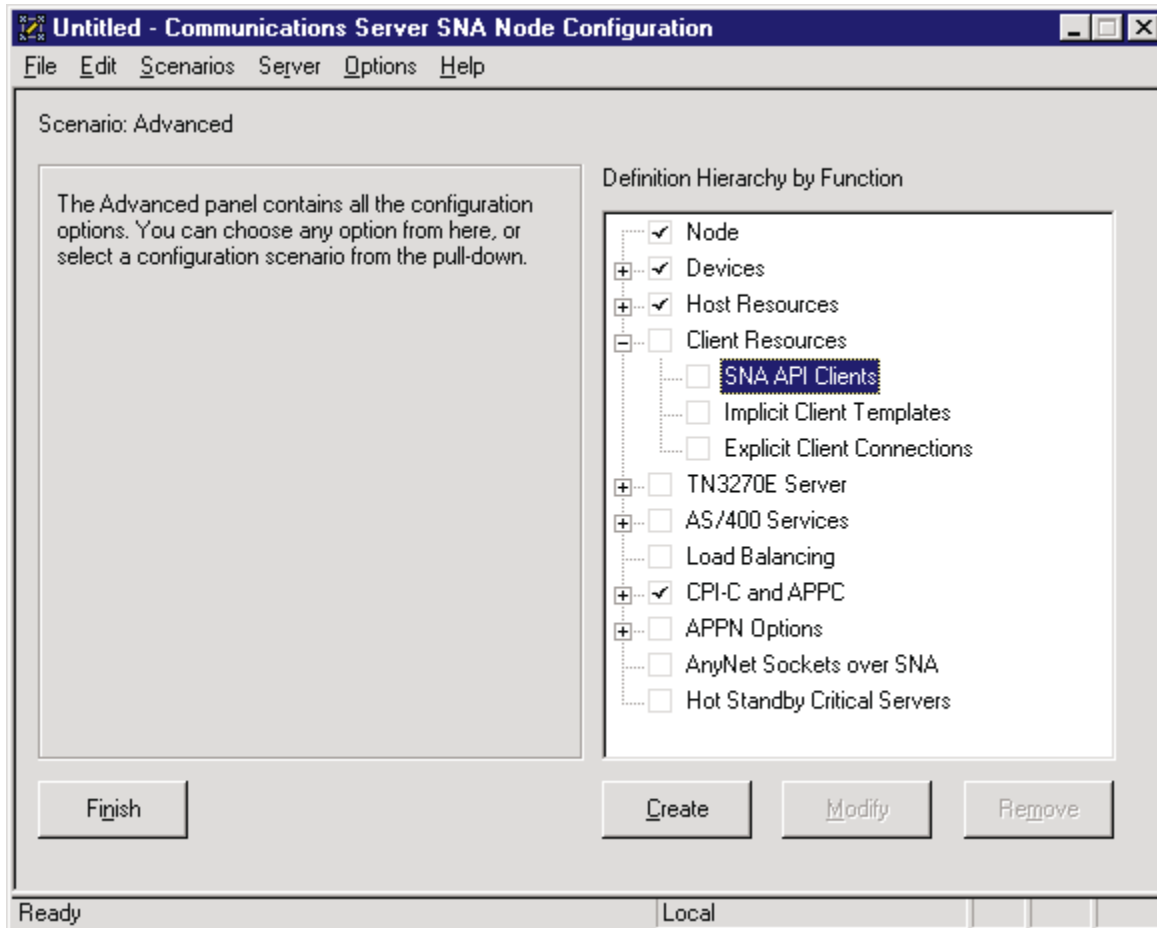


Figure 151. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: SNA API Clients (Local 3174)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 151), right-click the **Client Resources** box, then the **SNA API Clients** box. The SNA Clients window opens.

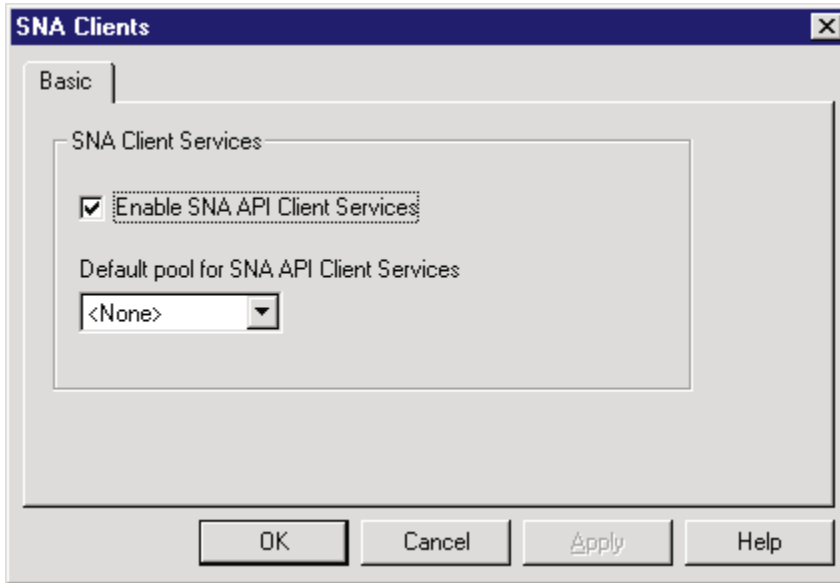


Figure 152. SNA Clients Window (Local 3174)

In the SNA Clients window (Figure 152), check the **Enable SNA API Client Services** box.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for Local 3174

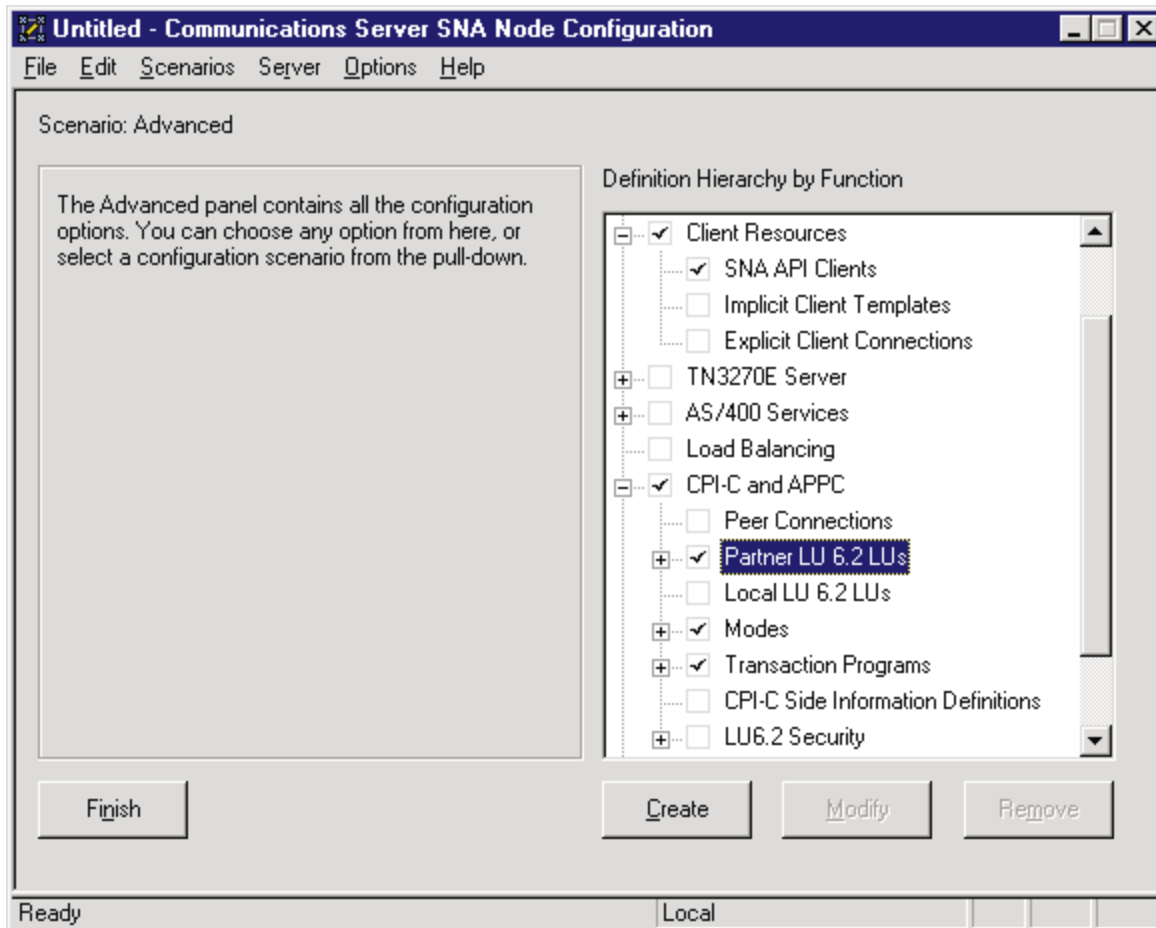


Figure 153. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Partner LU 6.2 LUs (Local 3174)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 153), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Partner LU 6.2 LUs** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

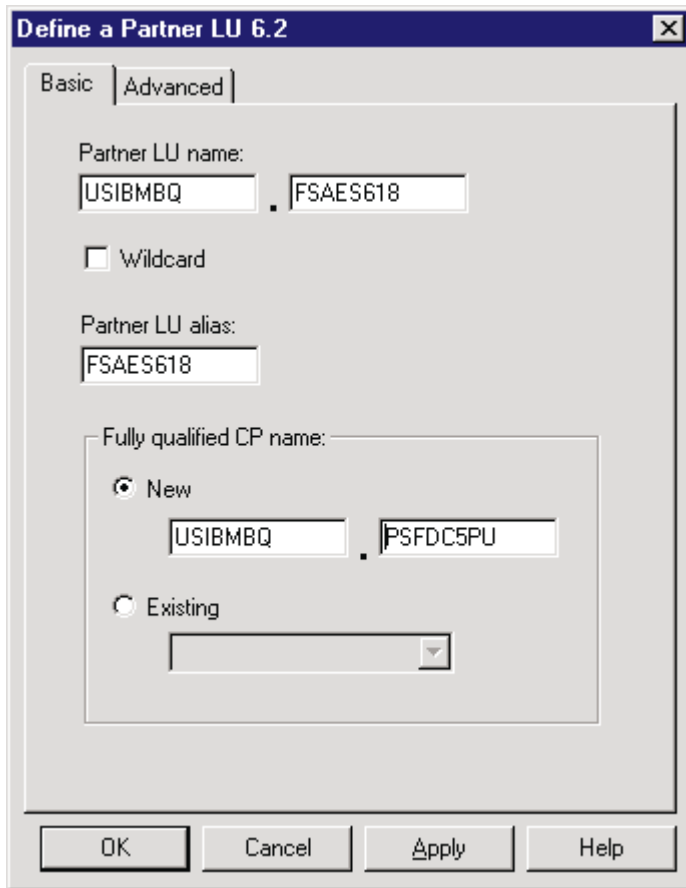


Figure 154. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3174)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 154), supply the following values:

Partner LU name

Specifies the network identifier of the network in which the host PSF program resides (followed by a period), and the logical unit name used by the host PSF program. The network identifier portion must match the **NETID** value in the VTAM start option list (ATCSTRxx) (see “Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx)” on page 111). The logical unit name portion must match the **APPLID** parameter in one of these places:

- The PSF for OS/390 **PRINTDEV** statement
- The PSF/VSE **PRINTDEV** statement
- The PSF/VM **OPTIONS PDM** file

That **APPLID** parameter on the PSF host system must also match an **APPL** statement in a VTAM application program major node. (Do not check the **Wildcard** check box.)

Partner LU alias

Specifies the alternate name for the partner LU. Local applications can use this name, instead of the fully qualified LU name, to refer to the partner LU. While you can choose any meaningful value, IBM recommends specifying the second qualifier of the **Partner LU name**.

Fully qualified CP name

Select **New** to enter the fully qualified CP name of the partner LU's

owning control point. Communications Server for NT requires this field. Infoprint Manager uses this field as the target for any alerts sent by the PSF Direct program.

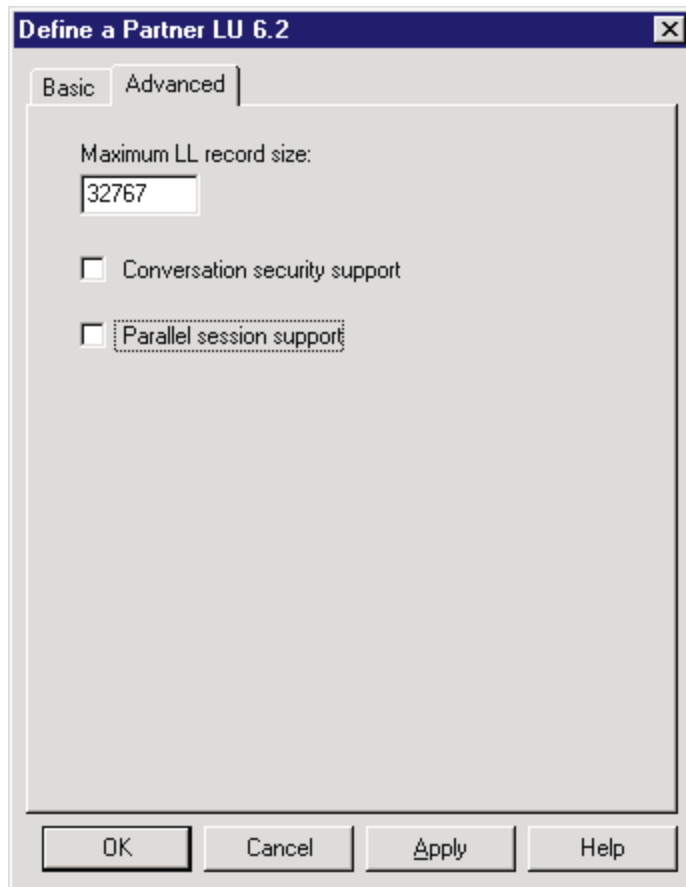


Figure 155. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3174)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 155), supply the following values:

Maximum LL record size

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the maximum size of the logical record in the data stream for basic conversations. Specify the default (32767), because the PSF host program and the PSF Direct host receiver should both be able to handle the full range.

Conversation security support

Specifies that the partner logical unit (LU) is authorized to validate the user identifiers for the local LUs. Select the check box to specify conversation security support if you have matching support on the host PSF program. If not, leave this box unchecked.

Parallel session support

Specifies whether the partner LU supports two or more currently active sessions between the same two LUs by using different pairs of network addresses or session identifiers. Because neither PSF Direct nor the PSF host programs support two sessions with the same partner LU, do not select this check box.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Mode Configuration for Local 3174

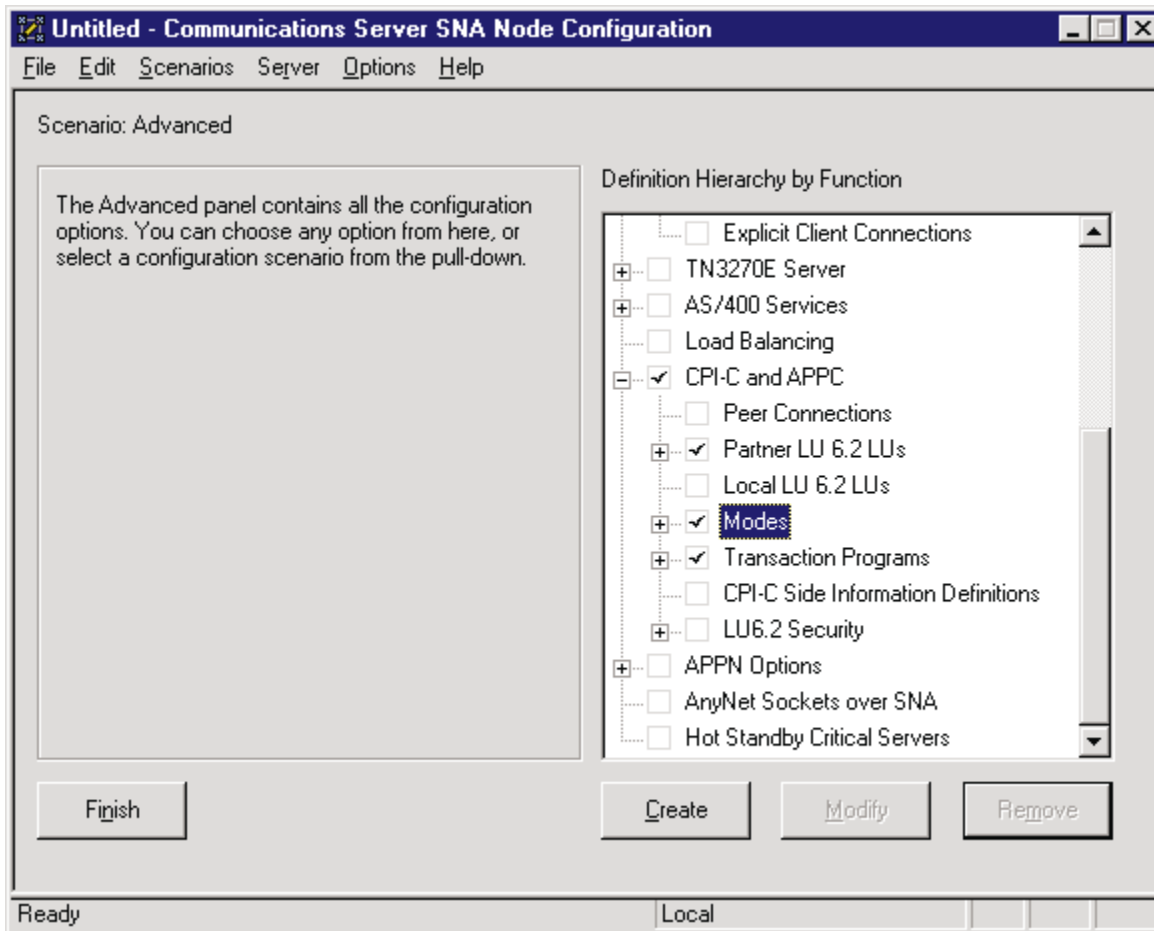


Figure 156. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Modes (Local 3174)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 156), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Modes** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Mode notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

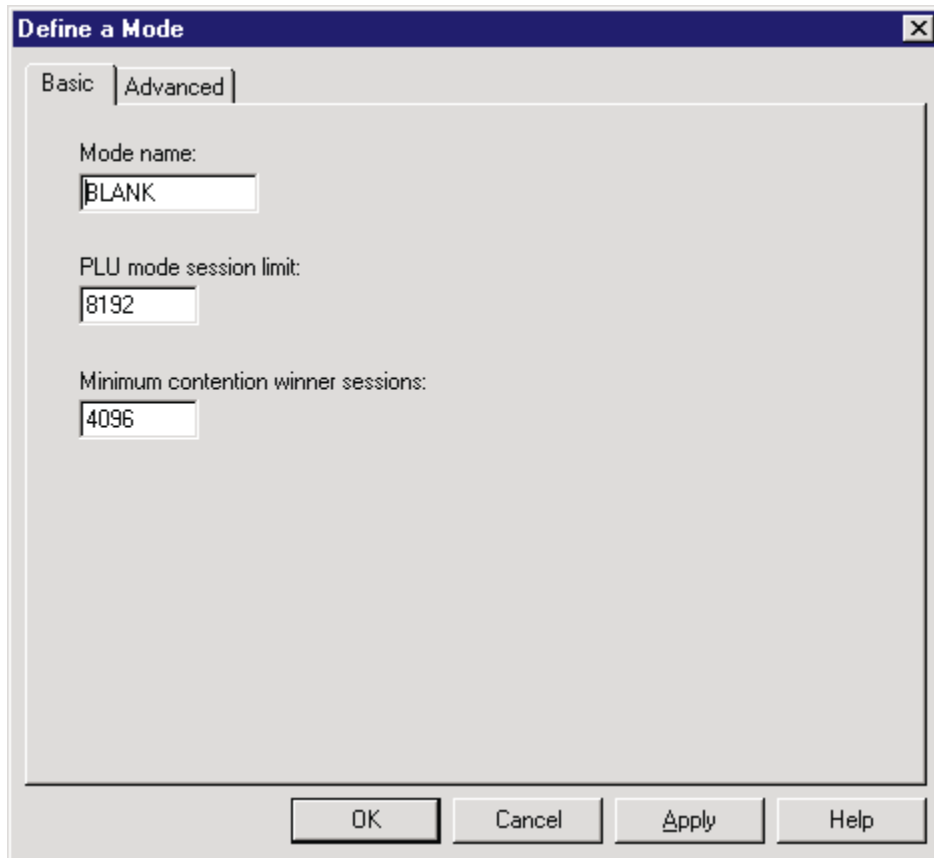


Figure 157. Define a Mode Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3174)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 157), supply the following values:

Mode name

Specifies the characteristics for the session that will be allocated for the conversation. The initiator uses this value. The **Mode name** in the **BLANK** profile is 8 spaces.

PLU mode session limit

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the primary logical unit (PLU) mode session limit, or maximum number of concurrently active LU-LU sessions that a particular LU can support. Take the default.

Minimum contention winner sessions

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the minimum number of sessions that a local LU using this mode can activate to win a contention with a partner. Take the default.

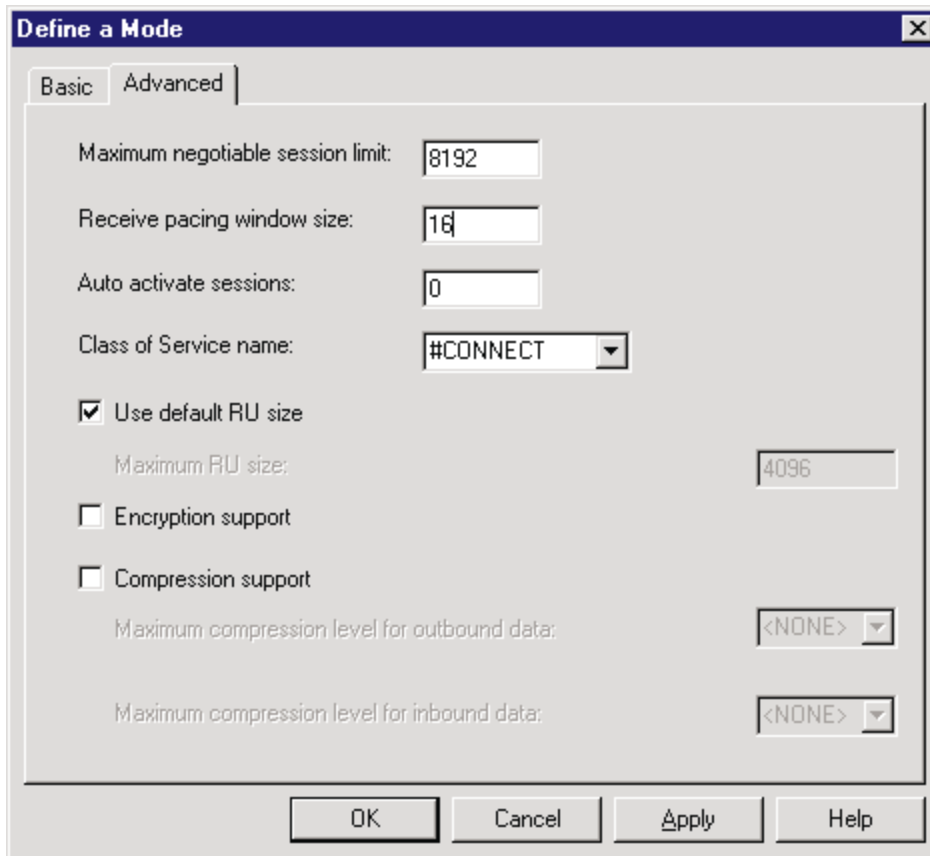


Figure 158. Define a Mode Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3174)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 158), supply the following values:

Maximum negotiable session limit

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the maximum number of sessions allowed in this mode between any local logical unit (LU) and partner LU. Take the default.

Receive pacing window size

Specifies the secondary receive pacing count. The lesser of this parameter's value and the **SRCVPAC** value in the VTAM **MODEENT** statement is used. (See "Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry" on page 113.) A value of 16 produces good throughput in most configurations. This parameter influences performance and can be adjusted as desired.

Auto activate sessions

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the number of parallel LU 6.2 sessions to automatically start when an initial session starts using this mode. Specify 0 so that no parallel sessions can start automatically for this application.

Class of Service name

Specifies the name of a set of transport network characteristics. Select the default: **#CONNECT** .

Use default RU size

Instructs the node to use the default maximum size for the request/response unit (RU) sent and received on the sessions. Do not select the check box.

Maximum RU size

Set this value to 1024, if it does not automatically specify that value when you remove the check from the **Use default RU size** parameter above.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Transaction Program Configuration for Local 3174

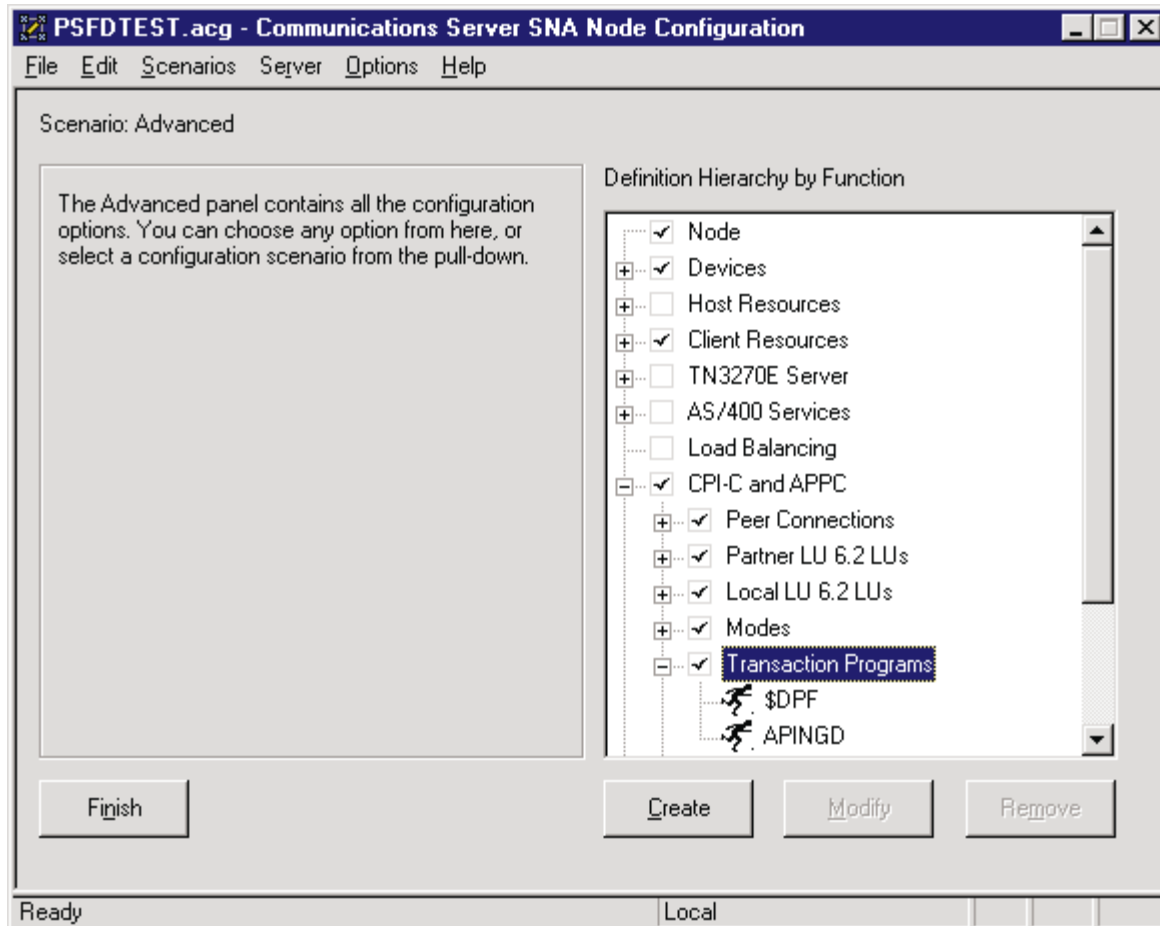


Figure 159. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Transaction Programs (Local 3174)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 159), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Transaction Programs** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Transaction Program notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

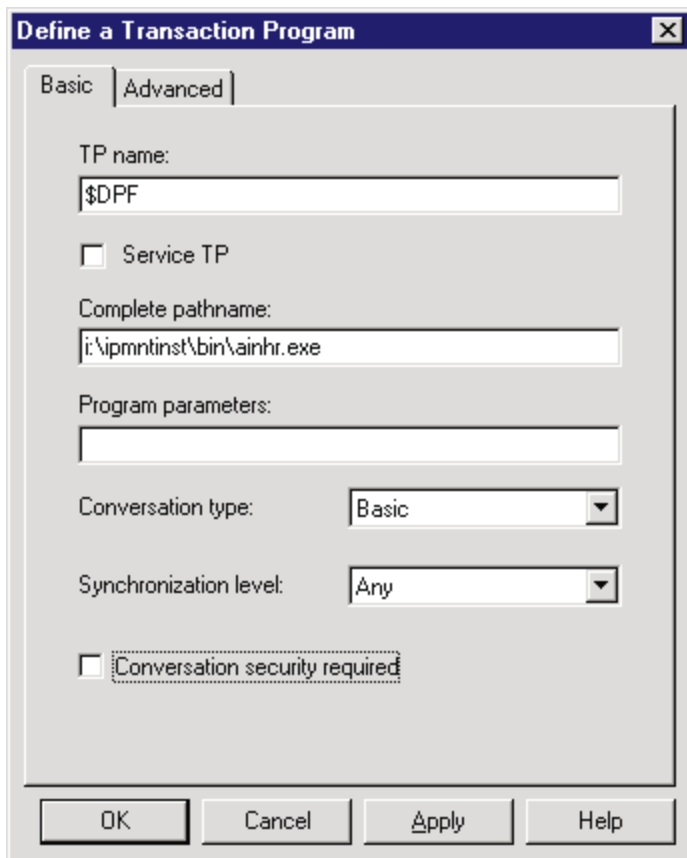


Figure 160. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Basic Tab (Local 3174)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 160), supply the following values:

TP name

Specifies a 1- to 64-byte character string for the program that uses the advanced program-to-program communications (APPC) system to communicate with a partner application program at the partner node. Enter \$DPF. If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, note that this value changes from a binary 30F0F0F0 to a non-binary \$DPF. Ensure that the **Service TP** check box is unchecked because it indicates a non-binary value.

Complete pathname

Specifies an 1- to 255-byte character string that describes the location of the program to run. The location can include the drive, the directory, the subdirectory, and the file name. In this example, i:\ipmntinst\bin\ainhr.exe specifies the location where Infoprint Manager for NT is installed on your system.

Conversation type

Specifies the conversation type allowed to start the transaction programs (TPs) that use an LU 6.2 session. Select **Basic**.

Synchronization level

Specifies the level allowed on allocation requests that start the local and remote transaction programs (TPs). Select **Any**.

Conversation security required

Allows controlled access to system resources through security parameters.

If this check box is selected, conversation security information is required to start the TP. Incoming allocation requests for this TP without the conversation security information will be rejected. Do not check this box.

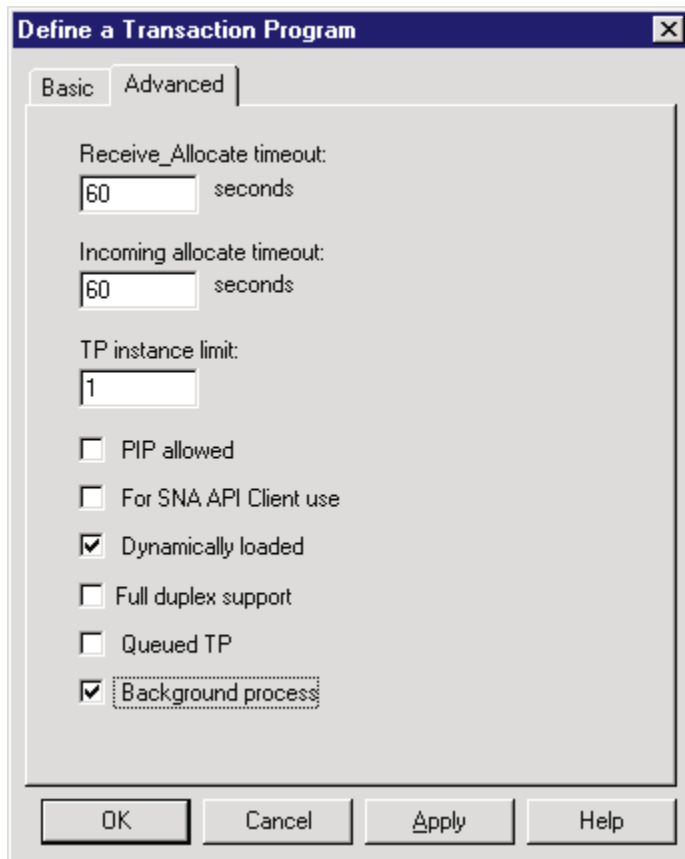


Figure 161. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Advanced Tab (Local 3174)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 161), supply the following values:

Receive_Allocate timeout

Specifies a value between 0 and 65535 seconds that identifies the time that a **Receive_Allocate** verb will be queued while waiting for an **Attach**. Specify 60.

Incoming allocate timeout

Specifies a value between 0 and 65535 seconds that identifies the time that an incoming **Attach** will be queued waiting for a **Receive_Allocate**. Specify 60.

TP instance limit

Specifies a value between 0 and 65535 seconds that identifies the maximum number of concurrently active TP instances. Specify at least 1 (or the number of LUs that you have defined). 0 means no limit.

Dynamically loaded

Specifies whether the transaction program (TP) can be dynamically started by an allocation request received on a conversation. Select the check box to dynamically load the TP.

Background process

Specifies that the program will run in the background. Only 32-bit programs can multitask in the Windows NT environment. Select the check box to use the background process.

Note: Ensure that **Dynamically loaded** and **Background process** (the two items checked in Figure 161 on page 145) are the only items checked. If you specify other options, this transaction program will not work.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Once you have completed creating this configuration, go to “Chapter 9. Starting an IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT Configuration” on page 229.

Local 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Work Sheets

Use the following work sheets to configure PSF Direct on both the host PSF and Infoprint Manager for NT:

- Use Table 8 to see how Communications Server for NT configuration settings relate to other configuration settings.
- Use Table 9 on page 148 to record your own Communications Server for NT values.

Local 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Work Sheet Example

Table 8. Local 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Work Sheet Example

Communication Server	Value	Infoprint Manager	VTAM	3174
Define the Node: Fully-qualified CP name	PSFDC5PU		PU <i>name</i> PU CPNAME	
Define the Node: Local Node ID	05D00000		PU IDBLK PU IDNUM	
Define a LAN Device: Receive window count	7			Item 941: W
Define a LAN Device: Maximum PIU size	65535			
Define a LAN Connection: Destination address	400030001001			Item 900 (local MAC address)
Host LU Definition: LU name	PSFDC5LU	LUNAME	LU <i>name</i>	
Host LU Definition: LU Model Type	Dependent LU 6.2		LU LOCADDR	
Host LU Definition: Host NAU Address	1		LU LOCADDR	
Define a Partner LU 6.2: Partner LU name	USIBMBQ.FSAES618	APPLID	ATCSTR _{xx} NETID APPL <i>name</i>	
Define a Mode: Mode name	BLANK			
Define a Mode: Receive pacing window size	16		MODEENT SRCVPAC	
Define a Mode: Maximum RU size	1024		MODEENT RUSIZES	

Local 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Blank Work Sheet

Table 9. Local 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Blank Work Sheet

Communication Server	Value	Infoprint Manager	VTAM	3174
Define the Node: Fully-qualified CP name			PU <i>name</i> PU CPNAME	
Define the Node: Local Node ID			PU IDBLK PU IDNUM	
Define a LAN Device: Receive window count				Item 941: W
Define a LAN Device: Maximum PIU size				
Define a LAN Connection: Destination address				Item 900 (local MAC address)
Host LU Definition: LU name		LUNAME	LU <i>name</i>	
Host LU Definition: LU Model Type			LU LOCADDR	
Host LU Definition: Host NAU Address			LU LOCADDR	
Define a Partner LU 6.2: Partner LU name		APPLID	ATCSTRxx NETID APPL <i>name</i>	
Define a Mode: Mode name				
Define a Mode: Receive pacing window size			MODEENT SRCVPAC	
Define a Mode: Maximum RU size			MODEENT RUSIZES	

Chapter 7. Remote 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration

Figure 162 shows a remote 3174 token-ring gateway configuration.

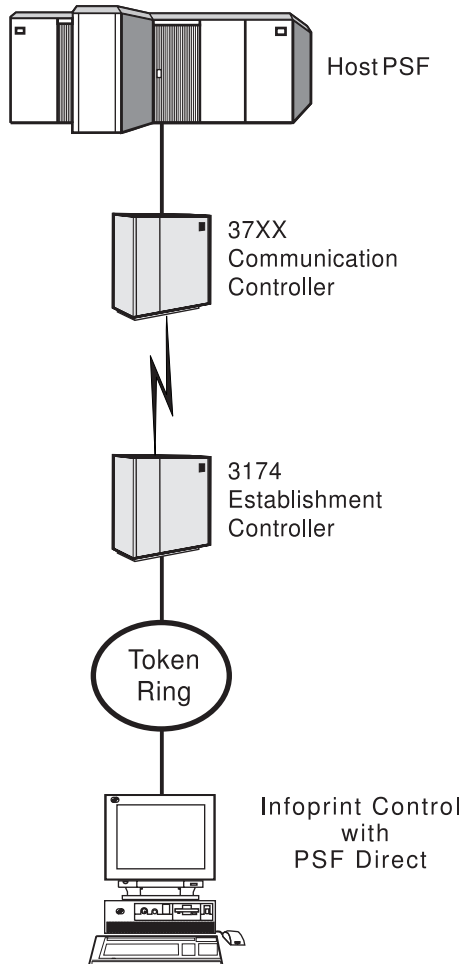


Figure 162. Remote 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration

This chapter describes how to create a remote 3174 token-ring gateway configuration. It contains guidelines and examples for the following tasks:

- “Remote 3174 Host Configuration” on page 150
 - “Specifying the JES2 Initialization Statement” on page 150
 - “Configuring the Host PSF Printer” on page 150
 - “Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx)” on page 153
 - “Specifying the VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn)” on page 154
 - “Specifying the VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program” on page 155
 - “Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry” on page 155
 - “Configuring the 3174 Establishment Controller” on page 156
- “Specifying Communications Server for NT Configuration Profiles” on page 158
 - “Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles” on page 158

- "Remote 3174 Node Setup" on page 160
- "Remote 3174 Device Configuration" on page 164
- "Remote 3174 Peer Connections Configuration" on page 169
- "Local LU 6.2 Configuration for Remote 3174" on page 173
- "Enabling SNA API Clients for Remote 3174" on page 176
- "Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for Remote 3174" on page 178
- "Mode Configuration for Remote 3174" on page 181
- "Transaction Program Configuration for Remote 3174" on page 184

Note: Before performing this configuration, review "Chapter 3. Preconfiguration Tasks" on page 13. You must define an alternate token-ring address (local MAC address) for your Infoprint Windows NT server.

At the end of the chapter, there are two configuration work sheets. The first work sheet (Table 11 on page 188) is filled out with the values from the examples. The second work sheet (Table 12 on page 189) is blank for your own values.

Remote 3174 Host Configuration

This section provides guidelines and examples for the following tasks:

- "Specifying the JES2 Initialization Statement"
- "Configuring the Host PSF Printer"
- "Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx)" on page 153
- "Specifying the VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn)" on page 154
- "Specifying the VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program" on page 155
- "Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry" on page 155
- "Configuring the 3174 Establishment Controller" on page 156

For each task, this section shows the pertinent parameters. It describes which of these require you to specify *variable_names* and which require a specific name or number, such as `MODETAB=MODEIBM` or `FMPROF=X'13'`. An underlined value (such as WCONNECT) indicates that the value is a system default.

Specifying the JES2 Initialization Statement

Define the host PSF printer as you would any other Systems Network Architecture (SNA)-attached printer. For example, on an OS/390 system you must provide either JES2 or JES3 initialization statements.

Figure 163 shows an example.

```
PRT618 CLASS=Y,MARKS=YES,START=NO,MODE=FSS,FSS=WTRES600, X
PRMODE=(LINE,PAGE),UCS=0
```

Figure 163. JES2 Initialization Statement Example (Remote 3174)

Configuring the Host PSF Printer

The manner in which a host PSF printer is configured depends on the operating system. You will use one of the following statements:

- Print Services Facility (PSF) for OS/390 `PRINTDEV` statement
- PSF/VSE `PRINTDEV` statement

- Parameters in the PSF/VM **OPTIONS PDM** file

On each operating system, PSF supports specification of both the application program ID (**APPLID**) and the logical unit name (**LUNAME**).

```

.
.
.
APPLID=appl_prog
LUNAME=lu_name
.
.
.

```

Figure 164. Host PSF Printer Guidelines (Remote 3174)

On some operating systems, PSF also supports other configuration parameters. The following text describes these parameters (listed in order of importance) and notes whether they are required or optional:

APPLID (required)

Specifies the application program that is the SNA logical unit provided by Virtual Telecommunications Access Method (VTAM) and used by PSF. The **APPLID** value must match:

- An **APPL** statement name in a VTAM application program major node
- The second part of the **Partner LU name** field on the **Basic** tab of the Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook (Figure 197 on page 179)

LUNAME (required)

Specifies the SNA logical unit with which PSF tries to initiate a session. The **LUNAME** value must match:

- An **LU** statement name in a VTAM switched major node
- The **LU name** field in the Host LU Definition window (Figure 192 on page 174)

LOGMODE (optional)

Specifies the VTAM logon mode table entry that defines characteristics of the session between the logical units identified by the **APPLID** and **LUNAME** parameters. The **LOGMODE** parameter identifies an entry within a logon mode table. The **MODETAB** operand on the VTAM **LU** statement identifies the logon mode table. If you omit the **LOGMODE** parameter, the **DLOGMOD** operand on the VTAM **LU** statement identifies the entry within the logon mode table.

Note that if the logical unit identified by the **LUNAME** parameter is a cross-domain resource, you must not use the **LOGMODE** parameter.

SETUP (optional)

Specify **SETUP=FORMS** to cause the Job Entry Subsystem (JES) to issue forms setup messages to the operator.

By default, JES issues forms setup messages to the operator for channel-attached printers, but does not issue forms setup messages to the operator for SNA-attached printers.

MGMTMODE ={IMMED | OUTAVAIL | DIALIN} (optional)

Determines how the host PSF program and PSF Direct initiate communication.

IMMED

Causes the host PSF program to initiate communication when it starts.

OUTAVAIL

Causes the host PSF program to initiate communication when there is available output to print.

DIALIN

Causes the host PSF program to initiate communication only after a switched line becomes available. The switched line can become available either when VTAM dials out or when the remote node dials in.

Note that if you specify **DIALIN**:

- Do not use the **LOGMODE** parameter.
- Include the **LOGAPPL** operand on the VTAM LU statement.
- Ensure that the **LOGAPPL** operand on the VTAM LU statement matches the **APPLID** value.

FAILURE={WCONNECT | STOP} (optional)

Specifies whether or not the host PSF program re-attempts communication after a printer or communication failure. If you do not specify a value for the **FAILURE** parameter, it defaults to **WCONNECT**.

WCONNECT

Specifies that the host PSF program attempts to communicate again.

STOP Specifies that the operator must restart the host PSF program.

DISCINTV (optional)

Specifies the interval (in seconds) that the host PSF program waits for output to become available to print. If no output becomes available, the host PSF program ends communication with the printer.

Specify 0 to cause the host PSF program to maintain communication indefinitely. If you do not specify a value for **DISCINTV**, it defaults to 0.

Figure 165 on page 153 shows an example of a single **PRTDEV** statement for a device named PRT618. Note that if an installation has multiple printers defined for receiving PSF Direct jobs, you must define a separate **PRTDEV** statement for each printer.

```

//WTRES600 PROC
//*
//STEP01 EXEC PGM=APSPPIEP,REGION=4096K
//*
//STEPLIB DD DSN=SYSTEM.PSF.V220.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//*
//JOBHDR OUTPUT PAGEDEF=A06462, /* JOB HEADER PAGEDEF */
// FORMDEF=A10110 /* JOB HEADER FORMDEF */
//JOBTLR OUTPUT PAGEDEF=A06462, /* JOB TRAILER PAGEDEF */
// FORMDEF=A10110 /* JOB TRAILER FORMDEF */
//DSHDR OUTPUT PAGEDEF=A06462, /* DATA SET HEADER PAGEDEF*/
// FORMDEF=A10110 /* DATA SET HEADER FORMDEF*/
//MSGDS OUTPUT PAGEDEF=A06462, /* MESSAGE DATASET PAGEDEF*/
// FORMDEF=A10110 /* MESSAGE DATASET FORMDEF*/
//*
//FONT01 DD DSN=SYS1.FONTLIB,DISP=SHR
//OLAY01 DD DSN=SYS1.OVERLIB,DISP=SHR
//PSEG01 DD DSN=SYS1.PSEGLIB,DISP=SHR
//FDEF01 DD DSN=SYS1.FDEFLIB,DISP=SHR
//PDEF01 DD DSN=SYS1.PDEFLIB,DISP=SHR
//*
//PRT618 PRINTDEV FONTDD=*.FONT01, /* FONT LIBRARY DD */
// OVLydd=*.OLAY01, /* OVERLAY LIBRARY DD */
// PSEGDD=*.PSEG01, /* SEGMENT LIBRARY DD */
// PDEFDD=*.OLAY01, /* PAGEDEF LIBRARY DD */
// FDEFDD=*.OLAY01, /* FORMDEF LIBRARY DD */
// JOBHDR=*.JOBHDR, /* JOB HEADER DD */
// JOBTLR=*.JOBTLR, /* JOB TRAILER DD */
// DSHDR=*.DSHDR, /* DATA SET HEADER DD */
// MESSAGE=*.MSGDS, /* MESSAGE DATA DD */
// PAGEDEF=A06462, /* DEFAULT PAGEDEF */
// FORMDEF=A10110, /* DEFAULT FORMDEF */
// CHARS=(GT10,GC15,GB10,GR10,), /* DEFAULT FONT SET*/
// PIMSG=YES, /* ACCUMULATE DATA SET MESSAGES */
// SETUP=FORMS, /* ISSUE FORMS SETUP MESSAGES */
// MGMTMODE=OUTAVAIL, /* START WHEN OUTPUT AVAILABLE */
// DISCINTV=60, /* DISCONNECT INTERVAL -- SECS */
// LOGMODE=IBM3820T, /* LOGON MODE TABLE ENTRY */
// APPLID=FSAES618, /* APPLICATION PGM NAME */
// LUNAME=PSFDC5LU /* LOGICAL UNIT NAME */
//PRT618 ENDCNTL

```

Figure 165. JES2 External Writer Procedure Example (Remote 3174)

Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx)

You must specify the values illustrated in Figure 166 and described below.

```

CONFIG=nn,          ATCCON MEMBER OF VTAMLST      X
NETID=network_id,  NETWORK IDENTIFIER          X
SSCPID=nn,         SSCP IDENTIFIER            X
.
.
.

```

Figure 166. VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) Guidelines (Remote 3174)

CONFIG

Specifies the ATCCON nn member to use.

NETID

Specifies the network identifier for the host system. The first part of the **Partner LU name** field on the **Basic** tab of the Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook (Figure 197 on page 179) must match the **NETID** value.

SSCPID

Specifies the system services control point (SSCP) at the host. The SSCPID is a decimal integer from 0 to 65535.

The SSCP, normally VTAM, provides several network management functions. They include managing dependent logical units and accepting Network Management Vector Transports, such as alerts. Alerts often include information about devices that are unavailable or require corrective action.

To configure a PSF Direct host receiver to send alerts to this SSCP, the least significant portion of the **SNA System Services Control Point ID** value defined for the PSF Direct host receiver must be the hexadecimal equivalent of the SSCPID value. (For information about configuring the host receiver, see "Defining the PSF Direct Host Receiver" on page 232.) The **SNA System Services Control Point ID** must be in the form **05xxxxxxxx**, where *x* is a hexadecimal digit.

For example, to configure a PSF Direct host receiver to send alerts to an SSCP with an SSCPID value of 283, the host receiver's **SNA System Services Control Point ID** value must be 05000000011B.

Figure 167 shows an example.

```
CONFIG=00,      ATCCON MEMBER OF VTAMLST      X
NETID=USIBMBQ, NETWORK IDENTIFIER    X
SSCPID=1,      SSCP IDENTIFIER      X
.
.
.
```

Figure 167. VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx) Example (Remote 3174)

Specifying the VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn)

The VTAM configuration list indicates the application program major nodes that should become available when VTAM starts. Include the application program major node that contains the application program that PSF uses.

```
appl_prog_major_node,      X
.
.
.
```

Figure 168. VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn) Guidelines (Remote 3174)

Figure 169 on page 155 shows an example.


```
PSFAPPLS,          X
.
.
.
```

Figure 169. VTAM Configuration List (ATCCONnn) Example (Remote 3174)

Specifying the VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program

The pertinent operands for the VTAM application program major node and application program are illustrated in Figure 170 and described below.

```
appl_prog_major_node, VBUILD TYPE=APPL          X
appl_prog,           APPL AUTH=ACQ,EAS=1,SONSCIP=YES X
.
.
.
```

Figure 170. VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program Guidelines (Remote 3174)

The host PSF program does not support application programs that use **APPC=YES** or **PARSESS=YES**. The default value for both **APPC** and **PARSESS** is **NO**.

Figure 171 shows an example.

```
PSFAPPLS,  VBUILD TYPE=APPL          X
FSAES618,  APPL AUTH=ACQ,EAS=1,SONSCIP=YES X
.
.
.
```

Figure 171. VTAM Application Program Major Node and Application Program Example (Remote 3174)

Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry

The operands for the VTAM mode table are illustrated in Figure 172 and described below.

```
table_name  MODETAB          X
entry_name  MODEENT LOGMODE=IBM3820T,FMPROF=X'13',TSPROF=X'07', X
.
.
.
PRIPROC=X'B0',SECPROT=X'B0',COMPROT=X'B0B1' X
PSERVIC=X'060200000000000000000000200' X
PSNDPAC=X'10',SRCVPAC=X'10',SSNDPAC=X'00' X
RUSIZES=X'8787'
```

Figure 172. VTAM Mode Table and Entry Guidelines (Remote 3174)

PSNDPAC

Specifies the primary send pacing count. This value influences performance and can be adjusted as desired. A value of X'10' produces good throughput in most configurations.

SRCVPAC

Specifies the secondary receive pacing count. This value influences performance and can be adjusted as desired. A value of X'10' produces good throughput in most configurations.

RUSIZES

Specifies the maximum request unit (RU) sizes from the primary and secondary logical units. The RU sizes influence performance and can be adjusted as desired. A value of X'8787' means 1024 bytes for both RU sizes and produces good throughput in most configurations.

The **RUSIZES** specification influences other configuration parameters. These include:

- The **Maximum RU size** field on the **Advanced** tab of the Define a Mode notebook (Figure 201 on page 183)
- The **MAXSTL** operand in the IBM Network Control Program (NCP) **LINE** statement

Figure 173 shows an example.

```
MODEIBM      MODETAB                      X
IBM3820T     MODEENT LOGMODE=IBM3820T,FMPROF=X'13',TSPROF=X'07', X
.
.
.
PRIPROC=X'B0',SECPROT=X'B0',COMPROT=X'B0B1' X
PSERVIC=X'060200000000000000000000200' X
PSNDPAC=X'10',SRCVPAC=X'10',SSNDPAC=X'00' X
RUSIZES=X'8787'
```

Figure 173. VTAM Mode Table and Entry Example (Remote 3174)

Configuring the 3174 Establishment Controller

The keywords and values for the 3174 Establishment Controller are illustrated in Figure 174 and described below.

```
.
.
.
CONFIGURATION SUPPORT C RELEASE 3
900: TOKEN-RING ADDRESS FOR THE GATEWAY
      4000 nnnn nnnn
940: RING ADDRESS ASSIGNMENT
      S@ Ring@,          SAP
.
.
.
      nn 4000 nnnn nnnn
      nn nnnn nnnn nnnn 04
      DLOGMOD=IBM3820T,
941: RING TRANSMISSION DEFINITION
           F W
      nn nnnn nnnn nnnn
      nn nnnn nnnn nnnn n n
```

Figure 174. 3174 Establishment Controller Guidelines (Remote 3174)

900: Token-Ring Address for the Gateway

Specify the token-ring address for the gateway. The address must be a local MAC address in the form 4000 nnnn nnnn .

940: Ring Address Assignment

This configuration item includes several pertinent parameters:

S@ Indicates the subchannel address. Values are supplied automatically on the **Ring Address Assignment** panel. The first **S@** value specifies the subchannel address for the gateway. The remaining **S@** values specify subchannel addresses for ring-attached physical units.

Ring@ Indicates the token-ring address. The first **Ring@** value specifies the token-ring address for the gateway and is supplied automatically on the **Ring Address Assignment** panel.

Specify a token-ring address for each ring-attached physical unit. Local MAC addresses are preferable to universal MAC addresses. Local MAC addresses are in the form **4000 *nnnn nnnn***.

SAP Accept the default service access point (SAP) value, 04.

941: Ring Transmission Definition

This configuration item includes two pertinent parameters:

F Indirectly specifies the transmit I-frame size.

To prevent basic information units (BIUs) from being broken into pieces, choose a transmit I-frame size that is at least 9 bytes larger than the maximum RU size. The maximum RU size is the lesser of the value represented by the VTAM **MODEENT** statement **RUSIZES** operand and the **Maximum RU size** field on the **Advanced** tab of the Define a Mode notebook (Figure 201 on page 183).

W Specifies the transmit window size. The transmit window size is the number of frames that the 3174 sends to the physical unit before waiting for a link-level acknowledgement.

The **Receive window count** field on the **Advanced** tab of the Define a LAN Device notebook (Figure 184 on page 166) specifies the maximum number of frames that Communications Server for NT receives before sending a link-level acknowledgement.

For optimum performance, the transmit window size (**W**) should be equal to the **Receive window count**. If the transmit window size is less than the **Receive window count**, extremely poor throughput can result. In most cases, the default transmit window size value is 2. The default **Receive window count** value is 8. You must adjust these default values to produce acceptable throughput.

```

.
.
.
CONFIGURATION SUPPORT C RELEASE 3
900: TOKEN-RING ADDRESS FOR THE GATEWAY
      4000 3000 1001
940: RING ADDRESS ASSIGNMENT
      S@ Ring@,          SAP
.
.
.
      C1 4000 3000 1001
      C2 4000 3000 1002    04
      DLOGMOD=IBM3820T,
941: RING TRANSMISSION DEFINITION
      F W
      C1 4000 3000 1001
      C1 4000 3000 1002    2 7

```

Figure 175. 3174 Establishment Controller Example (Remote 3174)

Specifying Communications Server for NT Configuration Profiles

This section contains instructions and guidelines for configuring the Communications Server for NT profiles. It includes the following tasks:

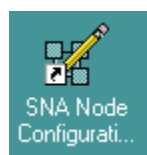
- “Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles”
- “Remote 3174 Node Setup” on page 160
- “Remote 3174 Device Configuration” on page 164
- “Remote 3174 Peer Connections Configuration” on page 169
- “Local LU 6.2 Configuration for Remote 3174” on page 173
- “Enabling SNA API Clients for Remote 3174” on page 176
- “Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for Remote 3174” on page 178
- “Mode Configuration for Remote 3174” on page 181
- “Transaction Program Configuration for Remote 3174” on page 184

Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles

Use the following procedure to access the IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT applications that are described in “What is IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT?” on page 2.

Note that this procedure assumes that you have dragged the icons for **SNA Node Configuration** and **SNA Node Operations** to your desktop after they were created at installation.

1. From your NT desktop view, double-click the **SNA Node Configuration** icon that resides on your desktop:



2. At the Welcome to Communications Server Configuration! pop-up window, select the **New** button for a new configuration) and click the **Next>** button.

Communications Server creates an *xxx.acg* file (where *xxx* represents the file name you select in this window. This *xxx.acg* file resides in the C:\IBMCS\private directory, where C is the drive where you installed IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT. For users migrating from PSF Direct on an OS/2 operating system, this *xxx.acg* file is the equivalent of the OS/2 Communications Manager Communications Server *xxx.ndf* file.

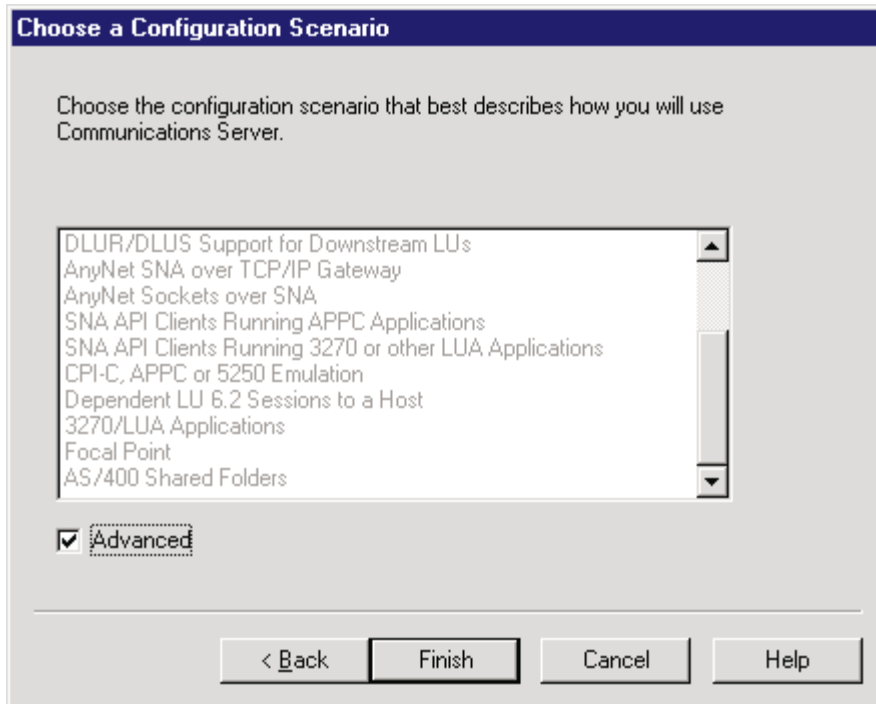


Figure 176. Choose a Configuration Scenario Window (Remote 3174)

3. In the Choose a Configuration Scenario window (Figure 176), check the **Advanced** box, which causes the display to turn gray. Click the **Finish** button.
4. From the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 177 on page 160), you are ready to begin configuring your system for PSF Direct.

Remote 3174 Node Setup

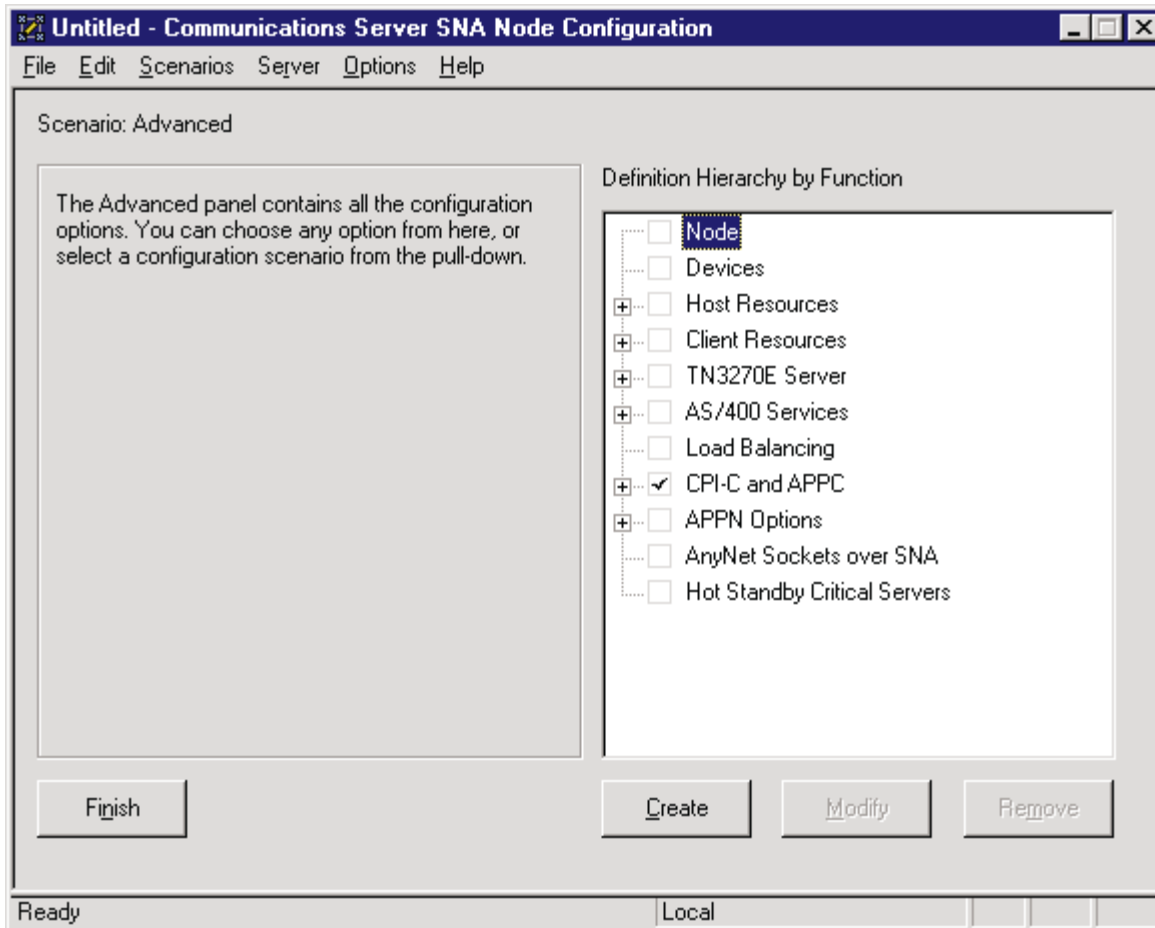


Figure 177. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Node (Remote 3174)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 177), right-click the **Node** box and select the **Create** option. The Define the Node notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

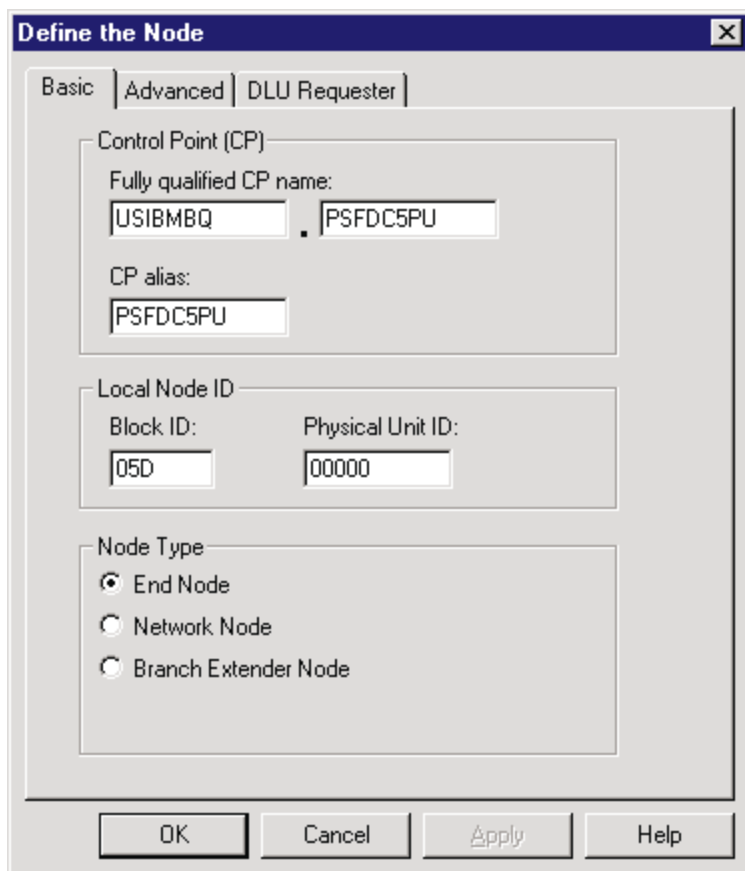


Figure 178. Define the Node Notebook: Basic Tab (Remote 3174)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 178), specify values for the following parameters:

Fully qualified Control Point (CP) name

Specifies the name of the component that manages the resources of that node. If the **CPNAME** operand is used in the VTAM **PU** statement, then the second part of this value must match the **CPNAME** operand. By convention, the **CPNAME** is usually the same as the **PU** name.

CP alias

Specifies an alternative name for the CP. Local applications can use this name, instead of the **Fully qualified Control Point (CP) name**, to refer to the local CP.

Local Node ID

Specifies both the **Block ID** and the **Physical Unit ID**. The **Block ID** is a 3-digit hexadecimal string that identifies the product type in an SNA network. The **Physical Unit ID** is a 5-digit hexadecimal string that identifies a physical unit (PU).

If the **IDBLK** and **IDNUM** operands are used in the VTAM **PU** statement, then the **Local Node ID** value must match the combined **IDBLK** and **IDNUM** operands. The **IDBLK** operand is normally 071 for Communications Server for NT.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system, **Local Node ID** matches the **XID Node ID** parameter.

Node Type

Specifies the type of node. Take the default value, **End node**.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system, **Node Type** matches the **Control Point Type** parameter.

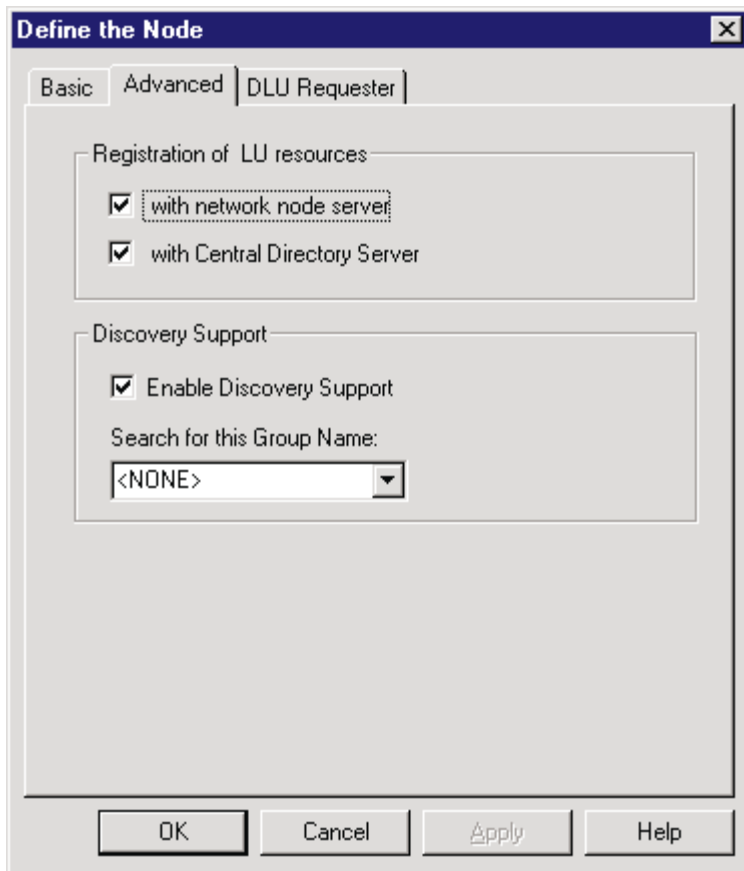


Figure 179. Define the Node Notebook: Advanced Tab (Remote 3174)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 179), specify values for the following parameters:

Registration of LU resources

Specifies that directory information about the local logical units (LUs) 6.2 is sent to the server. As the example shows, check both the **Network node server** and the **Central Directory Server**.

Discovery Support

Specifies a LAN address resolution protocol that can be used to find another node that matches given search values. Adjust the search parameter to search for APPN network nodes, nodes that provide SNA boundary function, or AS/400s. Select the check box to enable discovery support.

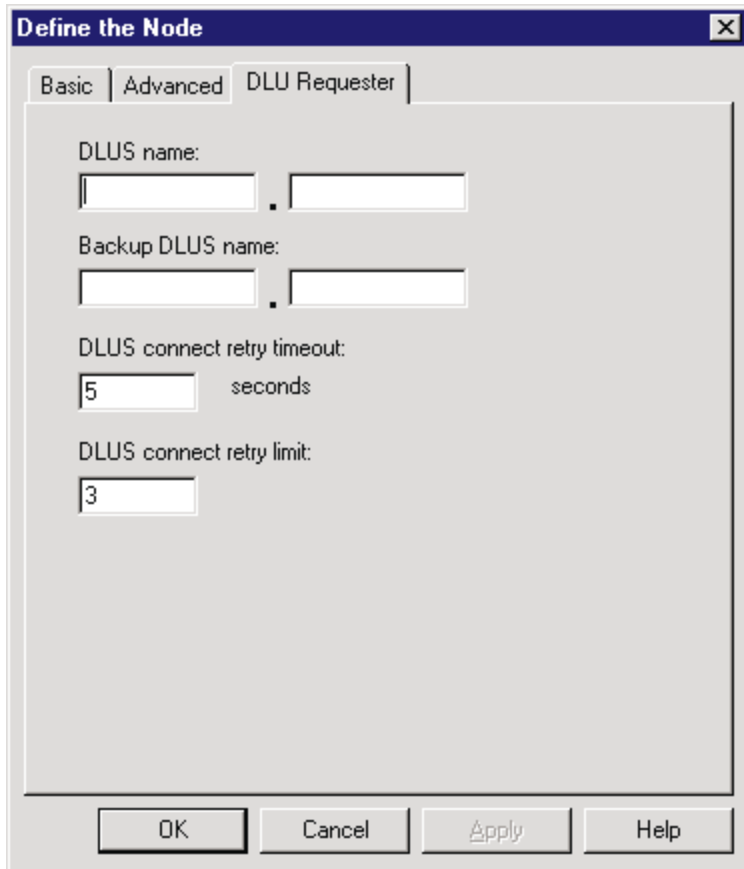


Figure 180. Define the Node Notebook: DLU Requester Tab (Remote 3174)

On the **DLU Requester** tab (Figure 180), accept the default values for the following parameters:

DLUS connect retry timeout

Specifies the time between attempts to reconnect a dependent logical unit server (DLUS). This parameter is based on the **DLUS connect retry limit** parameter. Take the default of 5.

DLUS connect retry limit

Specifies the maximum number of attempts to reconnect a DLUS without receiving an acknowledgment in the time set by the **DLUS connect retry timeout** parameter. Take the default of 3.

Click **OK** to save these configuration settings.

Remote 3174 Device Configuration

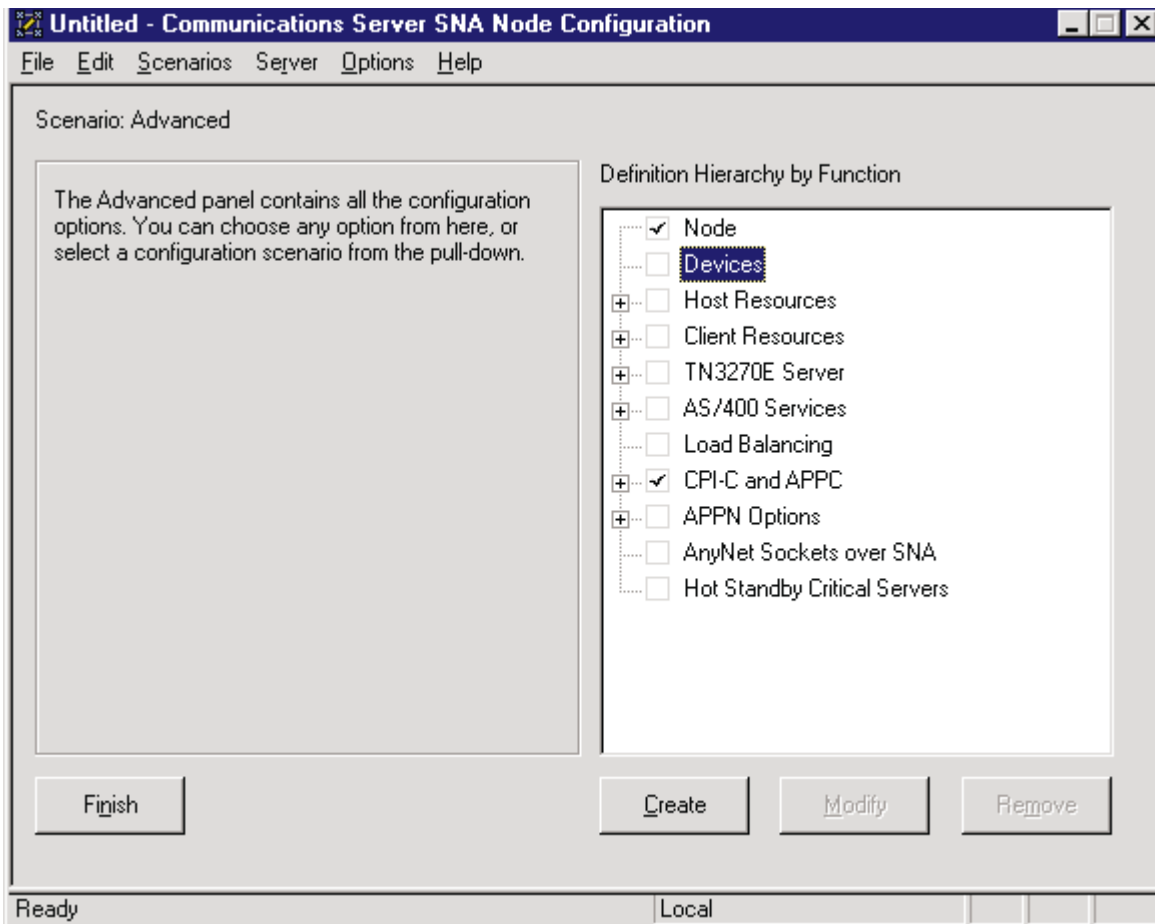


Figure 181. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Devices (Remote 3174)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 181), right-click the **Devices** box and select the **Create** option. The Device Type pop-up notebook (Figure 182) opens.

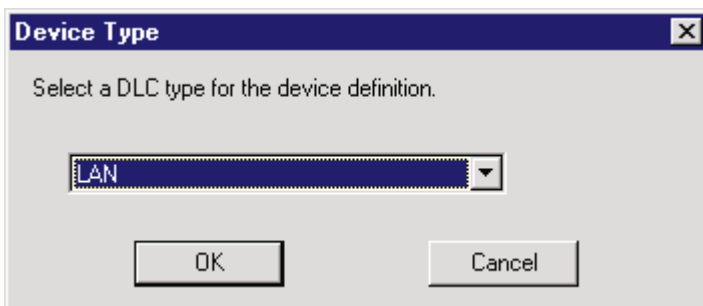


Figure 182. Device Type Window (Remote 3174)

Select **LAN** as your data link control (DLC) type. A DLC is a set of rules that nodes on a data link (such as an SDLC link or a token ring) use to accomplish an orderly exchange of information.

Click **OK** to save this configuration setting.

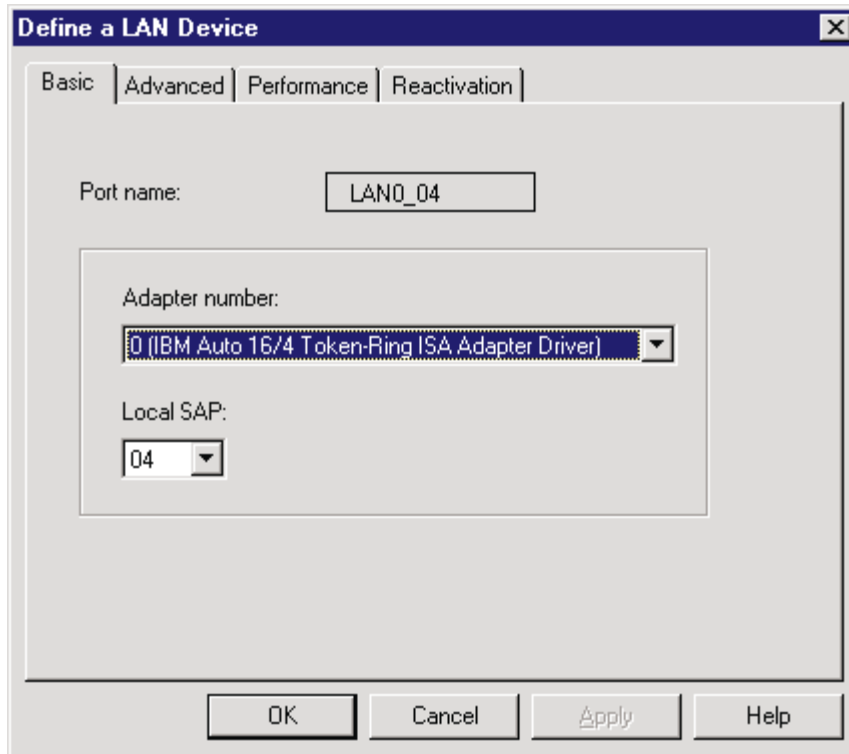


Figure 183. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Basic Tab (Remote 3174)

On the **Basic** tab of the Define a LAN Device notebook (Figure 183), supply the following values:

Port name

Specifies the port name of the physical connection to the link hardware. This value consists of the word **LAN**, the adapter number, and the local SAP number, with an underscore between the adapter number and the local SAP number. Accept the value that is displayed.

Adapter number

Specifies a value from 0 to 7 that uniquely identifies this adapter. You may have both token-ring and ethernet adapters defined at your installation. Ensure that you select the proper token-ring LAN adapter.

Local SAP

Specifies the local service access point (SAP) number of the local port as a hexadecimal value from 04 through FC. Note that this number must be a multiple of four. Take the default of 04.

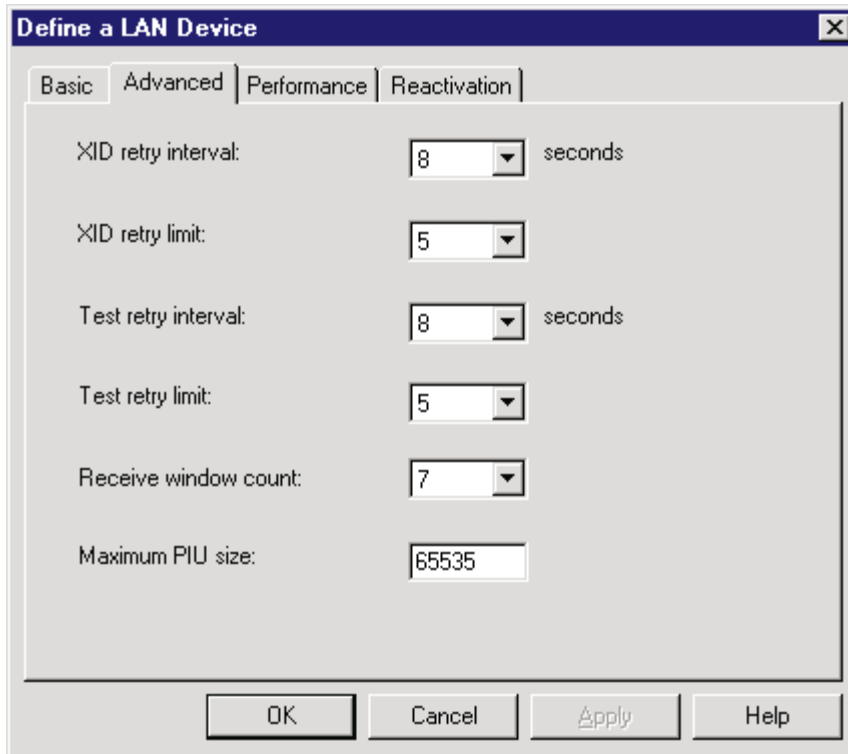


Figure 184. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Advanced Tab (Remote 3174)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 184), supply the following values:

XID retry interval

Specifies the time the link station waits for a reply to a previous **XID** command before resending that command. Specify 60. This value causes the link station to try to establish a link connection with the communication controller every 60 seconds, until a link connection can be established. If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, this parameter replaces the **Response Timeout** parameter from the **Token-Ring SNA DLC** profile.

XID retry limit

Specifies the maximum number of times an **XID** command will be retransmitted before Communications Server for NT presumes that the link is broken and stops retrying. Specify 0. This value indicates that there is no limit on the number of attempts the link station makes to establish a link connection with the communication controller. The previous parameter defines the interval between the attempts. If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, this parameter replaces the **XID Retransmit count** parameter from the **Token-Ring SNA DLC** profile.

Test retry interval

Specifies the time between attempts to find the adjacent link station on the LAN. This parameter is needed to establish communication with the network and does not necessarily relate to VTAM or the PSF host system. The number of times an **XID** is sent is based on the configured **XID retry limit**.

Test retry limit

Specifies the number of times Communications Server attempts to find the adjacent link station on the LAN. Specify a value from 3 to 30.

Receive window count

Defines the size of the link-level window. This value specifies the maximum number of frames to receive before sending a link-level acknowledgement.

Maximum PIU size

Specifies a value between 99 and 65535 bytes that represents the maximum number of bytes in the data buffer that SNA sessions use for this link. If the value of the **Maximum PIU size** exceeds the frame size supported by your local device driver, the value will be reduced to match the frame size.

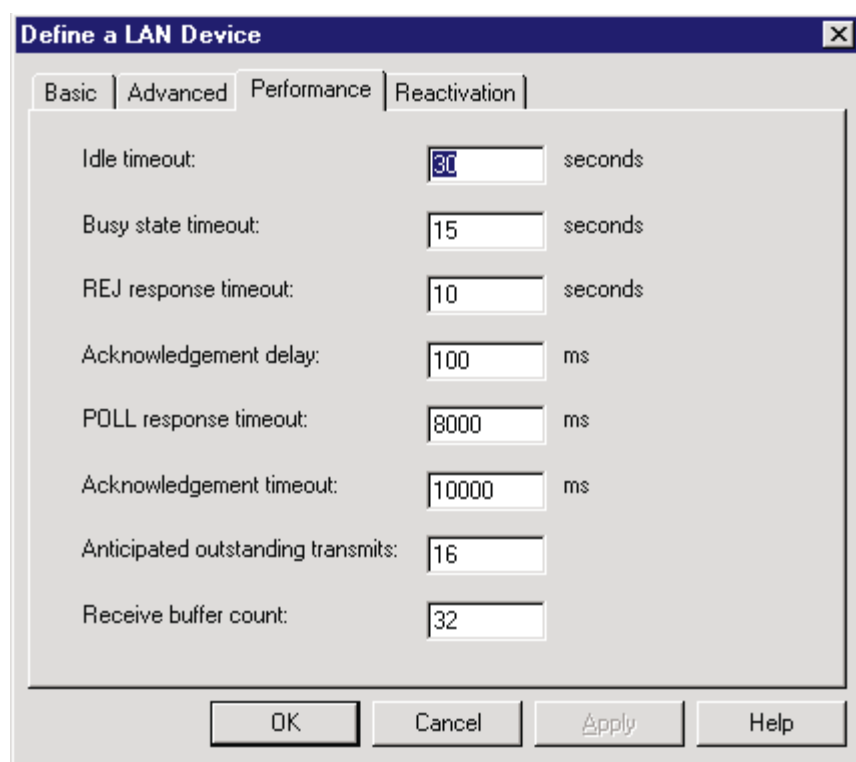


Figure 185. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Performance Tab (Remote 3174)

On the **Performance** tab (Figure 185), accept the default values.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, see Table 10 on page 168 for a map of the parameters on the **Performance** tab to the corresponding AIX values.

Table 10. Windows NT and AIX Parameters for LAN Device Performance (Remote 3174)

Windows NT Parameter	AIX Parameter
Idle timeout	Inactivity time-out
Busy state timeout	n/a
Acknowledgement delay	n/a
Acknowledgement timeout	Acknowledgement timeout
POLL response timeout	n/a
Anticipated outstanding transmits	Transmit window count
Receive buffer count	n/a

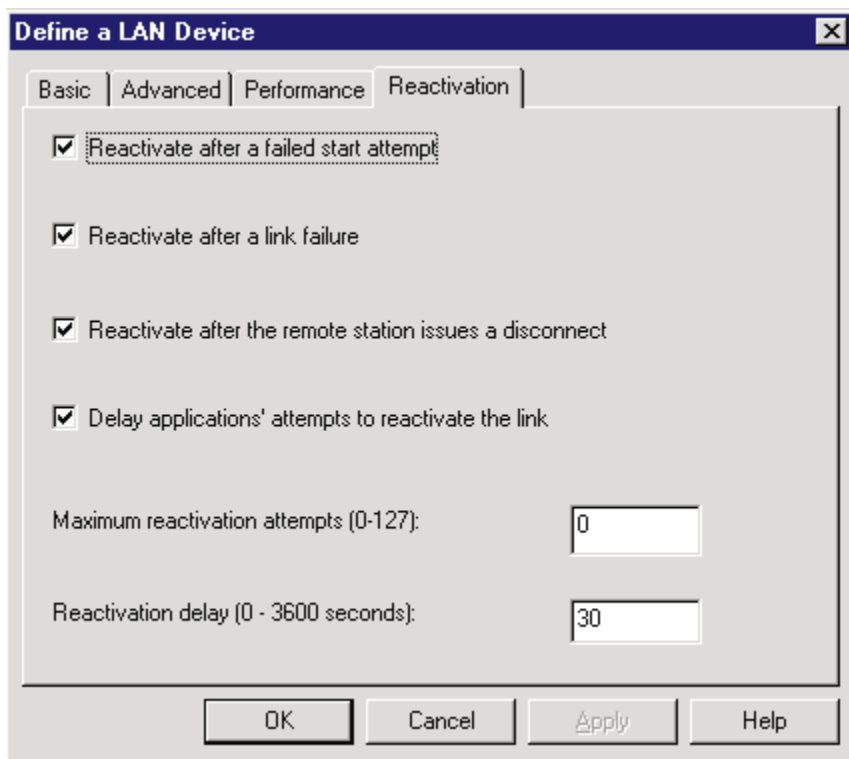


Figure 186. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Reactivation Tab (Remote 3174)

On the **Reactivation** tab (Figure 186), accept the default values.

Click **OK** to save these configuration settings.

Remote 3174 Peer Connections Configuration

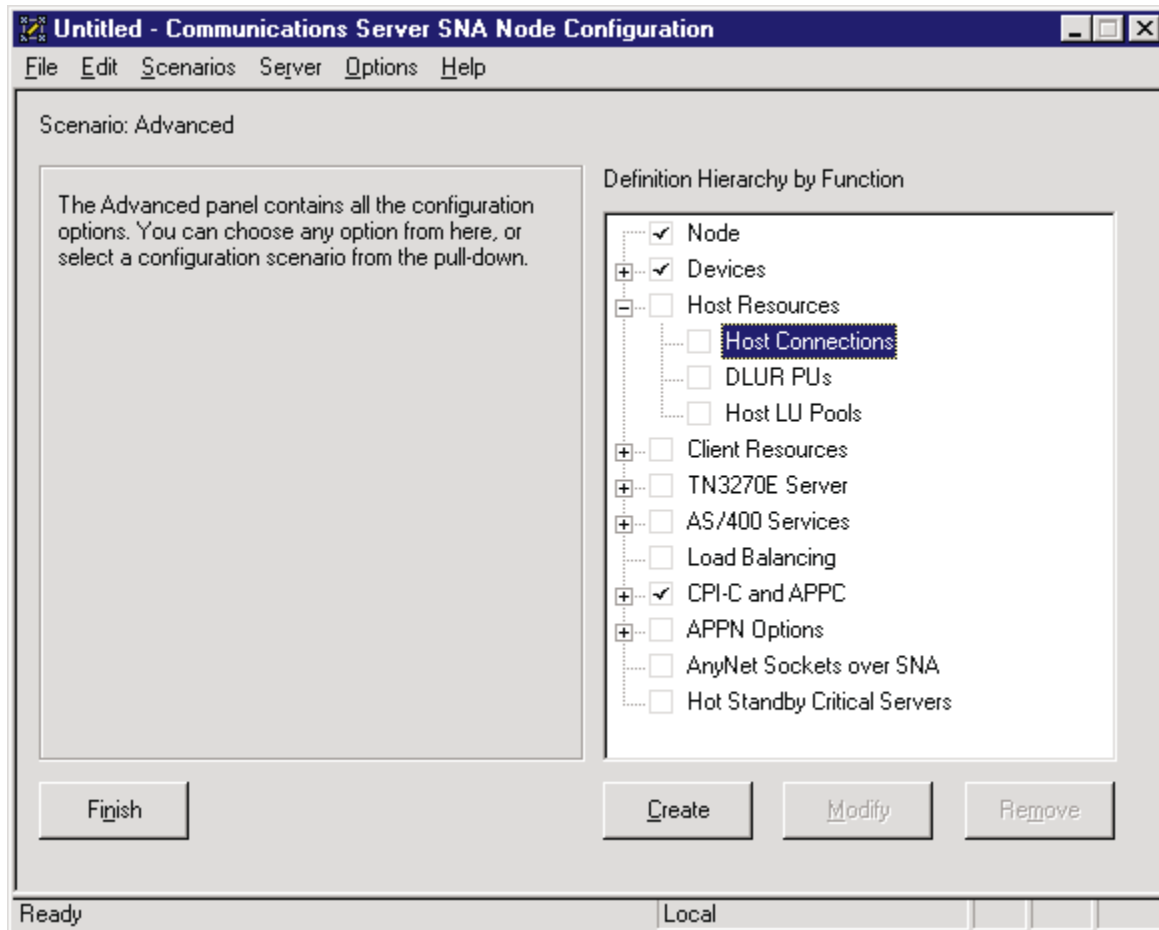


Figure 187. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Host Connections (Remote 3174)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 187), right-click the **Host Resources** box, then the **Host Connections** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a LAN Connection notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

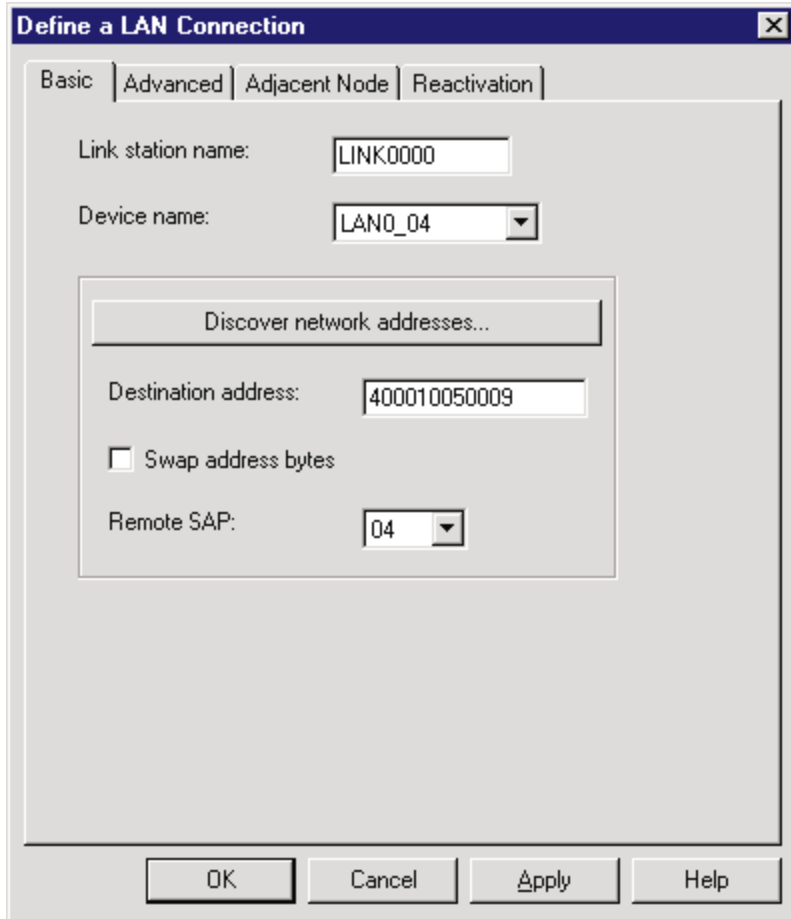


Figure 188. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Basic Tab (Remote 3174)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 188), supply the following values:

Link station name

Specifies a 1- to 8-byte character string that is used to identify a connection. The contents of this field will vary, depending on the number of links at your installation.

Device name

Specifies the name of the port associated with this link station. This value must match the **Port name** value specified on the **Basic** tab of the Define a LAN Device notebook (Figure 183 on page 165).

Destination address

Specifies a 12-character hexadecimal string that specifies the address to activate a connection to the destination. This value must be specified so the NT system can search for and call the PSF host program.

Swap address bytes

Check this field to bit-swap the address in the **Destination address** field. You may need to select this check box if the next link in the network is an Ethernet link. If not, you can use the default (unchecked).

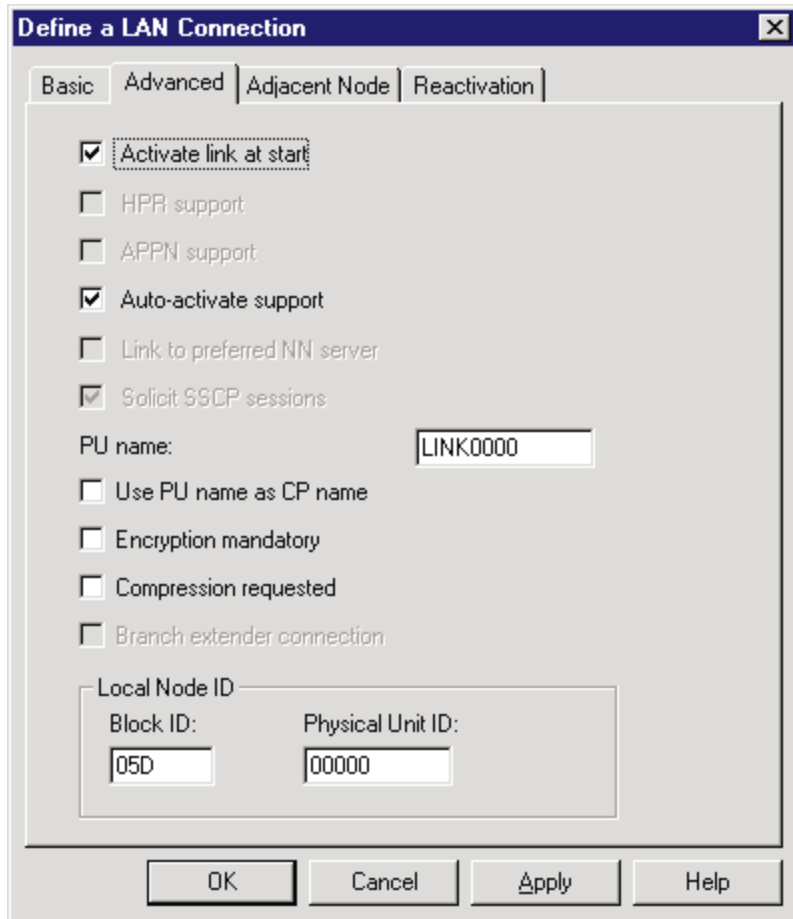


Figure 189. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Advanced Tab (Remote 3174)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 189), supply the following values:

Activate link at start

Specifies that you will use the link reactivation values specified in the port (device) link reactivation definition. Ensure that you select this check box.

APPN support

Specifies whether this connection supports CP-CP sessions. Select the check box to specify APPN support.

PU name

Specifies the physical unit (PU) name is the name of the component that manages and monitors the resources (such as attached links and adjacent link station) associated with a node. The default PU name is automatically created. You can change this definition.

Block ID

Identifies the product type in an SNA network.

Physical Unit ID

Identifies the physical unit (PU) or component that manages and monitors the resources (such as attached links and adjacent link stations) associated with a node.

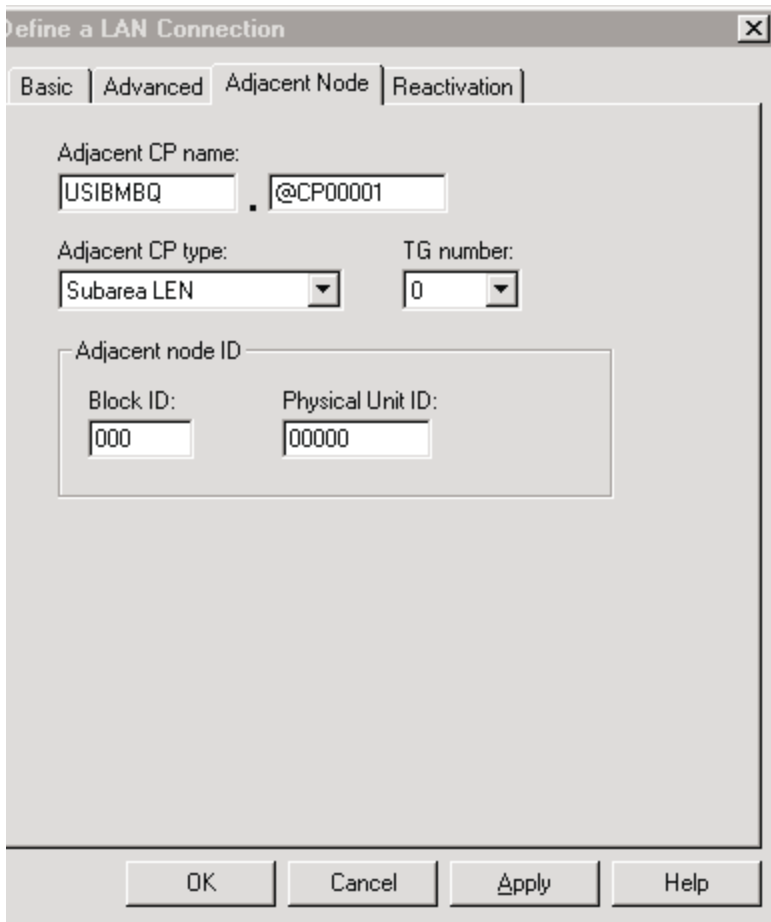


Figure 190. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Adjacent Node Tab (Remote 3174)

On the **Adjacent Node** tab (Figure 190), accept the default values.

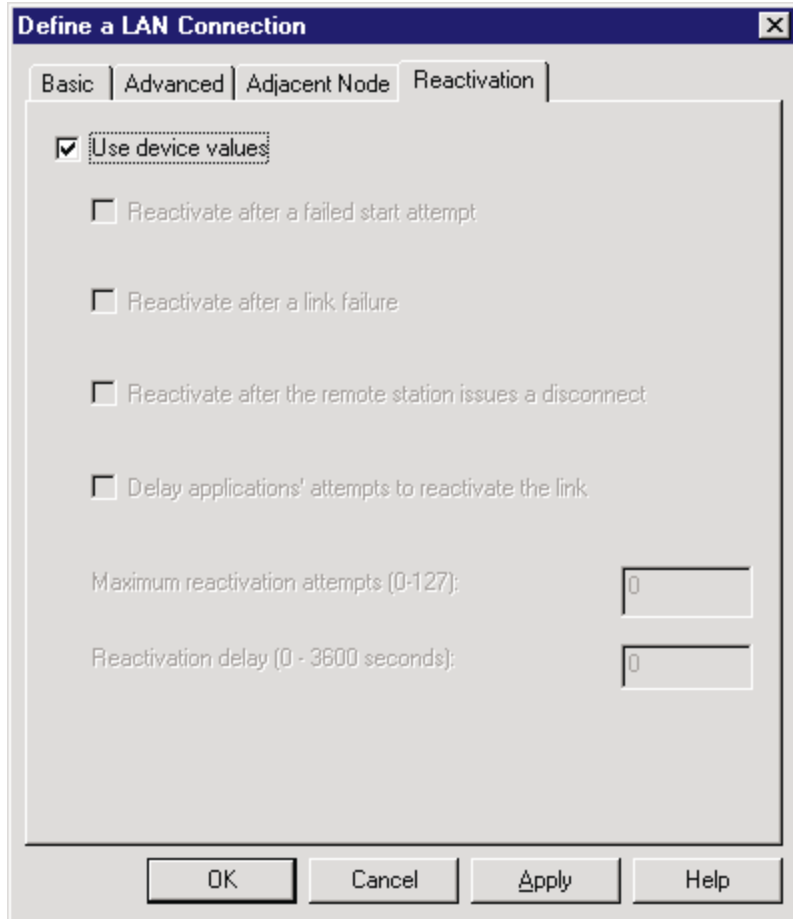


Figure 191. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Reactivation Tab (Remote 3174)

On the **Reactivation** tab (Figure 191), accept the default values.

Note that after you select **OK**, a pop-up window appears asking:
Do you want to automatically route all APPC sessions over this connection?

You must reply yes. Then, a pop-up window asks:
Do you wish to create and assign new LUs to this connection?

When you reply yes, the Host LU Definition window (Figure 192 on page 174) appears.

Local LU 6.2 Configuration for Remote 3174

Dependent or Independent LU?

This procedure configures a *dependent* LU. You cannot use it to configure an *independent* LU. If you require independent LUs, see "Deciding whether to Define a Dependent or an Independent LU" on page 14.

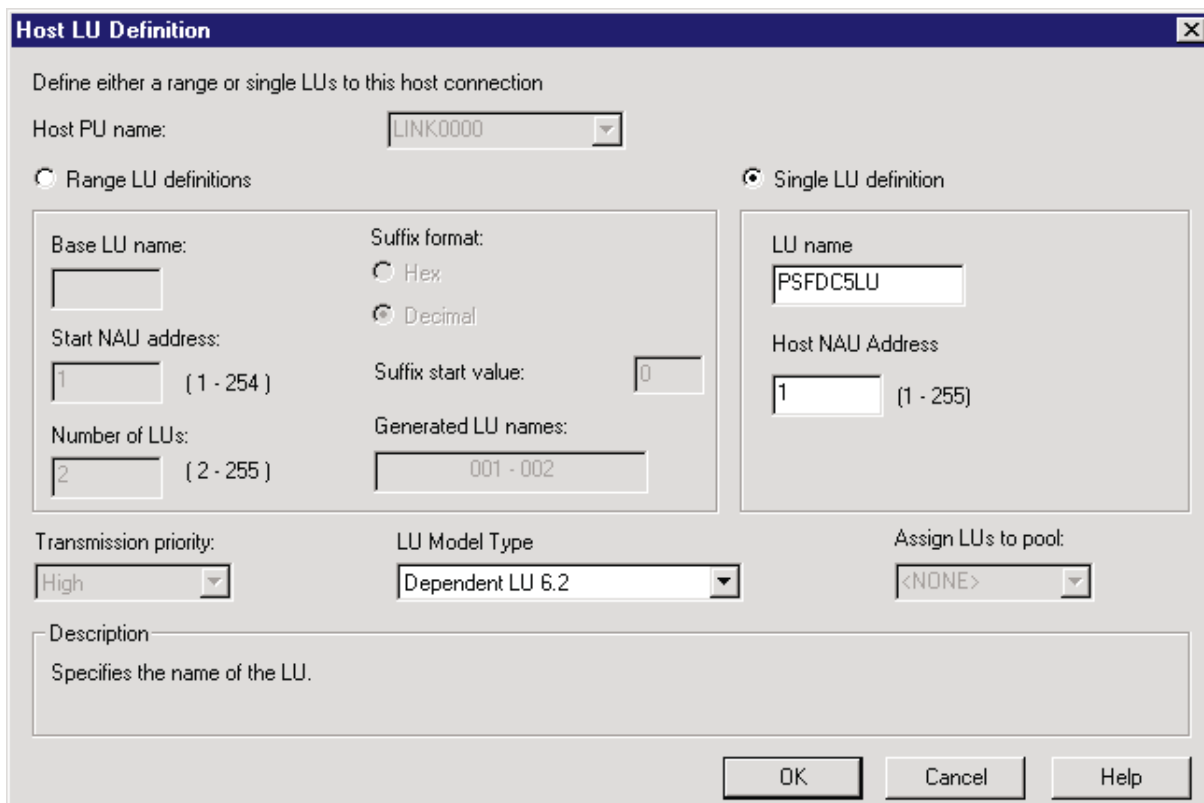


Figure 192. Host LU Definition Window (Remote 3174)

In the Host LU Definition window (Figure 192), supply the following values:

Single LU Definition

Specifies that the host link definition can be assigned a single LU definition. Select this button to indicate that the host LU definition is assigned a single link definition.

LU Name

Specifies a 1- to 8-character name of a type of network addressable unit (NAU) that enables end users to communicate with each other and gain access to network resources. The first character must be an uppercase alphabetic character (A-Z) or a special character (@,#,\$). The remaining characters can be alphanumeric characters (A-Z, 0-9) or special characters (@,#,\$). This name must match the Partner LU that is defined for the host PSF program.

Host NAU Address

Specifies a value between 1 and 255 for a dependent LU. This value must match the **LOCADDR** value on the VTAM LU statement.

LU Model Type

Specifies the model type and number of the LU that is used by Infoprint Manager when configuring the PSF Direct host receiver. Select **Dependent LU 6.2**.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

To see this defined LU, click the **Host Connections** box in the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 193) until you display the link (LINK0000) and the Dependent LU (PSFDC5LU).

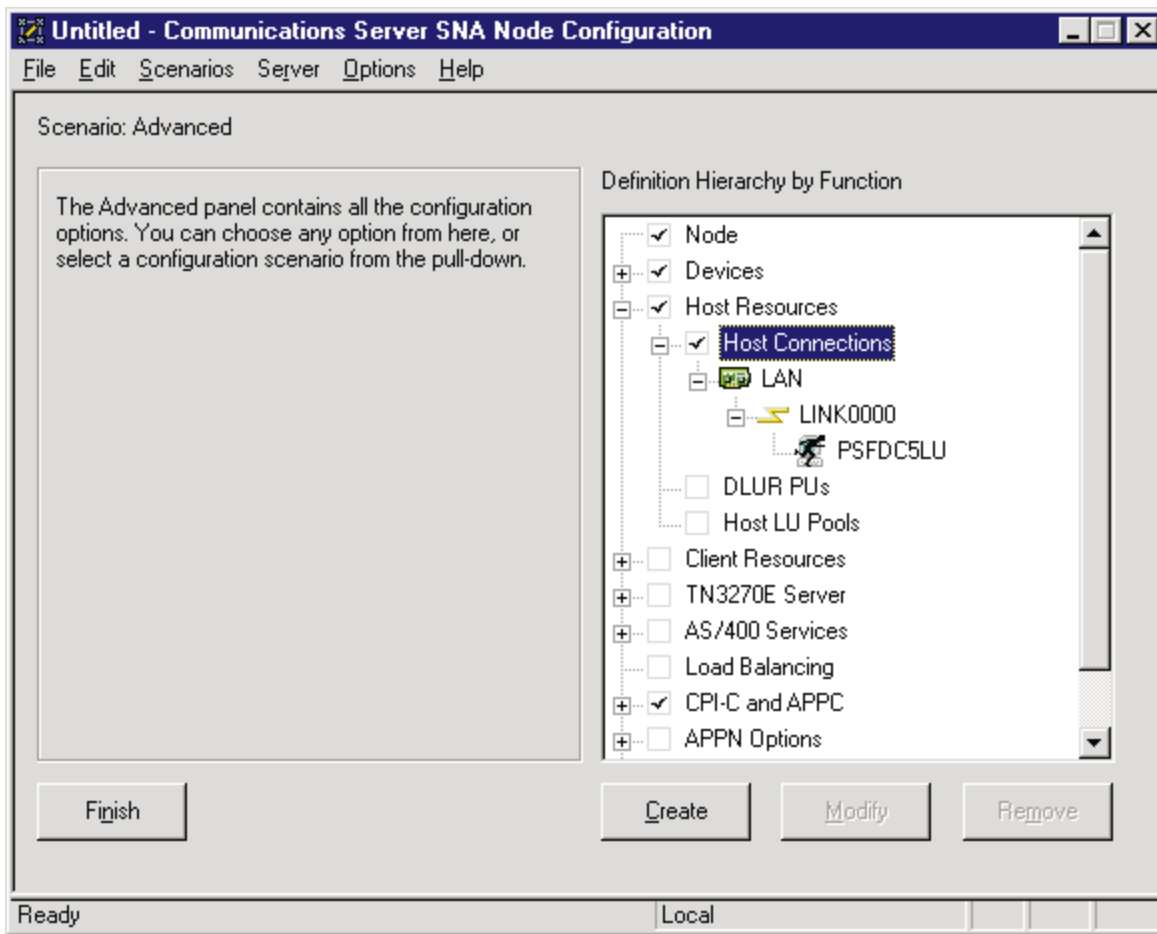


Figure 193. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Defined LU (Remote 3174)

Enabling SNA API Clients for Remote 3174

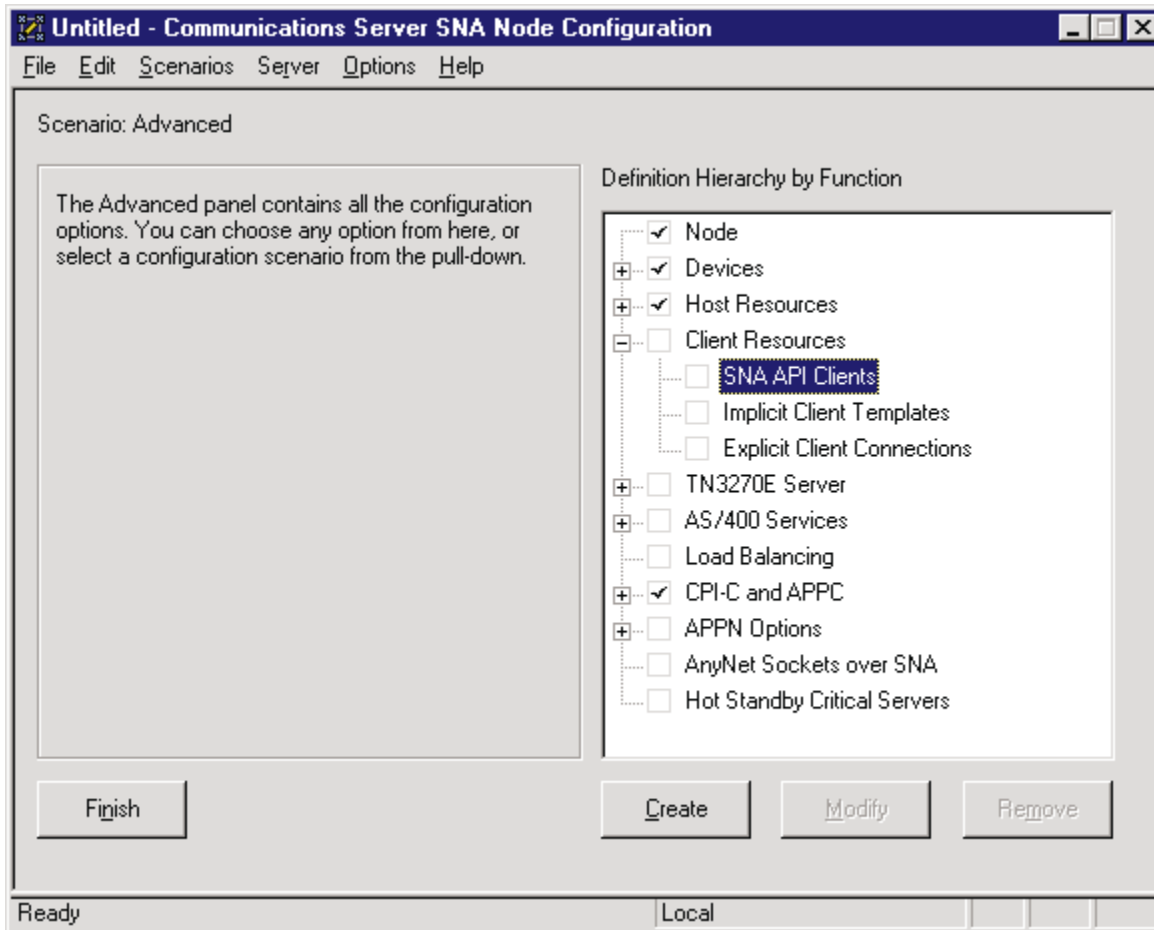


Figure 194. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: SNA API Clients (Remote 3174)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 194), right-click the **Client Resources** box, then the **SNA API Clients** box. The SNA Clients window opens.

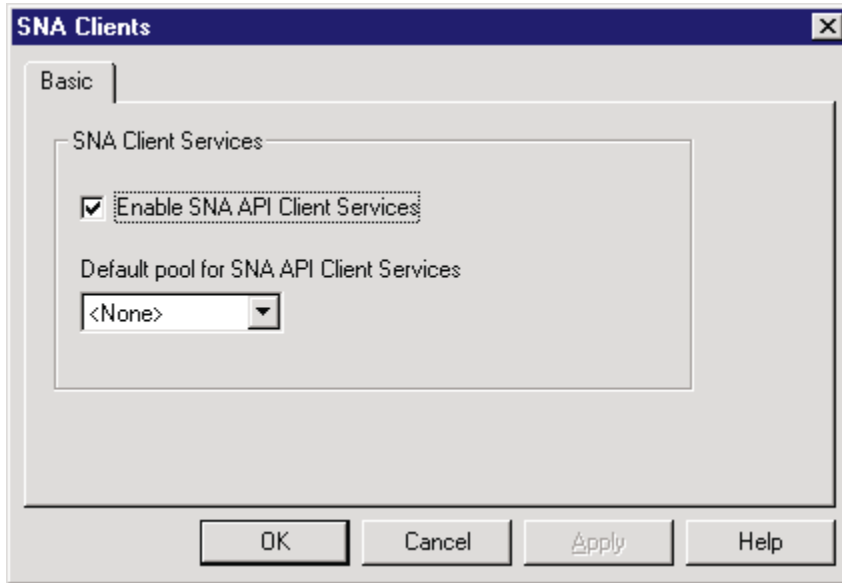


Figure 195. SNA Clients Window (Remote 3174)

In the SNA Clients window (Figure 195), check the **Enable SNA API Client Services** box.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for Remote 3174

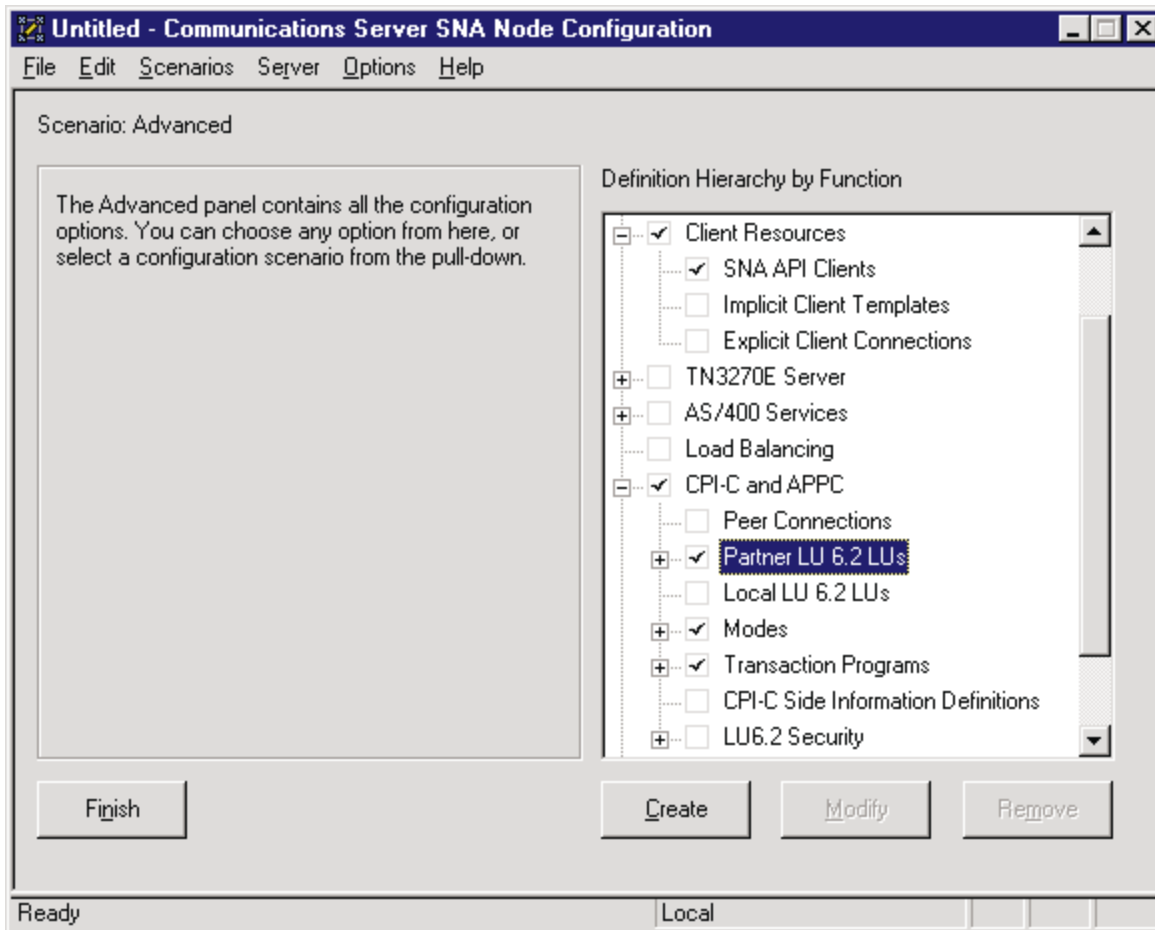


Figure 196. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Partner LU 6.2 LUs (Remote 3174)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 196), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Partner LU 6.2 LUs** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

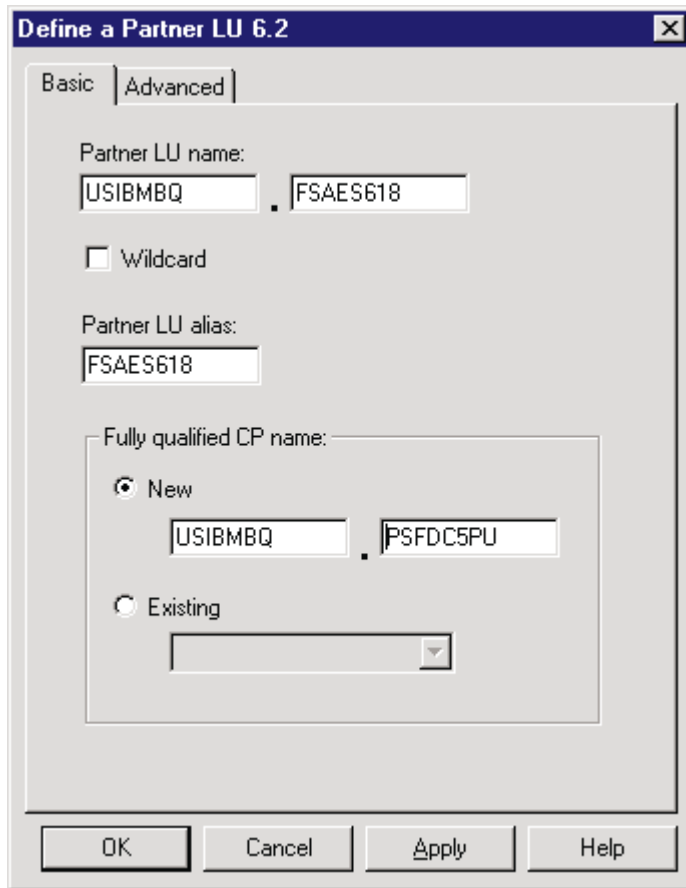


Figure 197. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Basic Tab (Remote 3174)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 197), supply the following values:

Partner LU name

Specifies the network identifier of the network in which the host PSF program resides (followed by a period), and the logical unit name used by the host PSF program. The network identifier portion must match the **NETID** value in the VTAM start option list (ATCSTRxx) (see “Specifying the VTAM Start Option List (ATCSTRxx)” on page 153). The logical unit name portion must match the **APPLID** parameter in one of these places:

- The PSF for OS/390 **PRINTDEV** statement
- The PSF/VSE **PRINTDEV** statement
- The PSF/VM **OPTIONS PDM** file

That **APPLID** parameter on the PSF host system must also match an **APPL** statement in a VTAM application program major node. (Do not check the **Wildcard** check box.)

Partner LU alias

Specifies the alternate name for the partner LU. Local applications can use this name, instead of the fully qualified LU name, to refer to the partner LU. While you can choose any meaningful value, IBM recommends specifying the second qualifier of the **Partner LU name**.

Fully qualified CP name

Select **New** to enter the fully qualified CP name of the partner LU's

owning control point. Communications Server for NT requires this field. Infoprint Manager uses this field as the target for any alerts sent by the PSF Direct program.

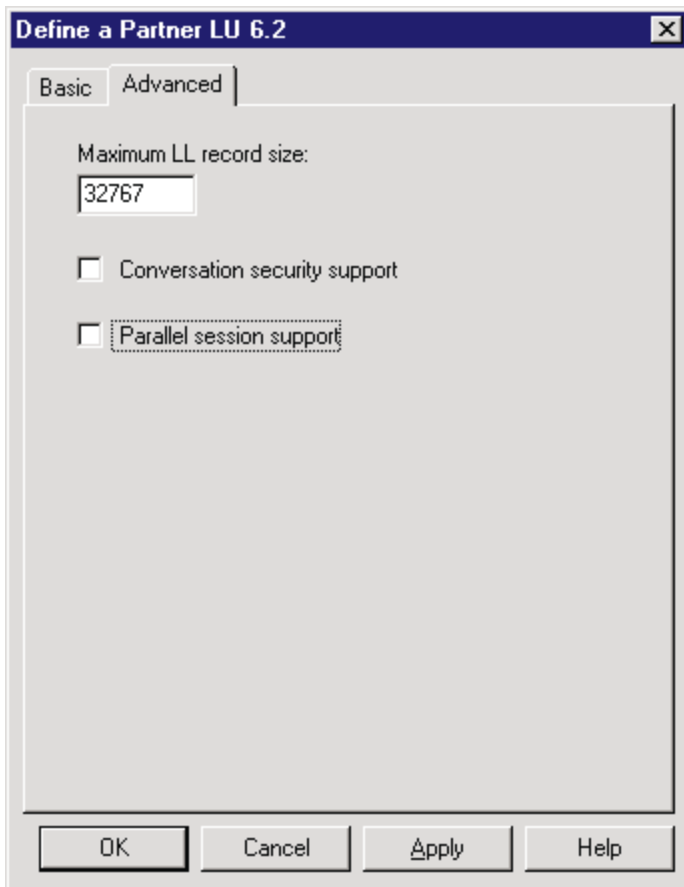


Figure 198. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Advanced Tab (Remote 3174)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 198), supply the following values:

Maximum LL record size

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the maximum size of the logical record in the data stream for basic conversations. Specify the default (32767), because the PSF host program and the PSF Direct host receiver should both be able to handle the full range.

Conversation security support

Specifies that the partner logical unit (LU) is authorized to validate the user identifiers for the local LUs. Select the check box to specify conversation security support if you have matching support on the host PSF program. If not, leave this box unchecked.

Parallel session support

Specifies whether the partner LU supports two or more currently active sessions between the same two LUs by using different pairs of network addresses or session identifiers. Because neither PSF Direct nor the PSF host programs support two sessions with the same partner LU, do not select this check box.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Mode Configuration for Remote 3174

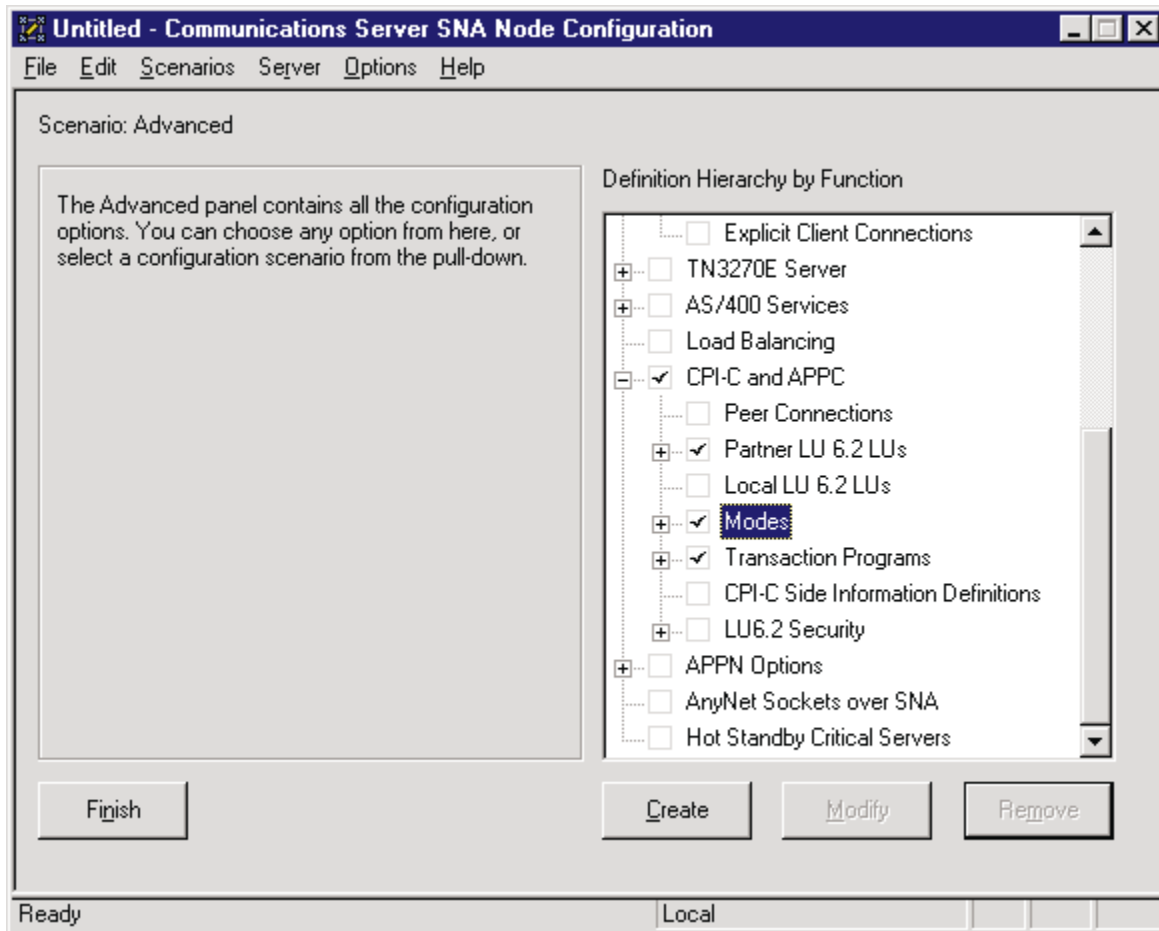


Figure 199. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Modes (Remote 3174)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 199), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Modes** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Mode notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

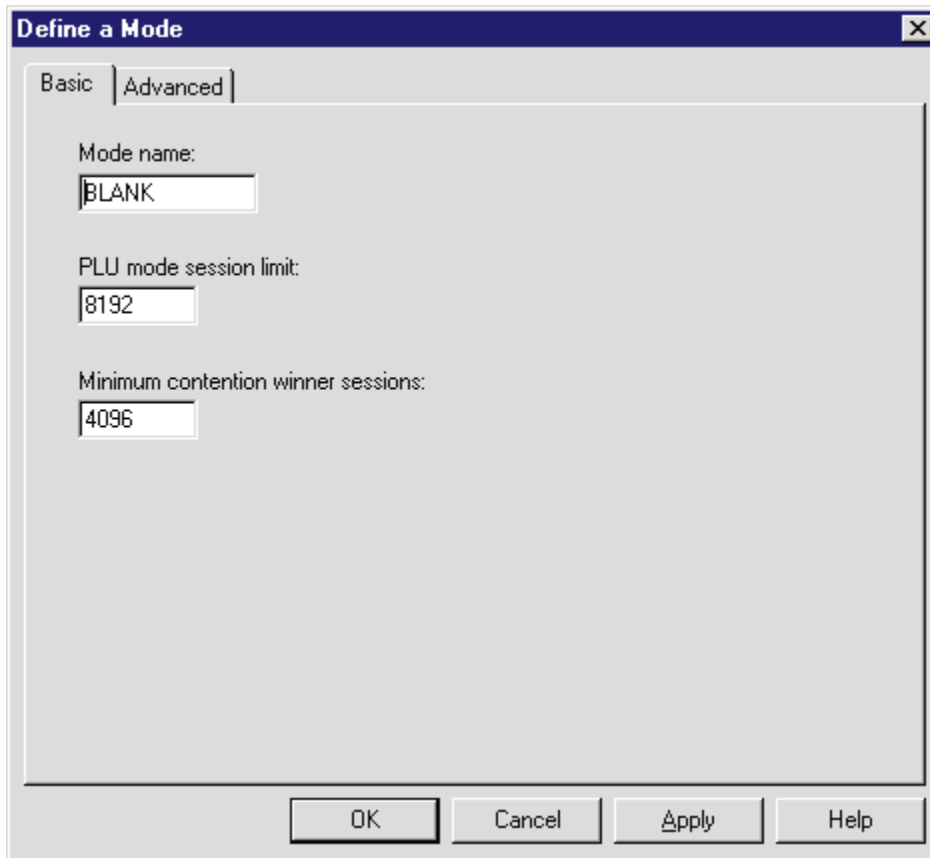


Figure 200. Define a Mode Notebook: Basic Tab (Remote 3174)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 200), supply the following values:

Mode name

Specifies the characteristics for the session that will be allocated for the conversation. The initiator uses this value. The **Mode name** in the **BLANK** profile is 8 spaces.

PLU mode session limit

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the primary logical unit (PLU) mode session limit, or maximum number of concurrently active LU-LU sessions that a particular LU can support. Take the default.

Minimum contention winner sessions

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the minimum number of sessions that a local LU using this mode can activate to win a contention with a partner. Take the default.

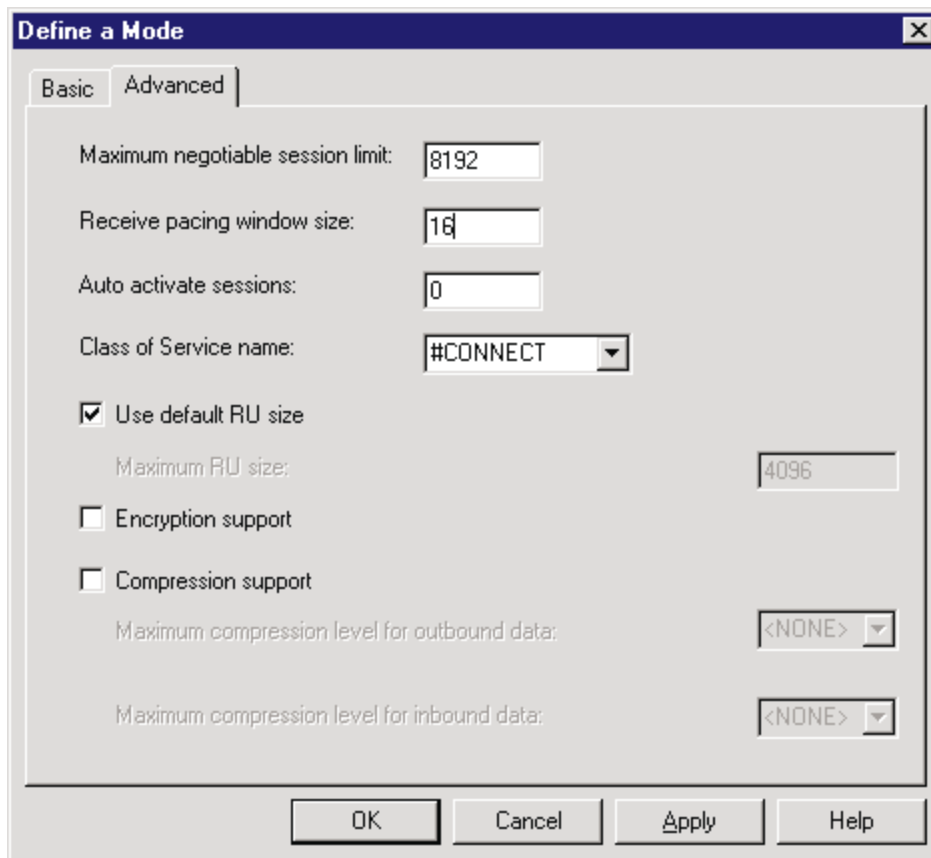


Figure 201. Define a Mode Notebook: Advanced Tab (Remote 3174)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 201), supply the following values:

Maximum negotiable session limit

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the maximum number of sessions allowed in this mode between any local logical unit (LU) and partner LU. Take the default.

Receive pacing window size

Specifies the secondary receive pacing count. The lesser of this parameter's value and the **SRCVPAC** value in the VTAM **MODEENT** statement is used. (See "Specifying the VTAM Mode Table and Entry" on page 155.) A value of 16 produces good throughput in most configurations. This parameter influences performance and can be adjusted as desired.

Auto activate sessions

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the number of parallel LU 6.2 sessions to automatically start when an initial session starts using this mode. Specify 0 so that no parallel sessions can start automatically for this application.

Class of Service name

Specifies the name of a set of transport network characteristics. Select the default: **#CONNECT** .

Use default RU size

Instructs the node to use the default maximum size for the request/response unit (RU) sent and received on the sessions. Do not select the check box.

Maximum RU size

Set this value to 1024, if it does not automatically specify that value when you remove the check from the **Use default RU size** parameter above.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Transaction Program Configuration for Remote 3174

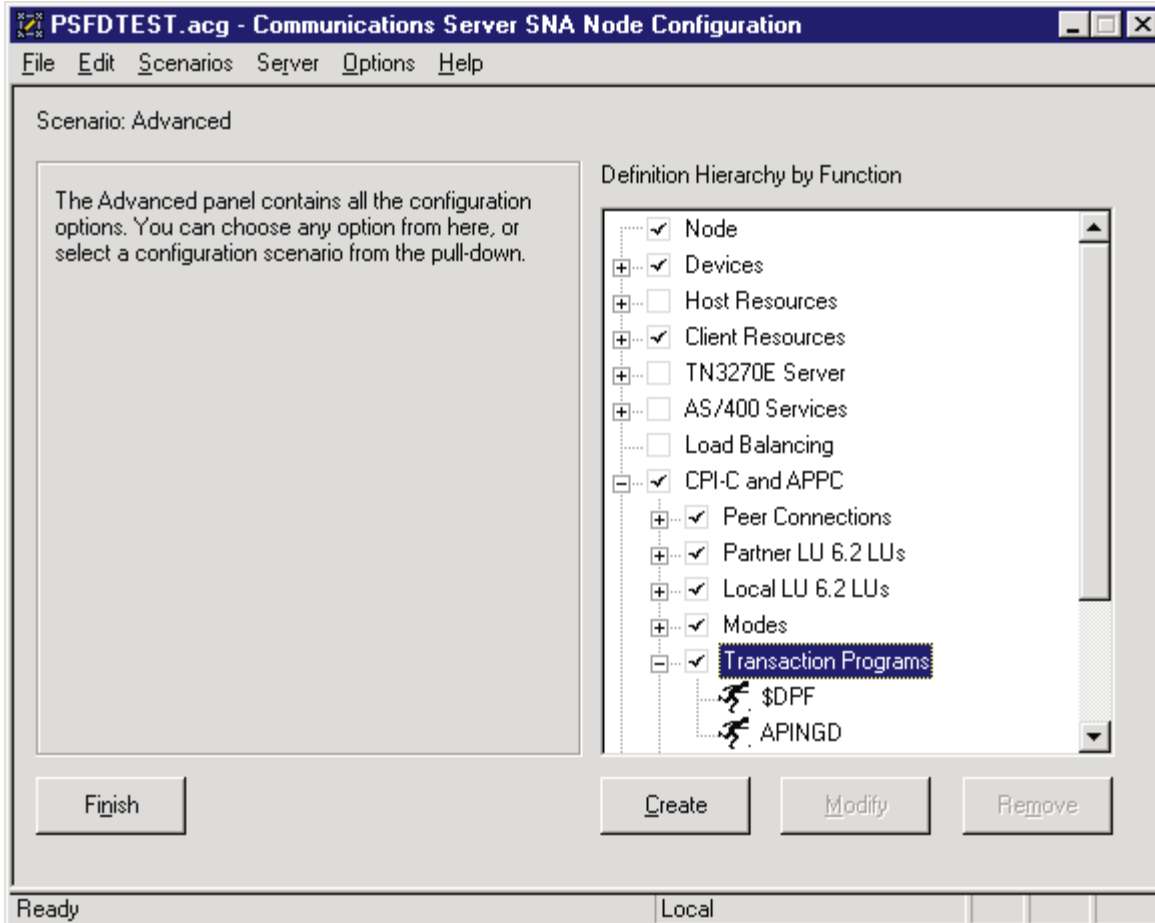


Figure 202. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Transaction Programs (Remote 3174)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 202), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Transaction Programs** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Transaction Program notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

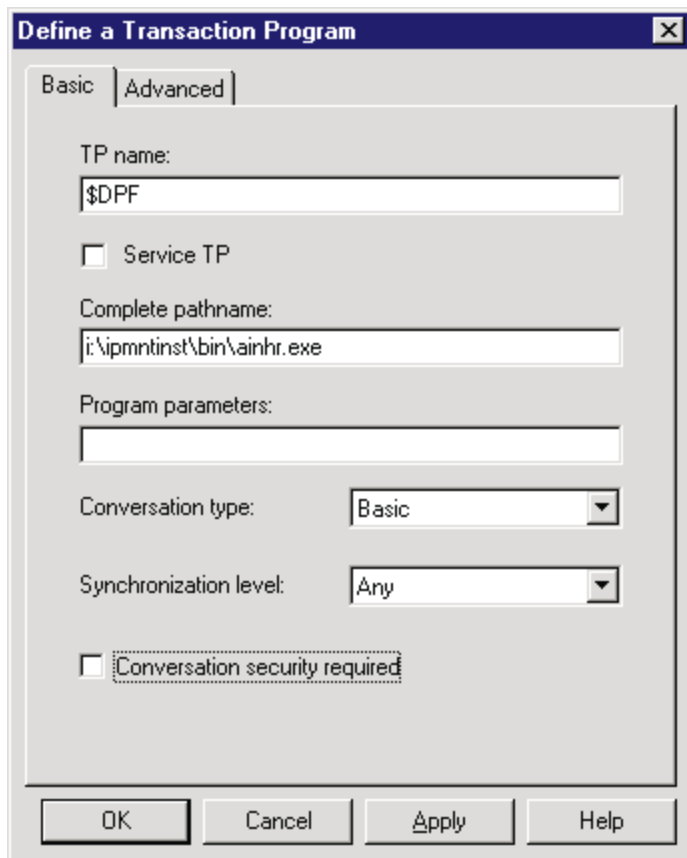


Figure 203. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Basic Tab (Remote 3174)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 203), supply the following values:

TP name

Specifies a 1- to 64-byte character string for the program that uses the advanced program-to-program communications (APPC) system to communicate with a partner application program at the partner node. Enter \$DPF. If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, note that this value changes from a binary 30F0F0F0 to a non-binary \$DPF. Ensure that the **Service TP** check box is unchecked because it indicates a non-binary value.

Complete pathname

Specifies an 1- to 255-byte character string that describes the location of the program to run. The location can include the drive, the directory, the subdirectory, and the file name. In this example, i:\ipmntinst\bin\ainhr.exe specifies the location where Infoprint Manager for NT is installed on your system.

Conversation type

Specifies the conversation type allowed to start the transaction programs (TPs) that use an LU 6.2 session. Select **Basic**.

Synchronization level

Specifies the level allowed on allocation requests that start the local and remote transaction programs (TPs). Select **Any**.

Conversation security required

Allows controlled access to system resources through security parameters.

If this check box is selected, conversation security information is required to start the TP. Incoming allocation requests for this TP without the conversation security information will be rejected. Do not check this box.

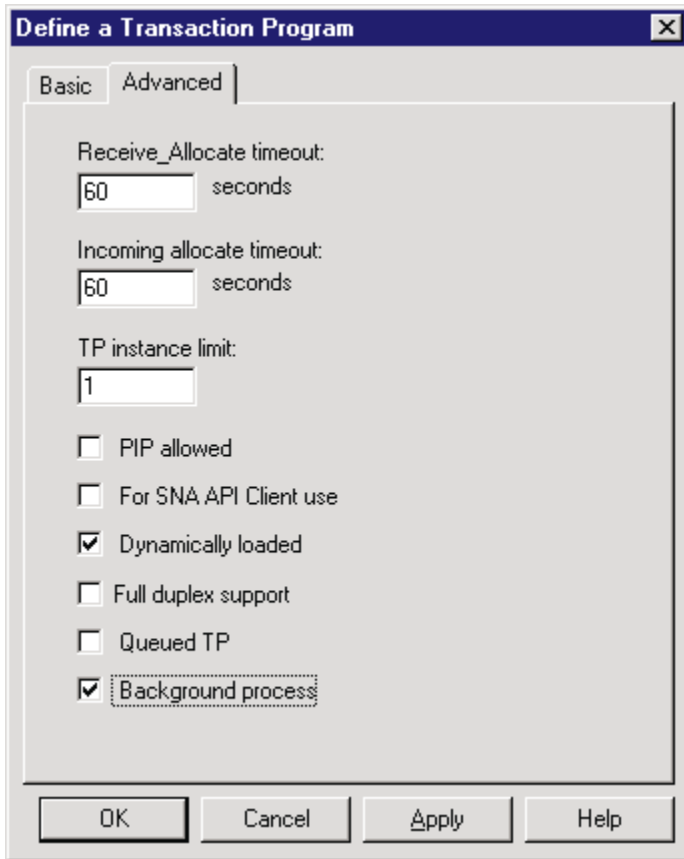


Figure 204. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Advanced Tab (Remote 3174)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 204), supply the following values:

Receive_Allocate timeout

Specifies a value between 0 and 65535 seconds that identifies the time that a **Receive_Allocate** verb will be queued while waiting for an **Attach**. Specify 60.

Incoming allocate timeout

Specifies a value between 0 and 65535 seconds that identifies the time that an incoming **Attach** will be queued waiting for a **Receive_Allocate**. Specify 60.

TP instance limit

Specifies a value between 0 and 65535 seconds that identifies the maximum number of concurrently active TP instances. Specify at least 1 (or the number of LUs that you have defined). 0 means no limit.

Dynamically loaded

Specifies whether the transaction program (TP) can be dynamically started by an allocation request received on a conversation. Select the check box to dynamically load the TP.

Background process

Specifies that the program will run in the background. Only 32-bit programs can multitask in the Windows NT environment. Select the check box to use the background process.

Note: Ensure that **Dynamically loaded** and **Background process** (the two items checked in Figure 204 on page 186) are the only items checked. If you specify other options, this transaction program will not work.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Once you have completed creating this configuration, go to “Chapter 9. Starting an IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT Configuration” on page 229.

Remote 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Work Sheets

Use the following work sheets to configure PSF Direct on both the host PSF and Infoprint Manager for NT:

- Use Table 11 to see how Communications Server for NT configuration settings relate to other configuration settings.
- Use Table 12 on page 189 to record your own Communications Server for NT values.

Remote 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Work Sheet Example

Table 11. Remote 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Work Sheet Example

Communication Server	Value	Infoprint Manager	VTAM	3174
Define the Node: Fully-qualified CP name	PSFDC5PU		PU <i>name</i> PU CPNAME	
Define the Node: Local Node ID	05D00000		PU IDBLK PU IDNUM	
Define a LAN Device: Receive window count	7			Item 941: W
Define a LAN Device: Maximum PIU size	65535			
Define a LAN Connection: Destination address	400030001001			Item 900 (local MAC address)
Host LU Definition: LU name	PSFDC5LU	LUNAME	LU <i>name</i>	
Host LU Definition: LU Model Type	Dependent LU 6.2		LU LOCADDR	
Host LU Definition: Host NAU Address	1		LU LOCADDR	
Define a Partner LU 6.2: Partner LU name	USIBMBQ.FSAES618	APPLID	ATCSTR _{xx} NETID APPL <i>name</i>	
Define a Mode: Mode name	BLANK			
Define a Mode: Receive pacing window size	16		MODEENT SRCVPAC	
Define a Mode: Maximum RU size	1024		MODEENT RUSIZES	

Remote 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Blank Work Sheet

Table 12. Remote 3174 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration Blank Work Sheet

Communication Server	Value	Infoprint Manager	VTAM	3174
Define the Node: Fully-qualified CP name			PU <i>name</i> PU CPNAME	
Define the Node: Local Node ID			PU IDBLK PU IDNUM	
Define a LAN Device: Receive window count				Item 941: W
Define a LAN Device: Maximum PIU size				
Define a LAN Connection: Destination address				Item 900 (local MAC address)
Host LU Definition: LU name		LUNAME	LU <i>name</i>	
Host LU Definition: LU Model Type			LU LOCADDR	
Host LU Definition: Host NAU Address			LU LOCADDR	
Define a Partner LU 6.2: Partner LU name		APPLID	ATCSTRxx NETID APPL <i>name</i>	
Define a Mode: Mode name				
Define a Mode: Receive pacing window size			MODEENT SRCVPAC	
Define a Mode: Maximum RU size			MODEENT RUSIZES	

Chapter 8. Local or Remote AS/400 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration

Figure 205 shows a local or remote AS/400 token-ring gateway configuration.

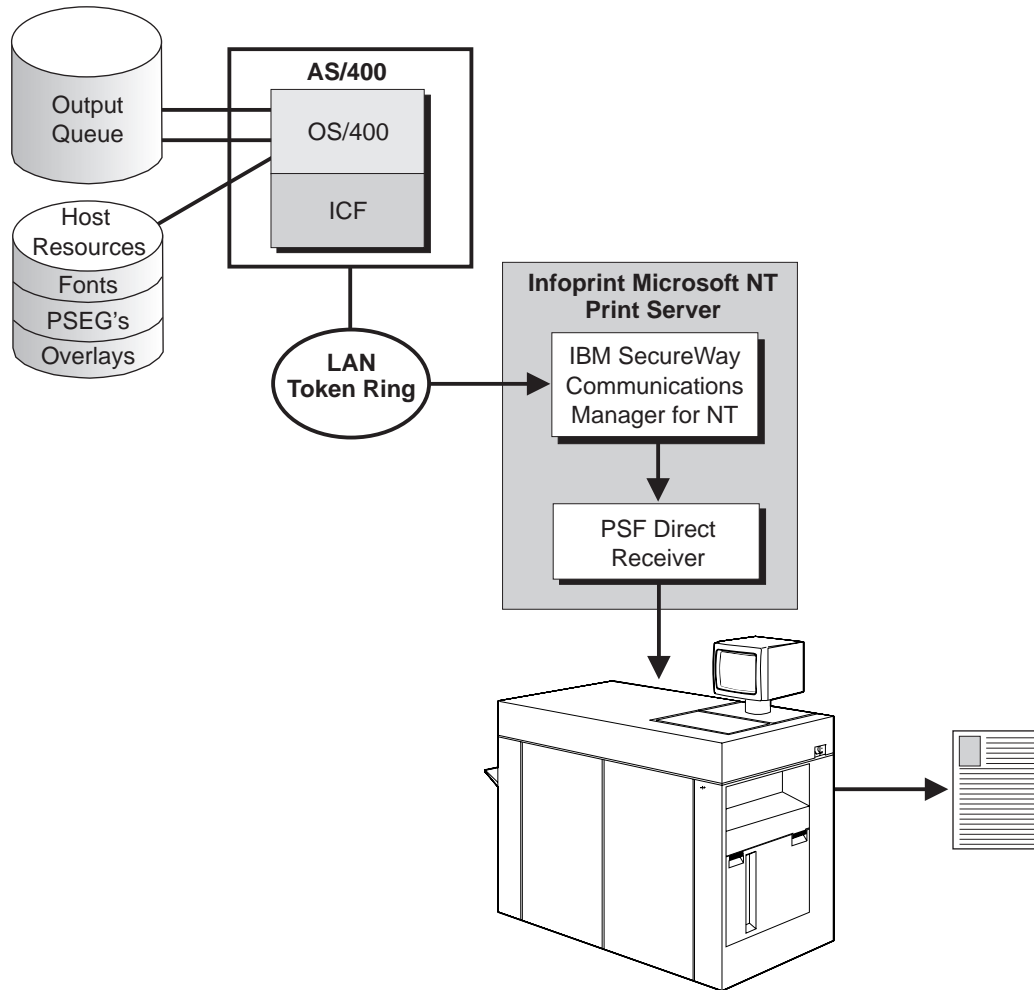


Figure 205. Local or Remote AS/400 Token-Ring Gateway Configuration

This chapter describes how to create a local or remote AS/400 token-ring gateway configuration. It contains guidelines and examples for the following tasks:

- "AS/400 Host Configuration" on page 192
 - "AS/400 Line Descriptions" on page 192
 - "Advanced Program-to-Program Communications (APPC) Controller Descriptions" on page 193
 - "Host Printer Device Description" on page 195
- "Specifying Communications Server for NT Configuration Profiles" on page 196
 - "Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles" on page 197
 - "AS/400 Node Setup" on page 198

- “AS/400 Device Configuration” on page 202
- “Enabling SNA API Clients for AS/400” on page 207
- “AS/400 Peer Connections Configuration” on page 209
- “Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for AS/400” on page 214
- “Local LU 6.2 Configuration for AS/400” on page 217
- “Mode Configuration for AS/400” on page 220
- “Transaction Program Configuration for AS/400” on page 223

Note: Before performing this configuration, review “Chapter 3. Preconfiguration Tasks” on page 13.

At the end of the chapter, there are two configuration work sheets. The first work sheet (Table 14 on page 227) is filled out with the values from the examples. The second work sheet (Table 15 on page 228) is blank for your own values.

AS/400 Host Configuration

This section provides guidelines and examples for the following tasks:

- “AS/400 Line Descriptions”
- “Advanced Program-to-Program Communications (APPC) Controller Descriptions” on page 193
- “Host Printer Device Description” on page 195

To learn more about the AS/400 operating system configuration that these commands create to enable your system to work with Print Services Facility (PSF) Direct, access these web pages:

- “AS/400 Information Starting Point”
([HTTP://PUBLIB.BOULDER.IBM.COM/pubs/html/as400/infocenter.htm](http://PUBLIB.BOULDER.IBM.COM/pubs/html/as400/infocenter.htm))
- “AS/400 Online Library V4R4 Publications”
(<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/pubs/html/as400/online/v4r4eng.htm>)

The *OS/400® Printer Device Programming V4R4* manual, SC41–5713–03, provides a great deal of general information on this topic.

To access the bookshelves directly from the “AS/400 Online Library V4R4 Publications” page:

1. Click on **Category Bookshelves for V4R4**.
2. Select option **5 (Host Communications)**.

To search AS/400 documentation from the “AS/400 Online Library V4R4 Publications” page, select **Search or view all V4R4 books, in English**.

AS/400 Line Descriptions

To create a dedicated line for your AS/400, enter the following command on your AS/400 Operating System:

```
CRTLINTRN LIND(line_name) RSRNAME(resource_name)
```

This command creates output similar to Figure 206 on page 193.

```

5769SS1 V4R4M0 990521
Line description . . . . . : LIND          TRLANAS44
Option . . . . . : OPTION          *ALL
Category of line . . . . . :              *TRLAN
Resource name. . . . . : RSRcname     CMN10
Online at IPL. . . . . : ONLINE       *YES
Vary on wait . . . . . : VRYWAIT     *NOWAIT
Network controller . . . . . : NETCTL   TRLANNET
Maximum controllers. . . . . : MAXCTL   256
Line speed . . . . . : LINESPEED     16M
Duplex . . . . . : DUPLEX            *HALF
Maximum frame size . . . . . : MAXFRAME 16388
LEC frame size . . . . . : LECFRAME
Activate LAN manager . . . . . : ACTLANMGR *YES
TRLAN manager logging level. . . . . : TRNLOGLVL *OFF
Current logging level. . . . . :          *OFF
TRLAN manager mode . . . . . : TRNMGRMODE *OBSERVING
Log configuration changes. . . . . : LOGCFGCHG *LOG
Token-ring inform of beacon. . . . . : TRNINFCBN *YES
Local adapter address. . . . . : ADPTADR  400050103006
Exchange identifier. . . . . : EXCHID   056E0102
Early token release. . . . . : ELYTKNRLS *YES
Error threshold level. . . . . : THRESHOLD *OFF
Message queue. . . . . : MSGQ         *SYSVAL
Current message queue. . . . . : QSYSOPR
Library. . . . . : QSYS

-----Active Switched Controllers-----
TRBLDAS41 TRBLDAS45 TRBLDAS51 TRBLDALT TRVMLAB TRBLDAS42 TRBLDAS37
--Source Service Access Points--  --Source Service Access Points--
SSAP  Maximum Frame Type          SSAP  Maximum Frame Type
04    *MAXFRAME   *SNA             AA    *MAXFRAME   *NONSNA
12    *MAXFRAME   *NONSNA          C8    *MAXFRAME   *HPR
Link speed . . . . . : LINKSPEED     16M
Cost/connect time. . . . . : COSTCNN    0
Cost/byte. . . . . : COSTBYTE        0
Security for line. . . . . : SECURITY   *NONSECURE
Propagation delay. . . . . : PRPDLY    *LAN
User-defined 1 . . . . . : USRDEF1   128
User-defined 2 . . . . . : USRDEF2   128
User-defined 3 . . . . . : USRDEF3   128
Autocreate controller. . . . . : AUTOCRTCTL *NO
Recovery limits. . . . . : CMNRCYLMT
Count limit. . . . . :                2
Time interval . . . . . :                5
Functional address . . . . . :              FCNADR
Line description . . . . . : LIND          TRLANAS44
Option . . . . . : OPTION          *ALL
Category of line . . . . . :              *TRLAN

```

Figure 206. AS/400 Line Description Example

Advanced Program-to-Program Communications (APPC) Controller Descriptions

To create an APPC controller description for your AS/400 PSF Direct configuration, enter the following command on your AS/400 Operating System:

```

CRTCTLAPPC CTLD(controller_name) LINKTYPE(*LAN) SWTLINLST(line_name)
  RMTCPNAME(nt_cp_name) RMTNETID (nt_id)(EXCHID(block_id+xid)
  ADPTADR(pc_nic_address0)

```

This command creates output similar to Figure 207 on page 194.

```

5769SS1 V4R4M0 990521
Controller description . . . . . : CTLD      NTTEST
Option . . . . . : OPTION    *ALL
Category of controller . . . . . :          *APPC
Link type. . . . . : LINKTYPE  *LAN
Online at IPL. . . . . : ONLINE   *NO
Active switched line . . . . . :          TRLANAS44
Character code . . . . . : CODE    *EBCDIC
Maximum frame size . . . . . : MAXFRAME 16393
Current maximum frame size . . . . . :          3808
Remote network identifier. . . . . : RMTNETID USIBMBQ
Remote control point . . . . . : RMTCPNAME NT2
Exchange identifier. . . . . : EXCHID  05DC021C
Initial connection . . . . . : INLCNN  *DIAL
Dial initiation. . . . . : DIALINIT  *LINKTYPE
Switched disconnect. . . . . : SWTDSC  *YES
Data link role . . . . . : ROLE     *NEG
LAN remote adapter address . . . . . : ADPTADR 400059550067
LAN DSAP . . . . . : DSAP      04
LAN SSAP . . . . . : SSAP      04
Autocreate device. . . . . : AUTOCRTDEV *ALL
System job . . . . . :          QCMNARB03
Message queue. . . . . : MSGQ     *SYSVAL
Current message queue. . . . . : QSYSOPR
Library. . . . . : QSYS
Text . . . . . : TEXT      *BLANK
Switched line list . . . . . : SWTLINLST TRLANAS44

```

Figure 207. APPC Controller Description Example (AS/400) (Part 1 of 2)


```

-----Switched Lines-----
Attached devices . . . . . : DEV
-----Attached Devices-----
APPN-capable . . . . . : APPN      *YES
APPN CP session support. . . . . : CPSSN    *YES
APPN/HPR capable . . . . . : HPR
Path switching . . . . . : HPRTHSWT *NO
Branch extender role . . . . . : BEXROLE  *NETNODE
Remote APPN node type. . . . . : NODETYPE *ENDNODE
APPN transmission group number . . : TMSGRPNBR 1
APPN minimum switched status . . . : MINSWTSTS *VRYONPND
Autodelete device. . . . . : AUTODLTDEV 1440
User-defined 1 . . . . . : USRDFN1  *LIND
User-defined 2 . . . . . : USRDFN2  *LIND
User-defined 3 . . . . . : USRDFN3  *LIND
Model controller description . . . : MDLCTL    *NO
Control owner. . . . . : CTLOWN   *USER
Disconnect timer . . . . . : DSCTMR
Minimum connect timer. . . . . :          170
Disconnection delay timer. . . . . :          30
LAN frame retry. . . . . : LANFRMRTY 10
LAN connection retry . . . . . : LANCNNRTY 10
-----Display Controller Description-----
Controller description . . . . . : CTLD      NTTEST
Option . . . . . : OPTION    *ALL
Category of controller . . . . . :          *APPC
LAN response timer . . . . . : LANRSPTMR 30
LAN connection timer . . . . . : LANCNTMR  70
LAN acknowledgement timer. . . . . : LANACKTMR 1
LAN inactivity timer . . . . . : LANINACTMR 100
LAN acknowledgement frequency. . . : LANACKFRQ 7
LAN max outstanding frames . . . . : LANMAXOUT 7
LAN access priority. . . . . : LANACCPTY 0
LAN window step. . . . . : LANWDWSTP *NONE
Recovery limits. . . . . : CMNRCYLMT
Count limit. . . . . :          2
Time interval. . . . . :          5

```

Figure 207. APPC Controller Description Example (AS/400) (Part 2 of 2)

Host Printer Device Description

To create a host printer definition for your AS/400 PSF Direct configuration, enter the following command on your AS/400 Operating System:

```

CRTDEVPRT DEVD(prtr_devd) DEVCLS(*RMT) TYPE(*IPDS) MODEL(0) AFP(*YES)
AFPATTACH(*APPC) FONT(font_id) RMTLOCNAME(pc_network_name.pc_luname)

```

This command creates output similar to Figure 208 on page 196.

```

5769SS1 V4R4M0 990521
Device description . . . . . : DEVD      NTTEST
Option . . . . . : OPTION    *ALL
Category of device . . . . . :          *PRT
Automatically created. . . . . :          NO
Device class . . . . . : DEVCLS   *RMT
Device type. . . . . : TYPE     *IPDS
Device model . . . . . : MODEL    0
Advanced function printing . . . . . : AFP      *YES
AFP attachment . . . . . : AFPATTACH *APPC
Online at IPL. . . . . : ONLINE   *NO
Font . . . . . :
Font identifier . . . . . :          011
Point size . . . . . :          *NONE
Form feed. . . . . : FORMFEED  *AUTOCUT
Separator drawer . . . . . : SEPDRAWER *FILE
Separator program. . . . . : SEPPGM  *NONE
Library. . . . . :
Printer error message. . . . . : PRTERMSG *INQ
Message queue. . . . . : MSGQ     QSYSOPR
Library. . . . . :          *LIBL
Current message queue. . . . . :          QSYSOPR
Library. . . . . : QSYS
Image configuration. . . . . : IMGCFG  *NONE
Maximum pending requests . . . . . : MAXPNDRQS 6
Print while converting . . . . . : PRTCVT  *YES
Form definition. . . . . : FORMDF   F1C10110
Library . . . . . :          *LIBL
Character identifier . . . . . : CHRID   *SYSVAL
Remote location. . . . . : RMTLOCNAME AS4TEST
Name or address. . . . . :          USIBMBQ.AS4TEST
Local location . . . . . : LCLLOCNAME *NETATR
Mode . . . . . : MODE        QSPWTR
User-defined object. . . . . : USRDFNOBJ *NONE
Object type. . . . . :          *NONE
Data transform program . . . . . : USRDATFM *NONE
User-defined driver program. . . . . : USRDRVPGM *NONE
Dependent location name. . . . . : DEPLOCMAME *NONE
Allocated to . . . . . :
Job name . . . . . : NTTEST
User . . . . . : QSPLJOB
Number . . . . . :          055699
Text . . . . . : TEXT       Infoprint/NT
User-defined options . . . . . : USRDFNOPT

```

Figure 208. Host Printer Device Description Example (AS/400)

Specifying Communications Server for NT Configuration Profiles

This section contains instructions and guidelines for configuring the Communications Server for NT profiles. It includes the following tasks:

- “Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles” on page 197
- “AS/400 Node Setup” on page 198
- “AS/400 Device Configuration” on page 202
- “Enabling SNA API Clients for AS/400” on page 207
- “AS/400 Peer Connections Configuration” on page 209
- “Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for AS/400” on page 214
- “Local LU 6.2 Configuration for AS/400” on page 217
- “Mode Configuration for AS/400” on page 220

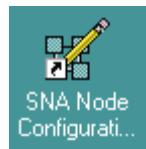
- “Transaction Program Configuration for AS/400” on page 223

Accessing the Communications Server for NT Profiles

Use the following procedure to access the IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT applications that are described in “What is IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT?” on page 2.

Note that this procedure assumes that you have dragged the icons for **SNA Node Configuration** and **SNA Node Operations** to your desktop after they were created at installation.

1. From your NT desktop view, double-click the **SNA Node Configuration** icon that resides on your desktop:



2. At the Welcome to Communications Server Configuration! pop-up window, select the **New** button for a new configuration) and click the **Next>** button. Communications Server creates an *xxx.acg* file (where *xxx* represents the file name you select in this window. This *xxx.acg* file resides in the C:\IBMCS\private directory, where C is the drive where you installed IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT. For users migrating from PSF Direct on an OS/2 operating system, this *xxx.acg* file is the equivalent of the OS/2 Communications Manager Communications Server *xxx.ndf* file.

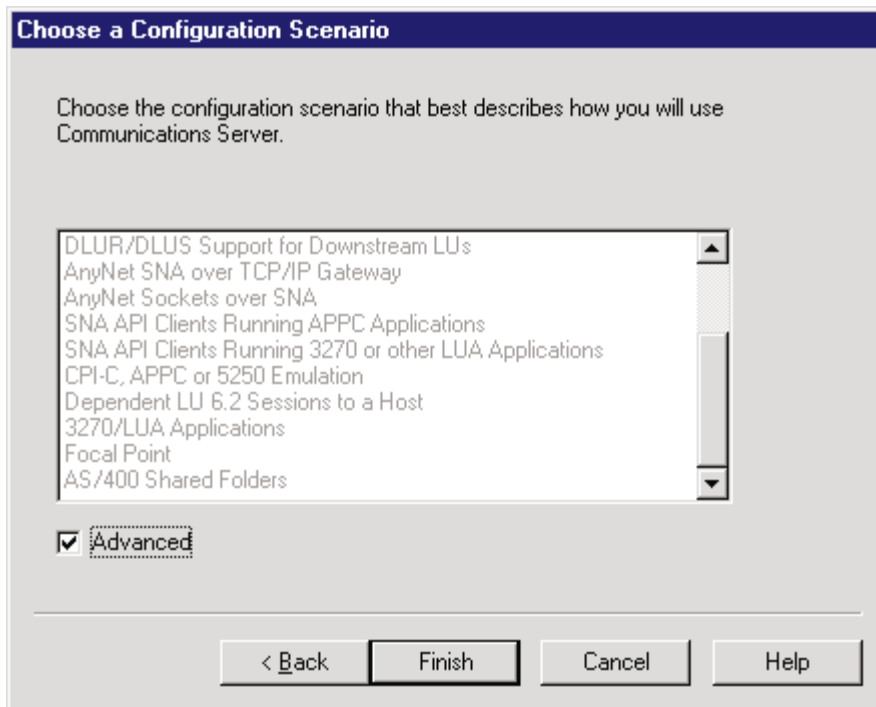


Figure 209. Choose a Configuration Scenario Window (AS/400)

3. In the Choose a Configuration Scenario window (Figure 209), check the **Advanced** box, which causes the display to turn gray. Click the **Finish** button.

- From the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 210), you are ready to begin configuring your system for PSF Direct.

AS/400 Node Setup

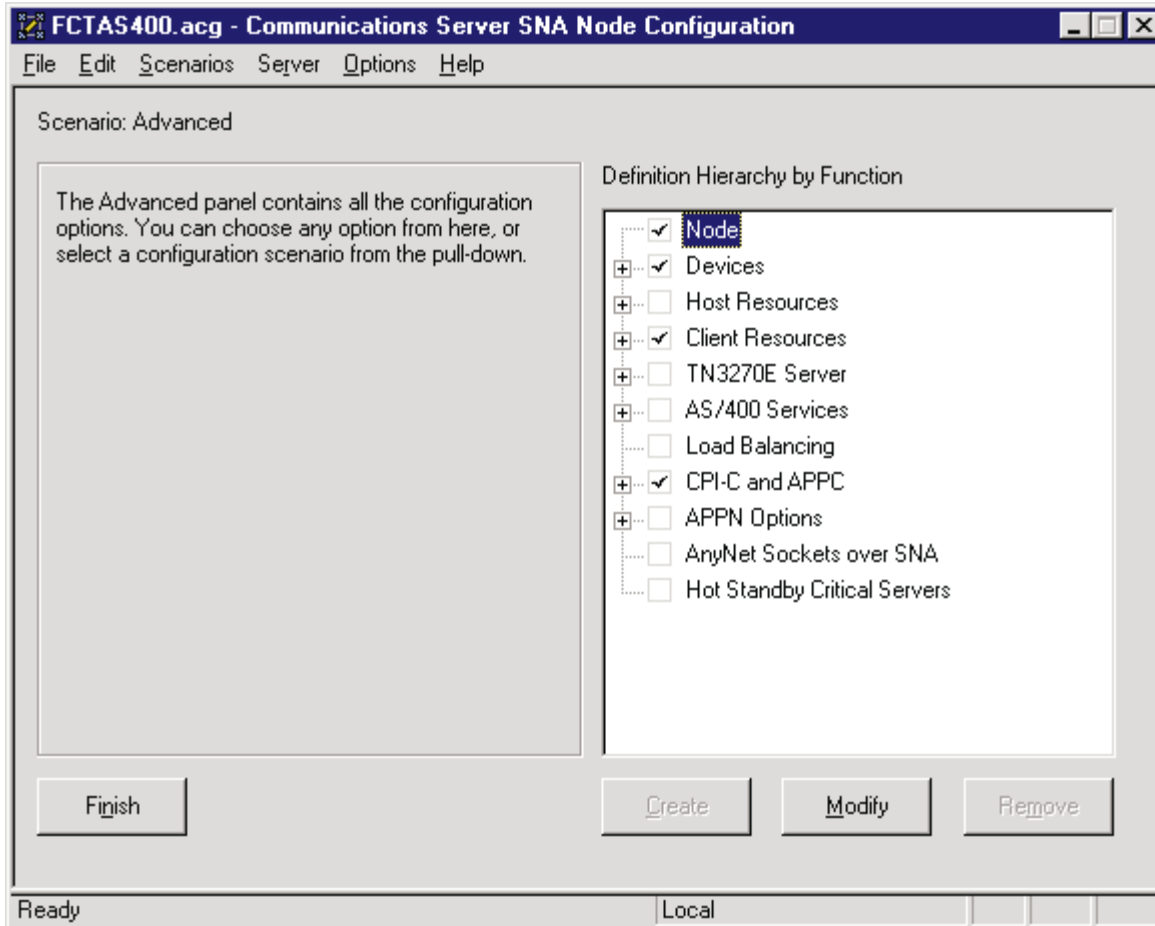


Figure 210. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Node (AS/400)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 210), right-click the **Node** box and select the **Create** option. The Define the Node notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

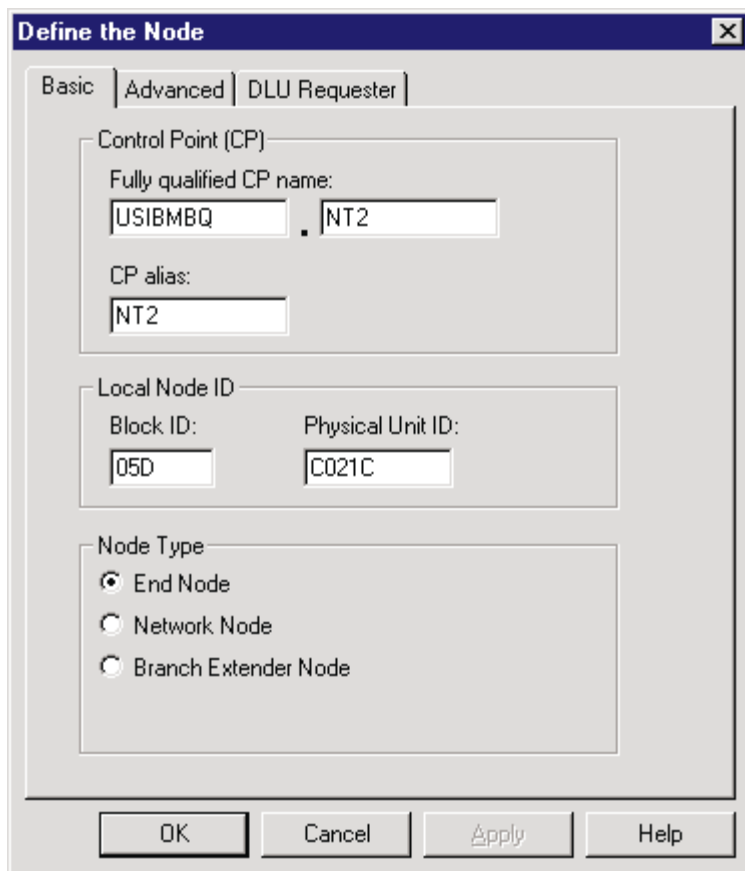


Figure 211. Define the Node Notebook: Basic Tab (AS/400)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 211), specify values for the following parameters:

Fully qualified Control Point (CP) name

Specifies the name of the component that manages the resources of that node.

CP alias

Specifies an alternative name for the CP. Local applications can use this name, instead of the **Fully qualified Control Point (CP) name**, to refer to the local CP.

Local Node ID

Specifies both the **Block ID** and the **Physical Unit ID**. The **Block ID** is a 3-digit hexadecimal string that identifies the product type in an SNA network. The **Physical Unit ID** is a 5-digit hexadecimal string that identifies a physical unit (PU).

The OS/400 operating system uses this identifier to establish a link with this workstation when attached to a token-ring network. The value must be unique within the network and must match the AS/400 APPC controller description **EXCHID** parameter.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system, **Local Node ID** matches the **XID Node ID** parameter.

Node Type

Specifies the type of node. Take the default value, **End node**.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system, **Node Type** matches the **Control Point Type** parameter.

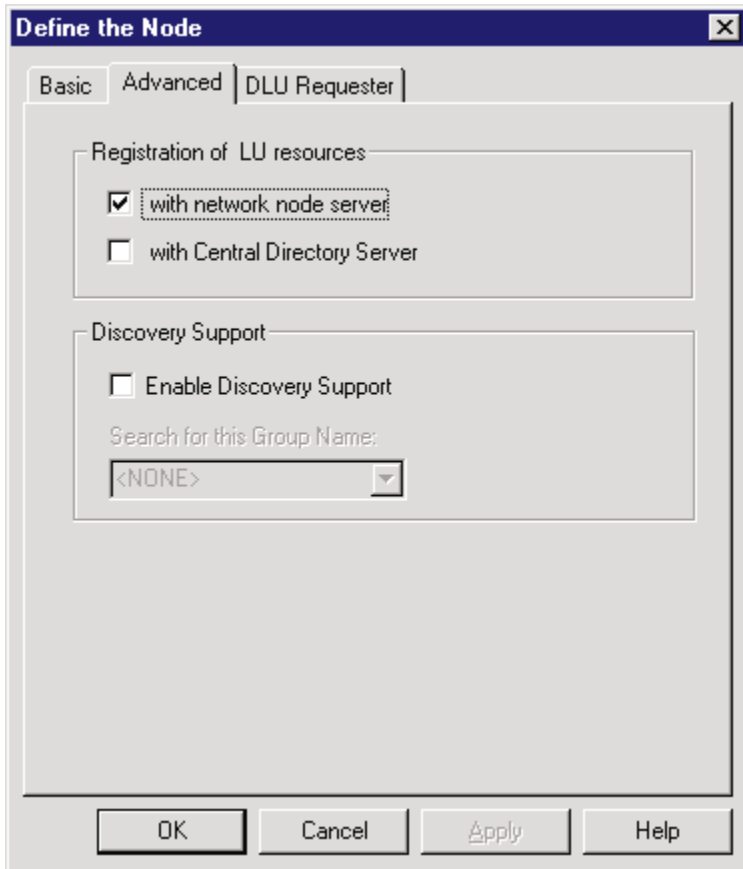


Figure 212. Define the Node Notebook: Advanced Tab (AS/400)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 212), specify values for the following parameters:

Registration of LU resources

Specifies that directory information about the local logical units (LUs) 6.2 is sent to the server. As the example shows, check both the **Network node server** and the **Central Directory Server**.

Discovery Support

Specifies a LAN address resolution protocol that can be used to find another node that matches given search values. Adjust the search parameter to search for APPN network nodes, nodes that provide SNA boundary function, or AS/400s. Select the check box to enable discovery support.

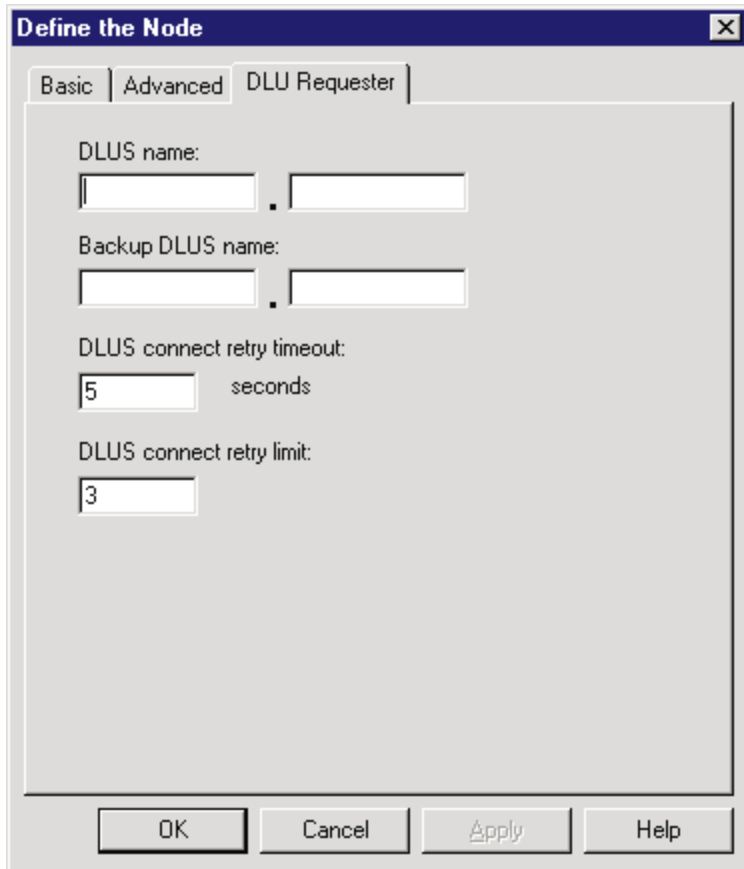


Figure 213. Define the Node Notebook: DLU Requester Tab (AS/400)

On the **DLU Requester** tab (Figure 213), accept the default values for the following parameters:

DLUS connect retry timeout

Specifies the time between attempts to reconnect a dependent logical unit server (DLUS). This parameter is based on the **DLUS connect retry limit** parameter. Take the default of 5.

DLUS connect retry limit

Specifies the maximum number of attempts to reconnect a DLUS without receiving an acknowledgment in the time set by the **DLUS connect retry timeout** parameter. Take the default of 3.

Click **OK** to save these configuration settings.

AS/400 Device Configuration

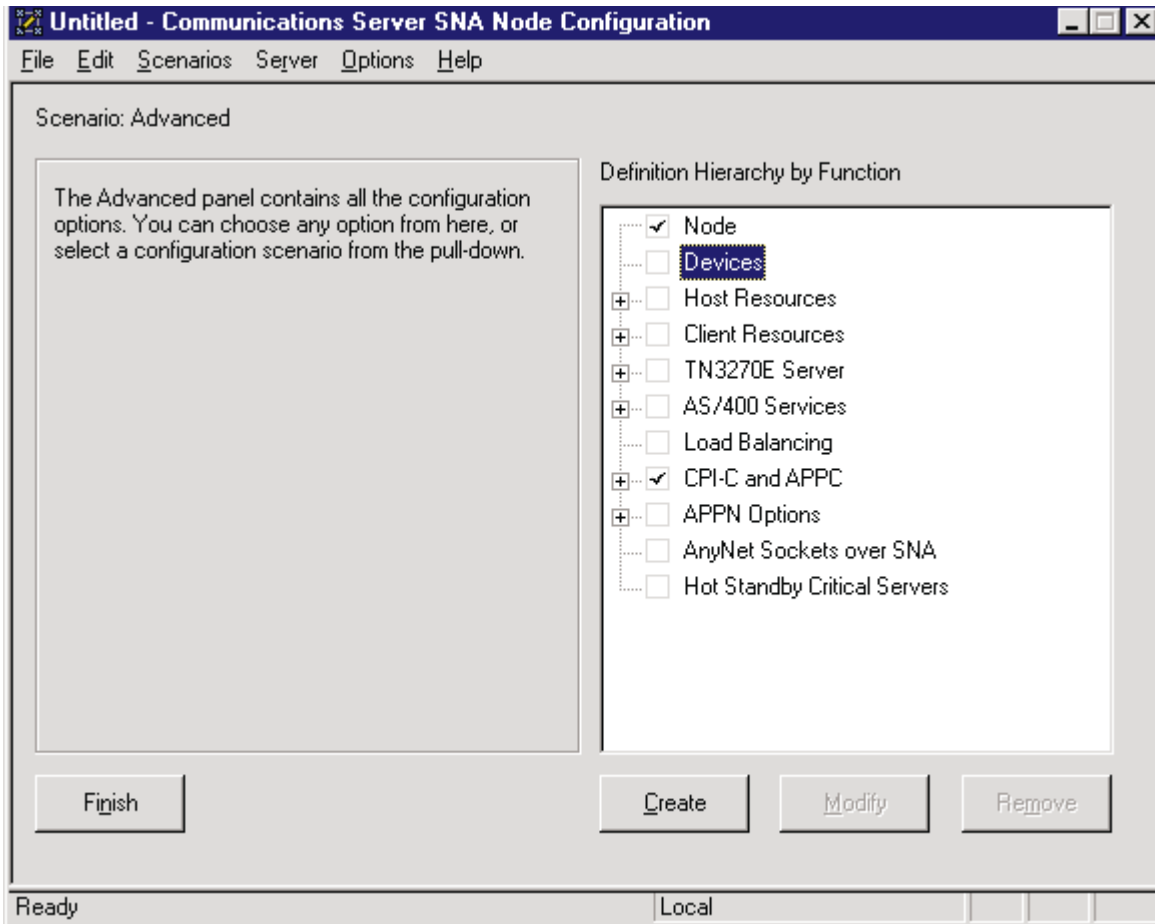


Figure 214. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Devices (AS/400)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 214), right-click the **Devices** box and select the **Create** option. The Device Type pop-up notebook (Figure 215) opens.

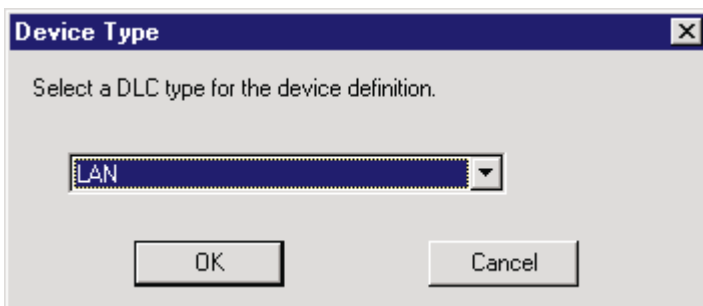


Figure 215. Device Type Window (AS/400)

Select **LAN** as your data link control (DLC) type. A DLC is a set of rules that nodes on a data link (such as an SDLC link or a token ring) use to accomplish an orderly exchange of information.

Click **OK** to save this configuration setting.

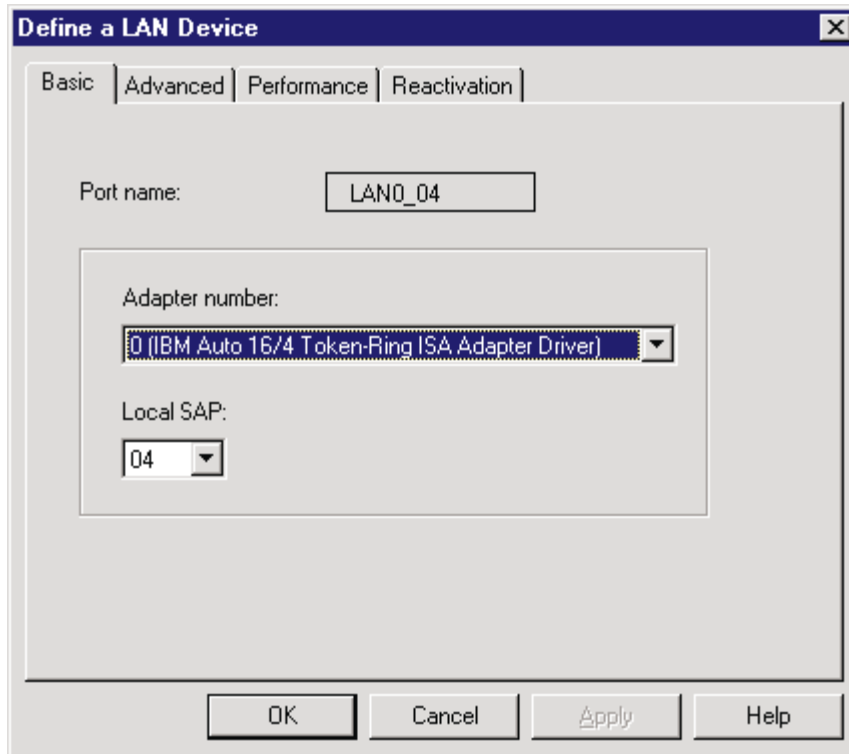


Figure 216. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Basic Tab (AS/400)

On the **Basic** tab of the Define a LAN Device notebook (Figure 216), supply the following values:

Port name

Specifies the port name of the physical connection to the link hardware. This value consists of the word **LAN**, the adapter number, and the local SAP number, with an underscore between the adapter number and the local SAP number. Accept the value that is displayed.

Adapter number

Specifies a value from 0 to 7 that uniquely identifies this adapter. You may have both token-ring and ethernet adapters defined at your installation. Ensure that you select the proper token-ring LAN adapter.

Local SAP

Specifies the local service access point (SAP) number of the local port as a value from 04 through FC. Note that this number must be a multiple of four. Take the default of 04.

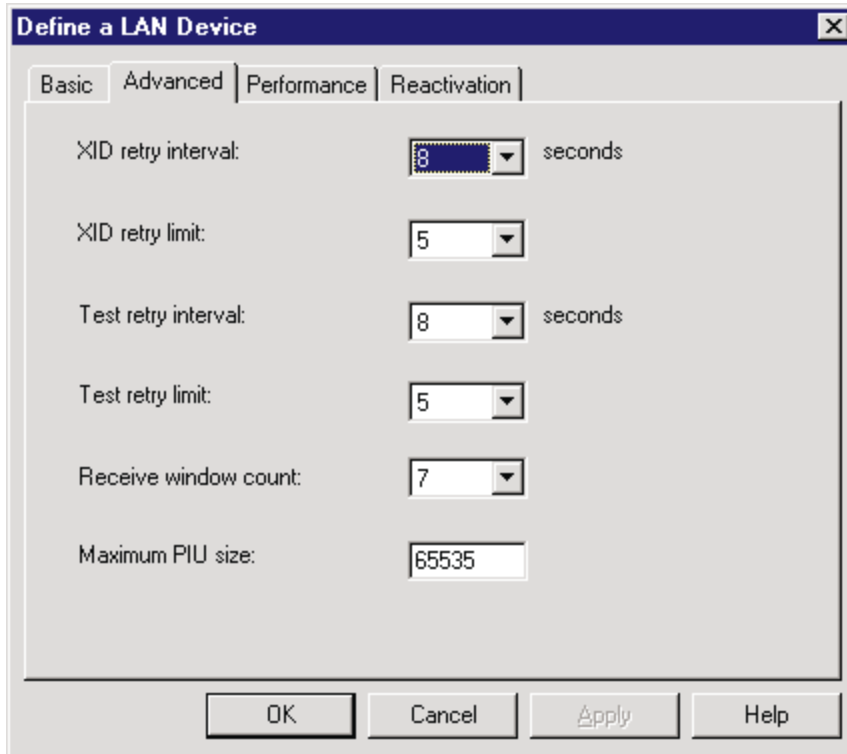


Figure 217. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Advanced Tab (AS/400)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 217), supply the following values:

XID retry interval

Specifies the time the link station waits for a reply to a previous **XID** command before resending that command. Specify 8. If the link station is a calling link station, this value causes it to try to establish a link connection with the communication controller every 8 seconds, until a link connection can be established.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, this parameter replaces the **Response Timeout** parameter from the **Token-Ring SNA DLC** profile.

XID retry limit

Specifies the maximum number of times an **XID** command will be retransmitted before Communications Server for NT presumes that the link is broken and stops retrying. Specify 5. The previous parameter defines the interval between the attempts.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, this parameter replaces the **XID Retransmit count** parameter from the **Token-Ring SNA DLC** profile.

Test retry interval

Specifies the time between attempts to find the adjacent link station on the LAN. This parameter is needed to establish communication with the network and does not necessarily relate to the PSF host system. The number of times an **XID** is sent is based on the configured **XID retry limit**.

Test retry limit

Specifies the number of times Communications Server attempts to find the adjacent link station on the LAN. Specify a value from 3 to 30.

Receive window count

Defines the size of the link-level window and specifies the maximum number of frames to receive before sending a link-level acknowledgement. The default **Receive window count** value is 8. You must adjust this default to produce acceptable throughput.

Maximum PIU size

Specifies a value between 99 and 65535 bytes that represents the maximum number of bytes in the data buffer that SNA sessions use for this link. If the value of the **Maximum PIU size** exceeds the frame size supported by your local device driver, the value will be reduced to match the frame size.

In this example, the screen shows a value of 65535, but the value of the **MAXFRAME** operand is 16388 in Figure 206 on page 193 and 16393 in Figure 207 on page 194. The smallest value, 16388, is used.

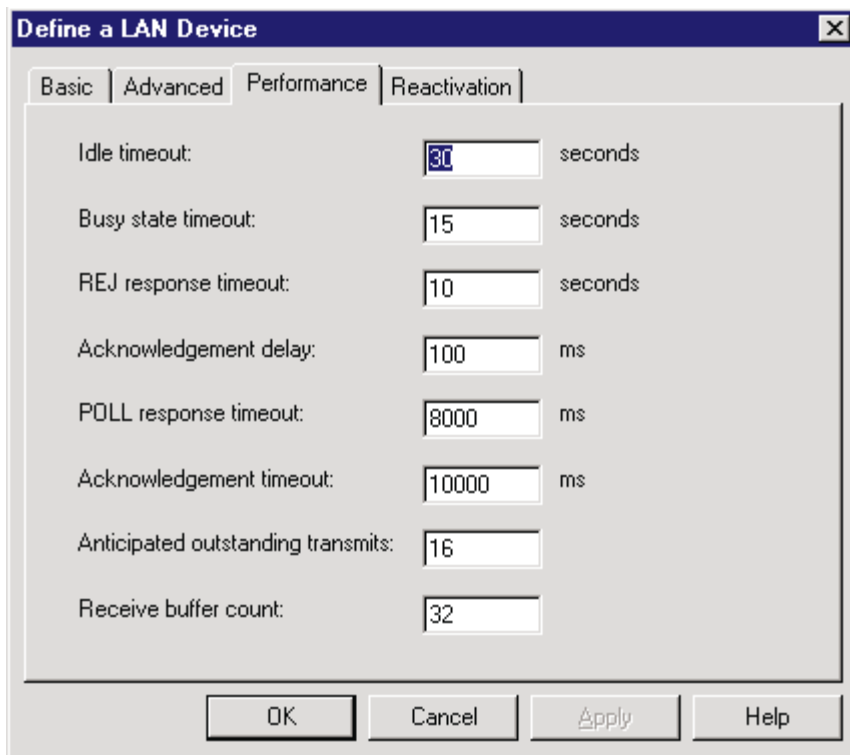


Figure 218. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Performance Tab (AS/400)

On the **Performance** tab (Figure 218), accept the default values.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, see Table 13 on page 206 for a map of the parameters on the **Performance** tab to the corresponding AIX values.

Table 13. Windows NT and AIX Parameters for LAN Device Performance (AS/400)

Windows NT Parameter	AIX Parameter
Idle timeout	Inactivity time-out
Busy state timeout	n/a
Acknowledgement delay	n/a
Acknowledgement timeout	Acknowledgement timeout
POLL response timeout	n/a
Anticipated outstanding transmits	Transmit window count
Receive buffer count	n/a

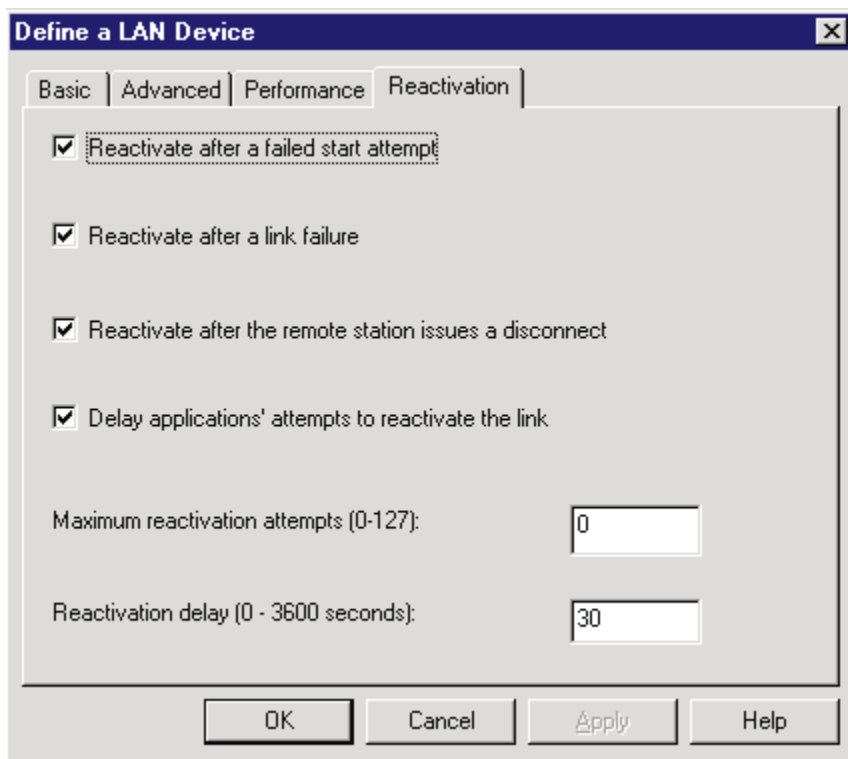


Figure 219. Define a LAN Device Notebook: Reactivation Tab (AS/400)

On the **Reactivation** tab (Figure 219), accept the default values.

Click **OK** to save these configuration settings.

Enabling SNA API Clients for AS/400

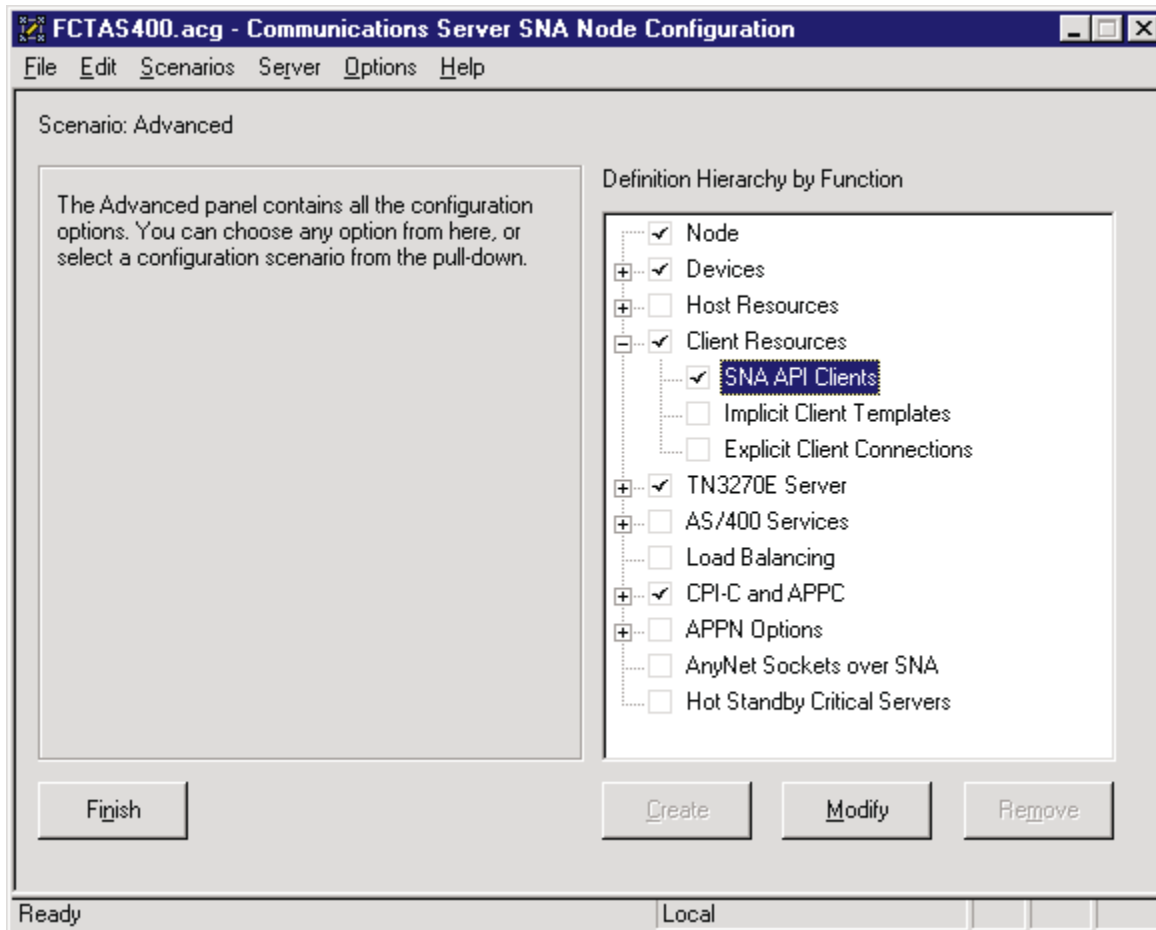


Figure 220. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: SNA API Clients (AS/400)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 220), right-click the **Client Resources** box, then the **SNA API Clients** box. The SNA Clients window opens.

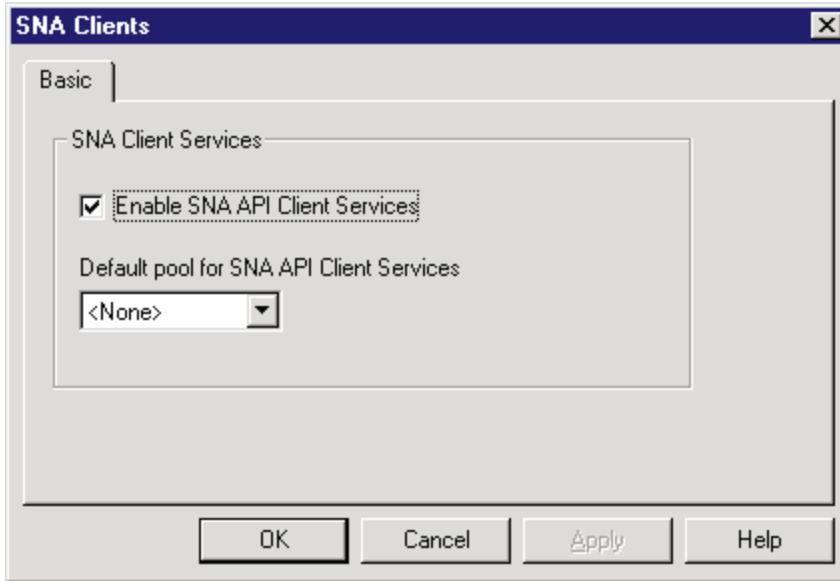


Figure 221. SNA Clients Window (AS/400)

In the SNA Clients window (Figure 221), check the **Enable SNA API Client Services** box.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

AS/400 Peer Connections Configuration

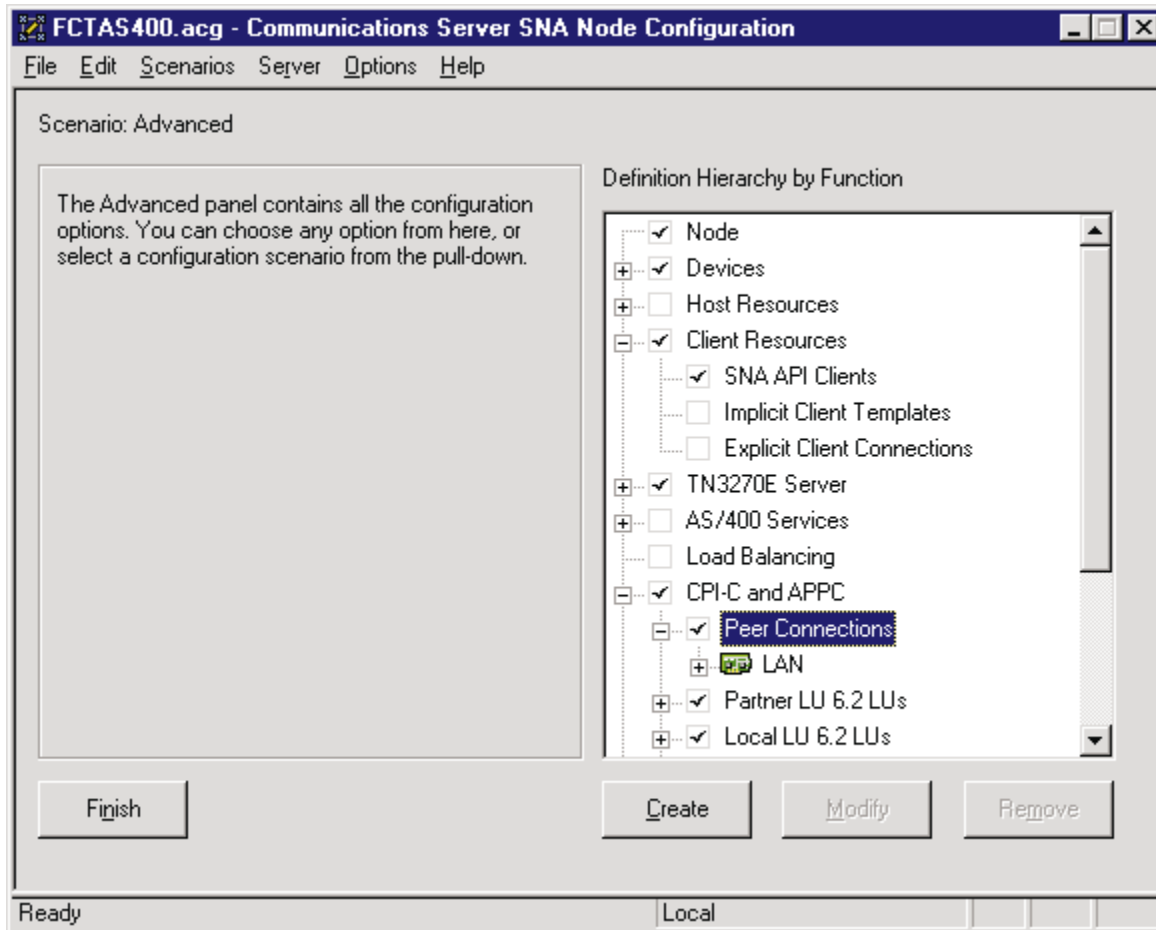


Figure 222. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Peer Connections (AS/400)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 222), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Peer Connections** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a LAN Connection notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

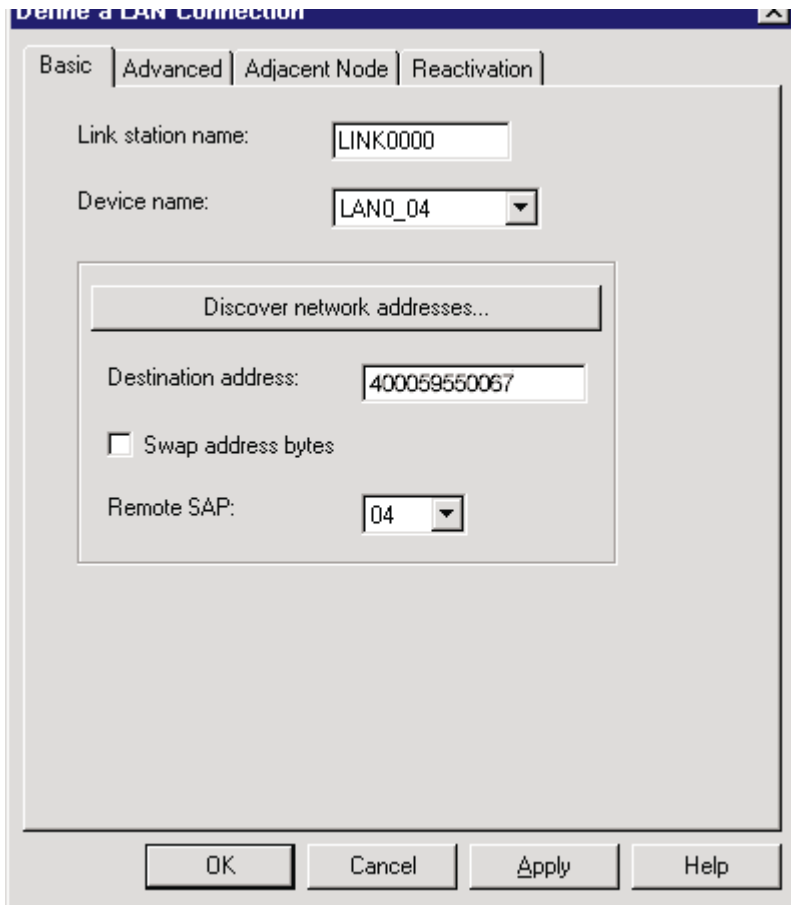


Figure 223. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Basic Tab (AS/400)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 223), supply the following values:

Link station name

Specifies a 1- to 8-byte character string that is used to identify a connection. The contents of this field will vary, depending on the number of links at your installation.

Device name

Specifies the name of the port associated with this link station. This value must match the **Port name** value specified on the **Basic** tab of the Define a LAN Device notebook (Figure 216 on page 203).

Destination address

Specifies a 12-character hexadecimal string that specifies the address to activate a connection to the destination. This value must be specified so the NT system can search for and call the PSF host program.

Swap address bytes

Check this field to bit-swap the address in the **Destination address** field. You may need to select this check box if the next link in the network is an Ethernet link. If not, you can use the default (unchecked).

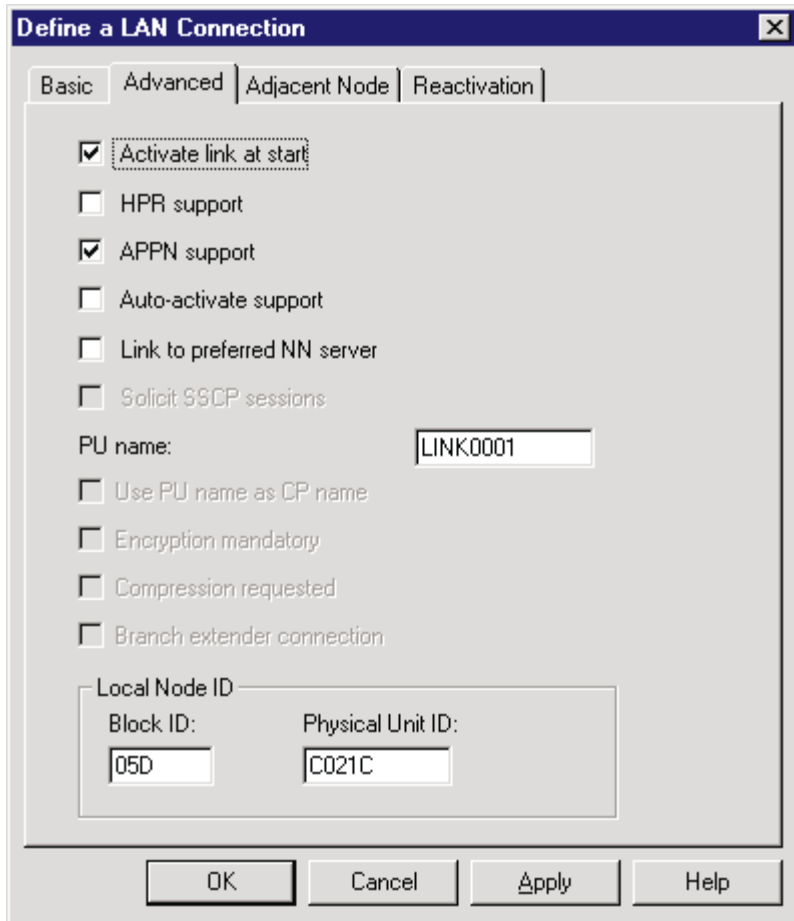


Figure 224. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Advanced Tab (AS/400)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 224), supply the following values:

Activate link at start

Specifies that you will use the link reactivation values specified in the port (device) link reactivation definition. Ensure that you select this check box.

APPN support

Specifies whether this connection supports CP-CP sessions. Select the check box to specify APPN support.

PU name

Specifies the physical unit (PU) name. This is the name of the component that manages and monitors the resources (such as attached links and adjacent link station) associated with a node. The default PU name is automatically created. You can change this definition.

Block ID

Identifies the product type in an SNA network.

Physical Unit ID

Identifies the physical unit (PU) or component that manages and monitors the resources (such as attached links and adjacent link stations) associated with a node.

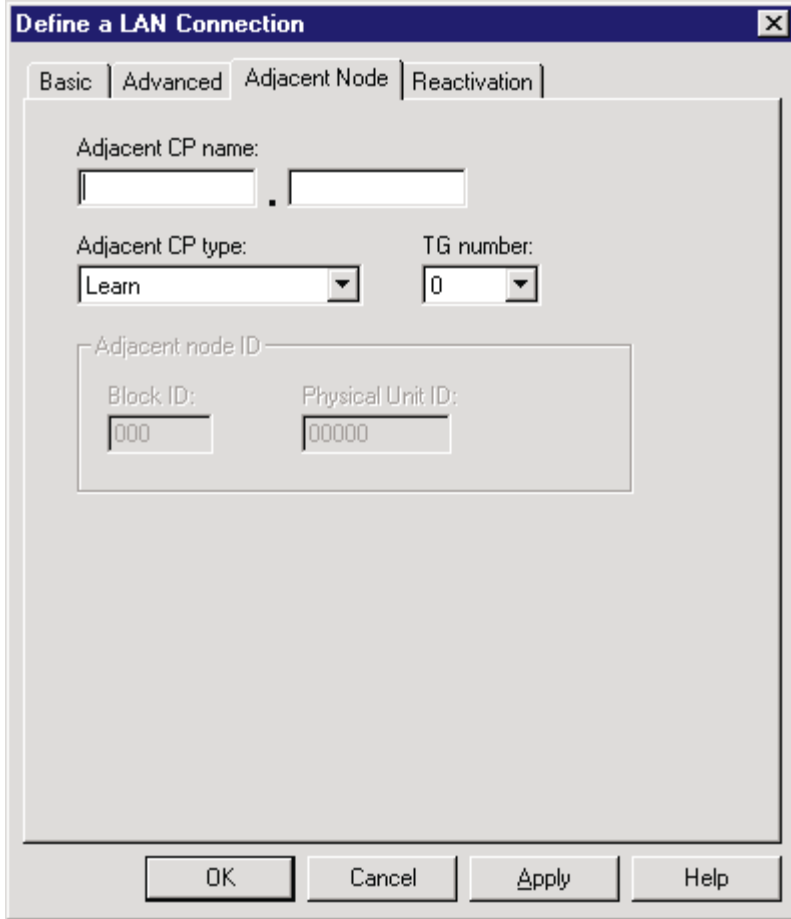


Figure 225. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Adjacent Node Tab (AS/400)

On the **Adjacent Node** tab (Figure 225), accept the default values.

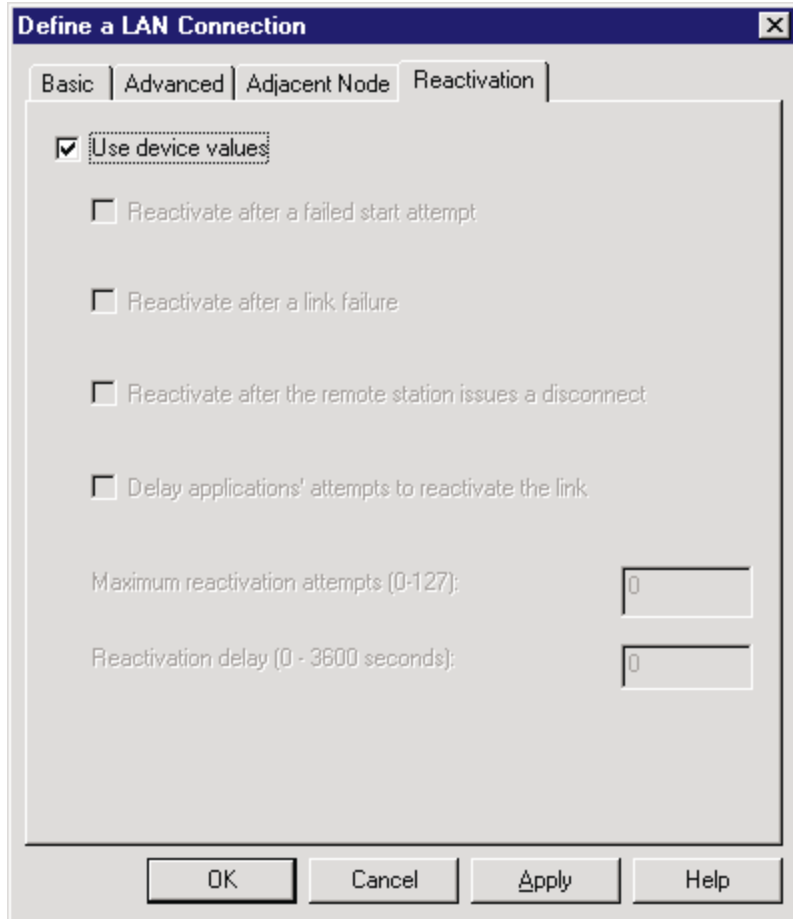


Figure 226. Define a LAN Connection Notebook: Reactivation Tab (AS/400)

On the **Reactivation** tab (Figure 226), accept the default values.

Note that after you select **OK**, a pop-up window appears asking:
Do you want to automatically route all APPC sessions over this connection?

You must reply yes before the configuration is accepted.

Partner LU 6.2 Configuration for AS/400

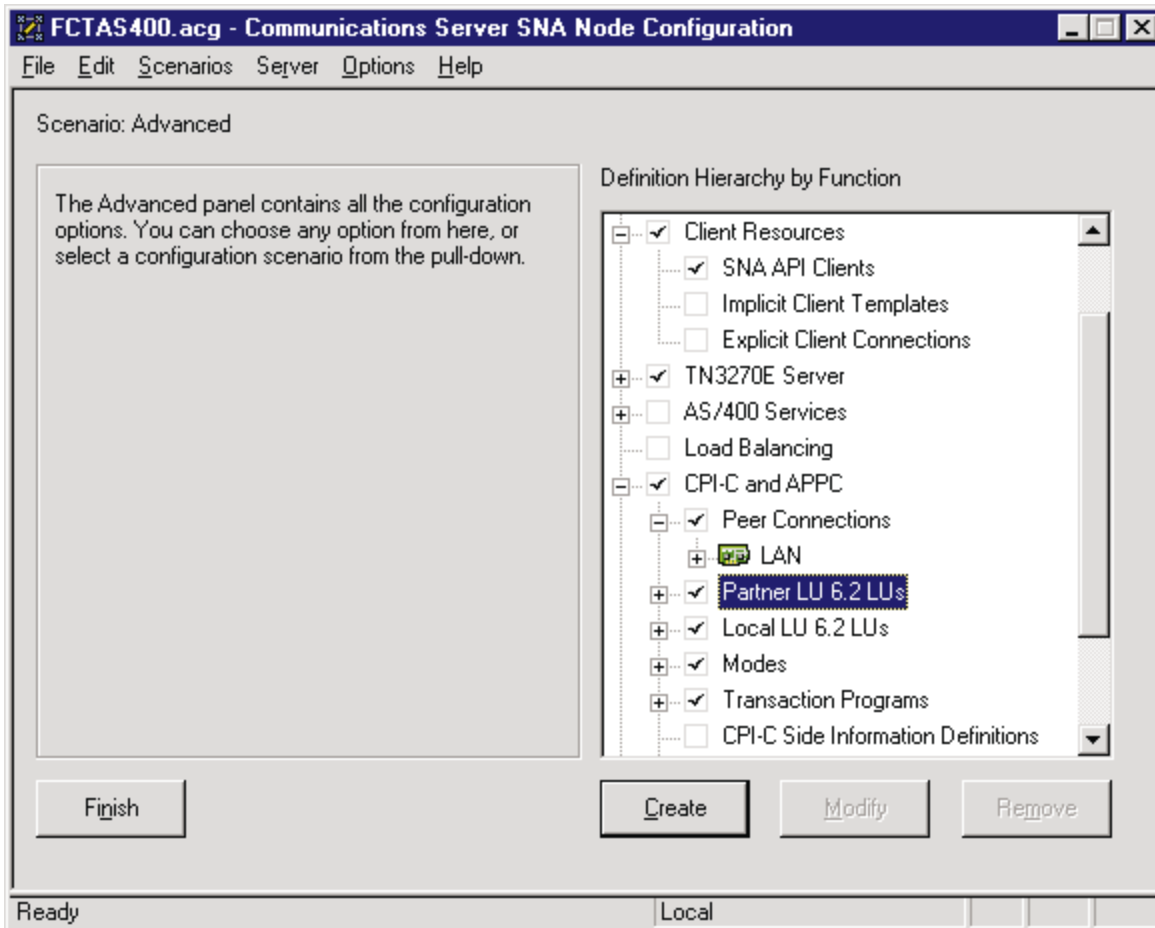


Figure 227. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Partner LU 6.2 LUs (AS/400)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 227), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Partner LU 6.2 LUs** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

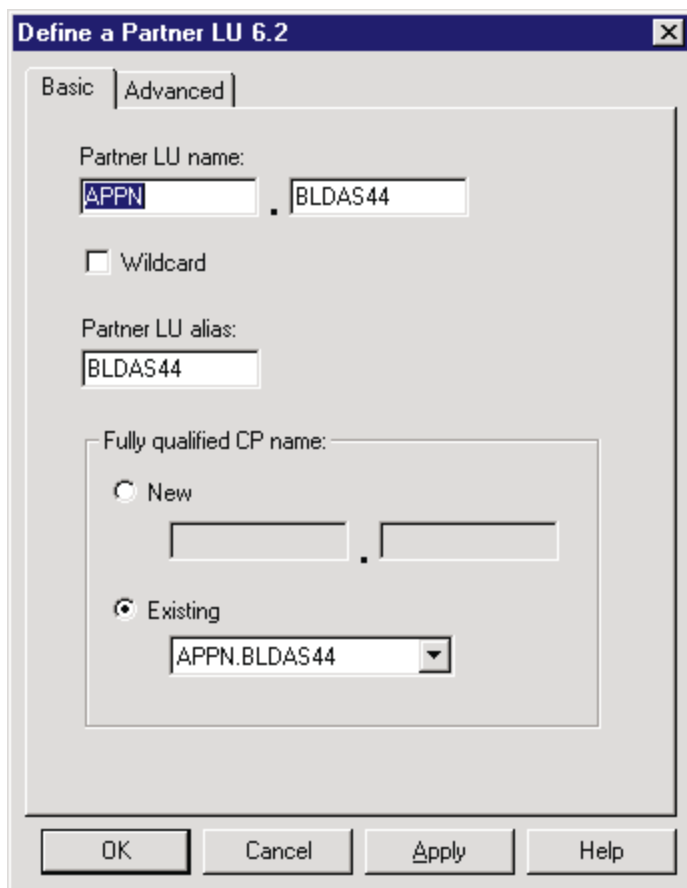


Figure 228. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Basic Tab (AS/400)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 228), supply the following values:

Partner LU name

Specifies the network identifier of the network in which the host PSF program resides (followed by a period), and the logical unit name used by the host PSF program. The AS/400 network name (first qualifier) is obtained from the local network ID in the AS/400 network attributes. The primary logical unit (PLU) (second qualifier) is obtained from the AS/400 **LCLLOCNAME** parameter in the AS/400 printer device description. If that device is ***NETATR**, use the value specified for the default local location in the AS/400 network attributes. (Do not check the **Wildcard** check box.)

Partner LU alias

Specifies the alternate name for the partner LU. Local applications can use this name, instead of the fully qualified LU name, to refer to the partner LU. This is the PSF Direct receiver to be used when the OS/400 operating system activates its real LU. While you can choose any meaningful value, IBM recommends specifying the second qualifier of the **Partner LU name**.

Fully qualified CP name

Select: **New** to enter the fully qualified CP name of the partner LU's owning control point. Communications Server for NT requires this field. Infoprint Manager uses this field as the target for any alerts sent by the PSF Direct program.

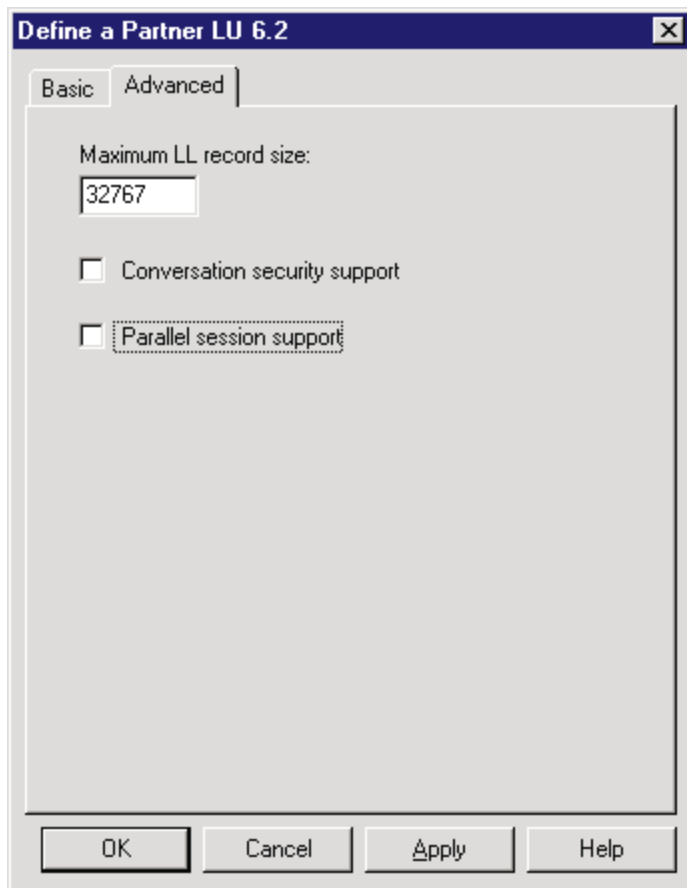


Figure 229. Define a Partner LU 6.2 Notebook: Advanced Tab (AS/400)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 229), supply the following values:

Maximum LL record size

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the maximum size of the logical record in the data stream for basic conversations. Specify the default (32767), because the PSF host program and the PSF Direct host receiver should both be able to handle the full range.

Conversation security support

Specifies that the partner logical unit (LU) is authorized to validate the user identifiers for the local LUs. Select the check box to specify conversation security support if you have matching support on the host PSF program. If not, leave this box unchecked.

Parallel session support

Specifies whether the partner LU supports two or more currently active sessions between the same two LUs by using different pairs of network addresses or session identifiers. Because neither PSF Direct nor the PSF host programs support two sessions with the same partner LU, do not select this check box.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Local LU 6.2 Configuration for AS/400

Dependent or Independent LU?

This procedure configures an *independent* LU. You cannot use it to configure a *dependent* LU. If you require dependent LUs, see “Deciding whether to Define a Dependent or an Independent LU” on page 14.

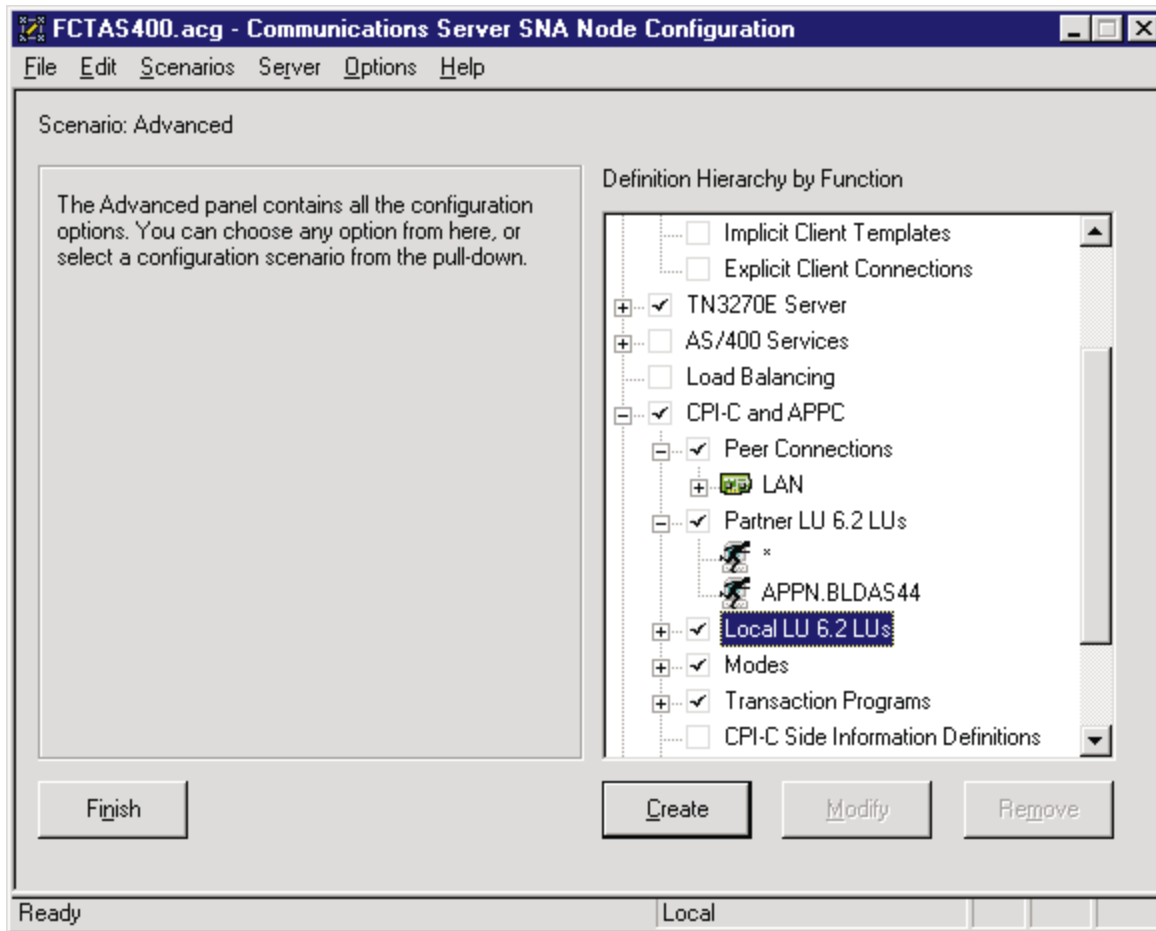


Figure 230. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Local LU 6.2 LUs (AS/400)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 230), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Local LU 6.2 LUs** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Local LU 6.2 notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

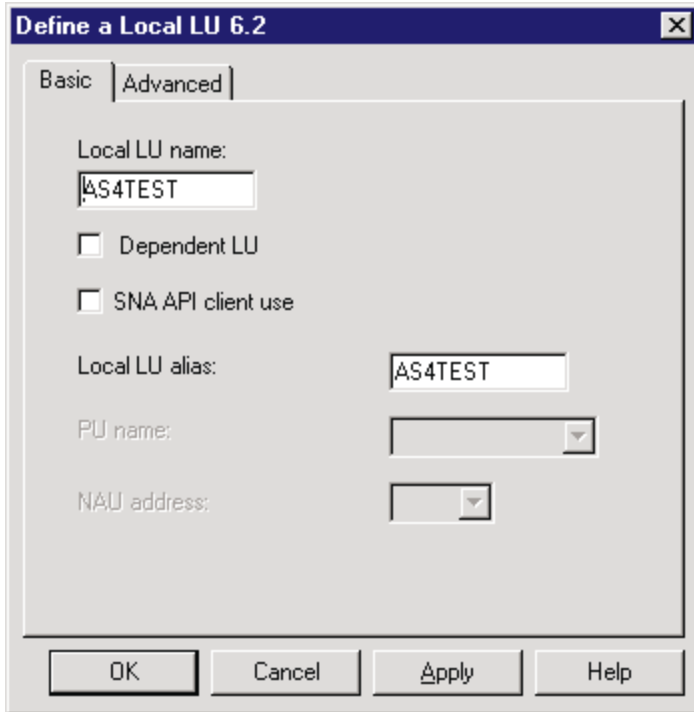


Figure 231. Define a Local LU 6.2 Notebook: Basic Tab (AS/400)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 231), supply the following values:

Local LU name

Specifies a 1- to 8-byte character string that identifies your workstation and gives transaction programs access to the network. This name must match the partner LU that has been defined at the host PSF program and the **RMTLOCNAME** parameter in the AS/400 printer device description.

Local LU alias

Specifies the name for the local LU that is used by Infoprint Manager when configuring the PSF Direct host receiver. This is the network addressable unit (NAU) for this LU. AS/400 creates this parameter value, which corresponds to the **LOCADR** parameter in the APPC device description. By default, that value is X'00', which means that the AS/400 is an independent LU.

Dependent LU

Specifies whether this LU requires assistance from a system services control point (SSCP) in order to initiate an LU-LU session. When this check box is selected, the LU must be specified as dependent on the host PSF program. Because this procedure is for an independent LU, do not check the box.

SNA API client use

Because this LU will be used by a server-based transaction program (TP), do not check this box.

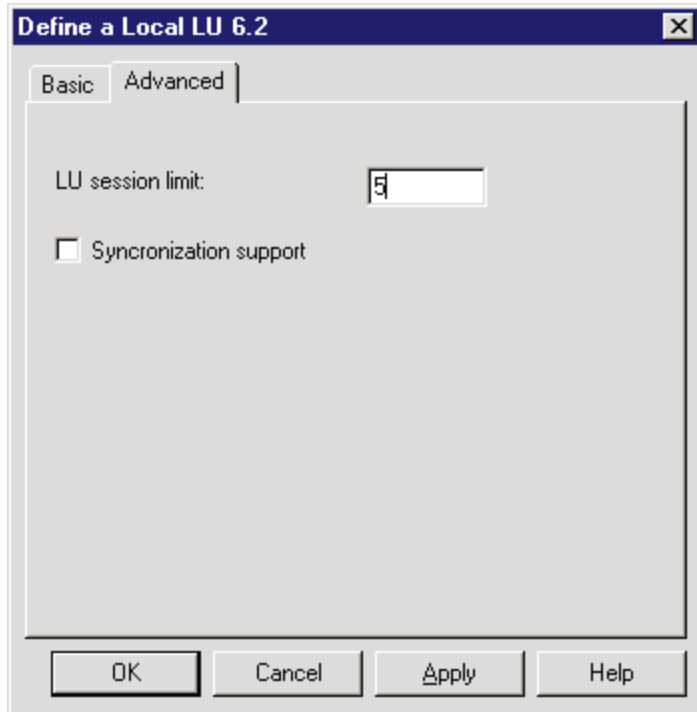


Figure 232. Define a Local LU 6.2 Notebook: Advanced Tab (AS/400)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 232), supply the following values:

LU session limit

Specifies the maximum number of sessions that the LU supports as a value between 0 and 65535. Specify 5.

Note: The application program supports only one LU session at a time, but the SNA session can support more.

Synchronization support

Select this check box if another application is supplying synchronization point management (DB/2, for example). In this instance, do not select it.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Mode Configuration for AS/400

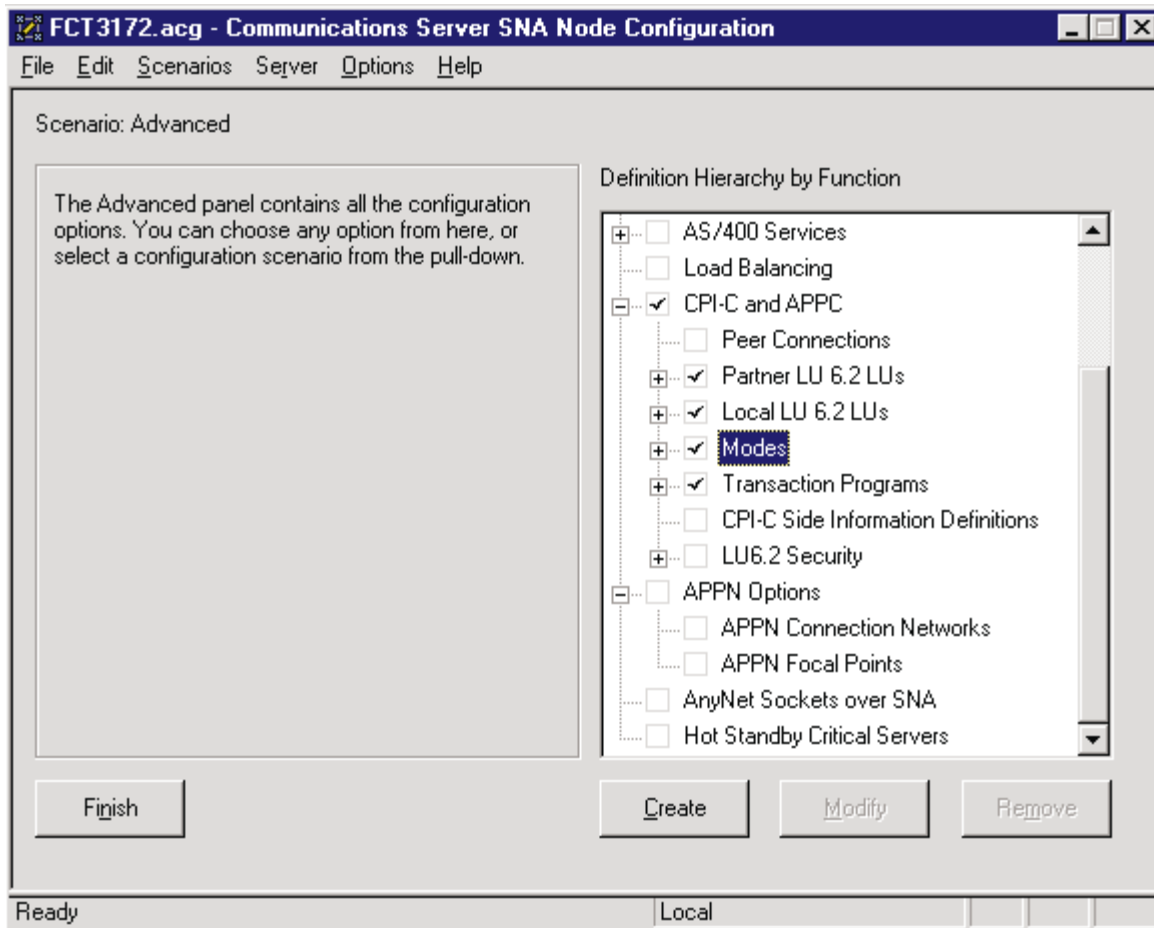


Figure 233. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Modes (AS/400)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 233), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Modes** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Mode notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

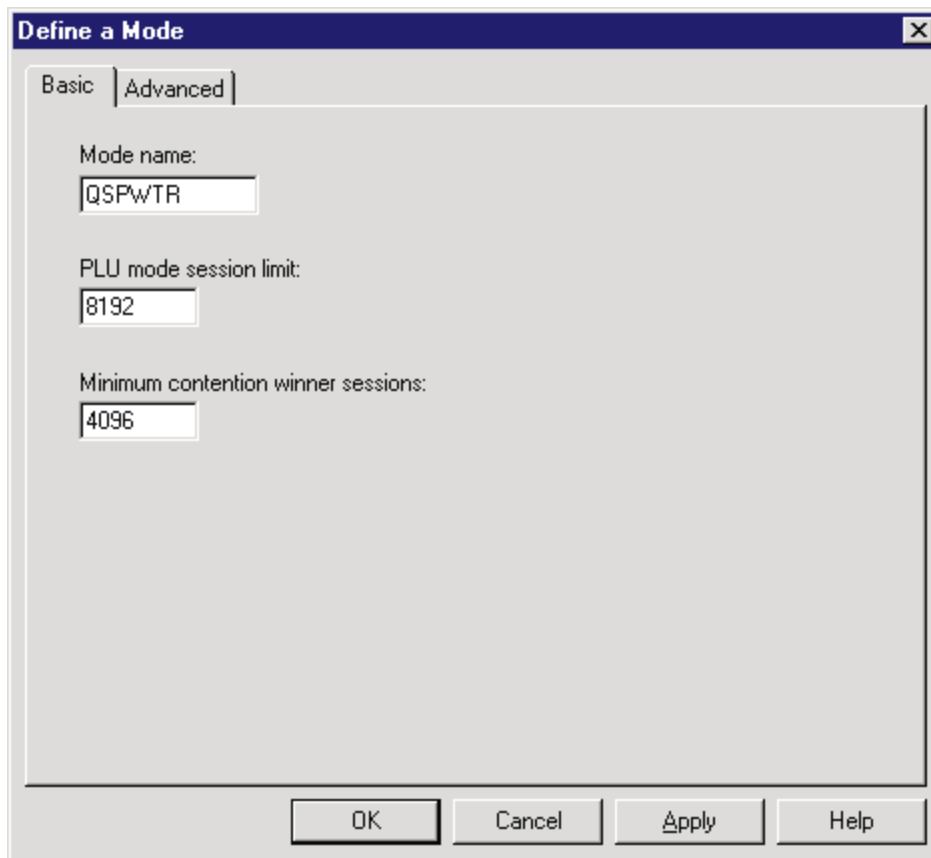


Figure 234. Define a Mode Notebook: Basic Tab (AS/400)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 234), supply the following values:

Mode name

Specifies the characteristics for the session that will be allocated for the conversation. The initiator uses this value. It defines the modes available for Transaction Programs that do not use IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT-supplied modes. This value should match the AS/400 **MODE** parameter in the AS/400 printer device description.

PLU mode session limit

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the primary logical unit (PLU) mode session limit, or maximum number of concurrently active LU-LU sessions that a particular LU can support. Take the default.

Minimum contention winner sessions

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the minimum number of sessions that a local LU using this mode can activate to win a contention with a partner. Take the default.

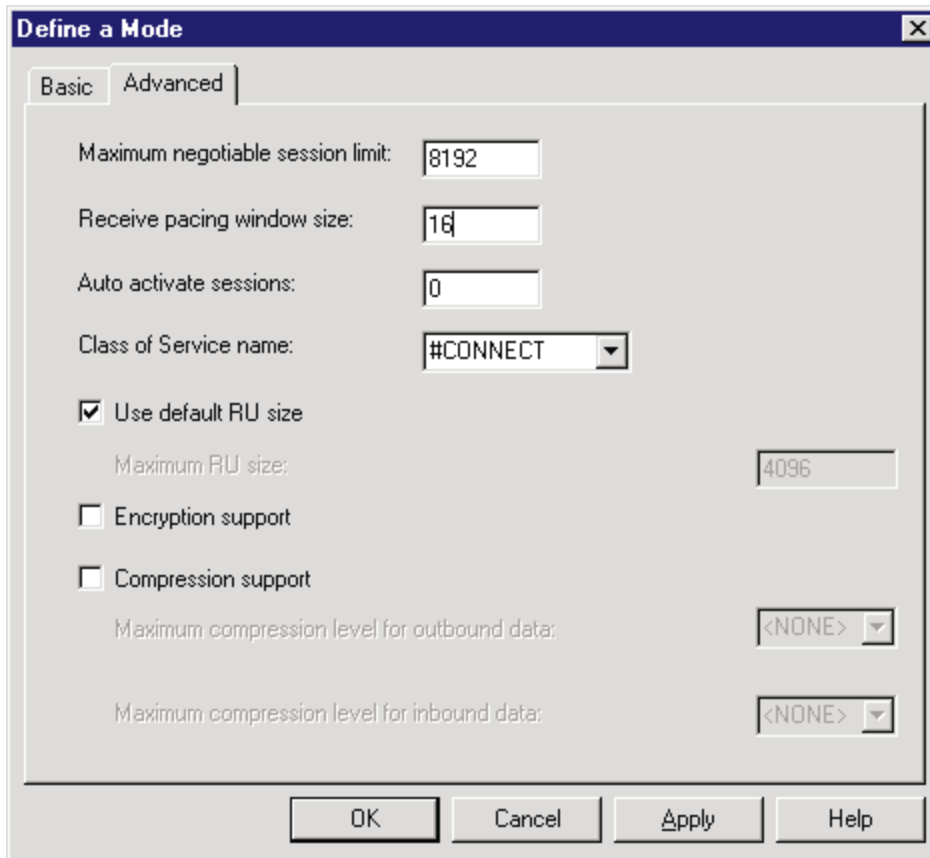


Figure 235. Define a Mode Notebook: Advanced Tab (AS/400)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 235), supply the following values:

Maximum negotiable session limit

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the maximum number of sessions allowed in this mode between any local logical unit (LU) and partner LU. Take the default.

Receive pacing window size

Specifies the secondary receive pacing count. A value of 16 produces good throughput in most configurations. This parameter influences performance and can be adjusted as desired.

Auto activate sessions

Specifies a value between 0 and 32767 as the number of parallel LU 6.2 sessions to automatically start when an initial session starts using this mode. Specify 0 so that no parallel sessions can start automatically for this application.

Class of Service name

Specifies the name of a set of transport network characteristics. Select the default: #CONNECT .

Use default RU size

Instructs the node to use the default maximum size for the request/response unit (RU) sent and received on the sessions. Do not select the check box.

Maximum RU size

Set this value to 1024, if it does not automatically specify that value when you remove the check from the **Use default RU size** parameter above.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Transaction Program Configuration for AS/400

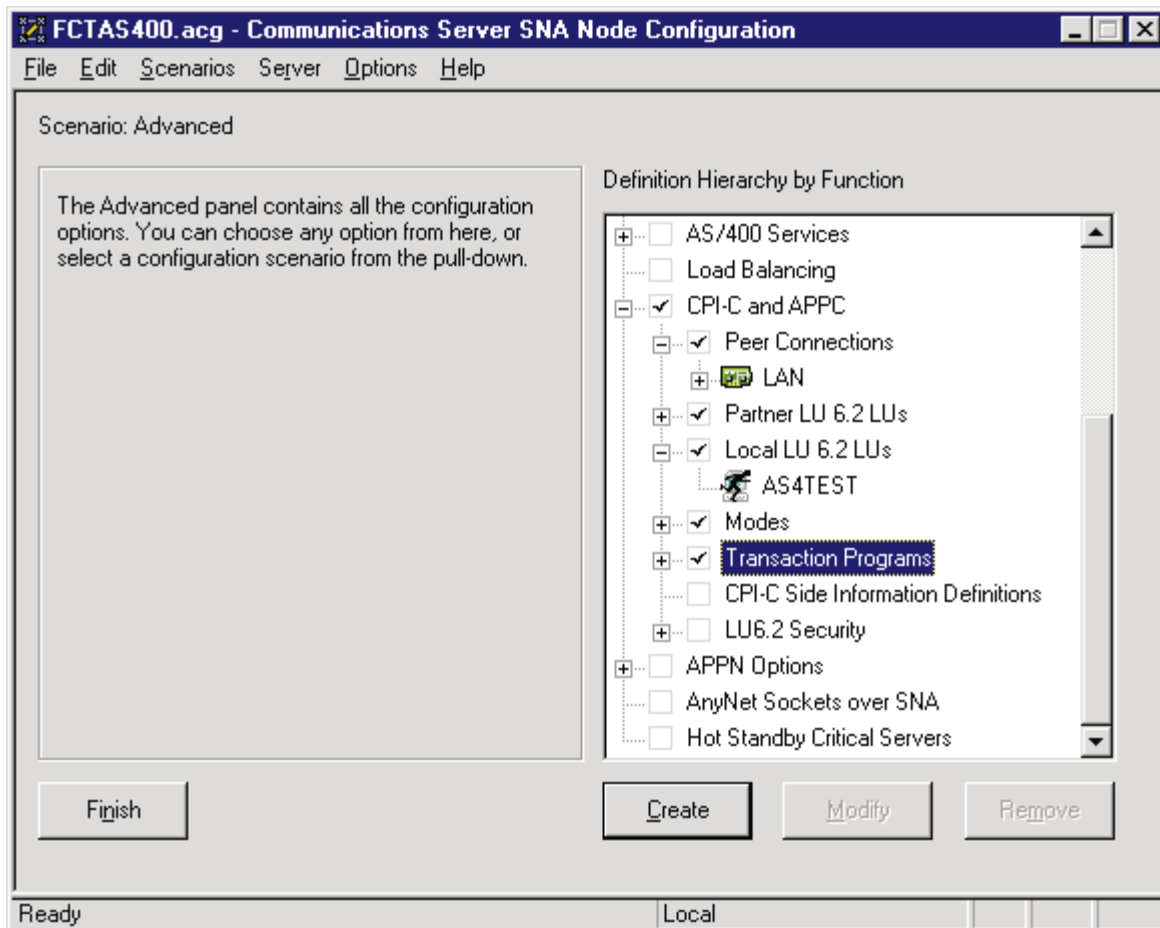


Figure 236. Communications Server SNA Node Configuration Window: Transaction Programs (AS/400)

In the Communications Server SNA Node Configuration window (Figure 236), right-click the **CPI-C and APPC** box, then the **Transaction Programs** box. Select the **Create** option. The Define a Transaction Program notebook opens at the **Basic** tab.

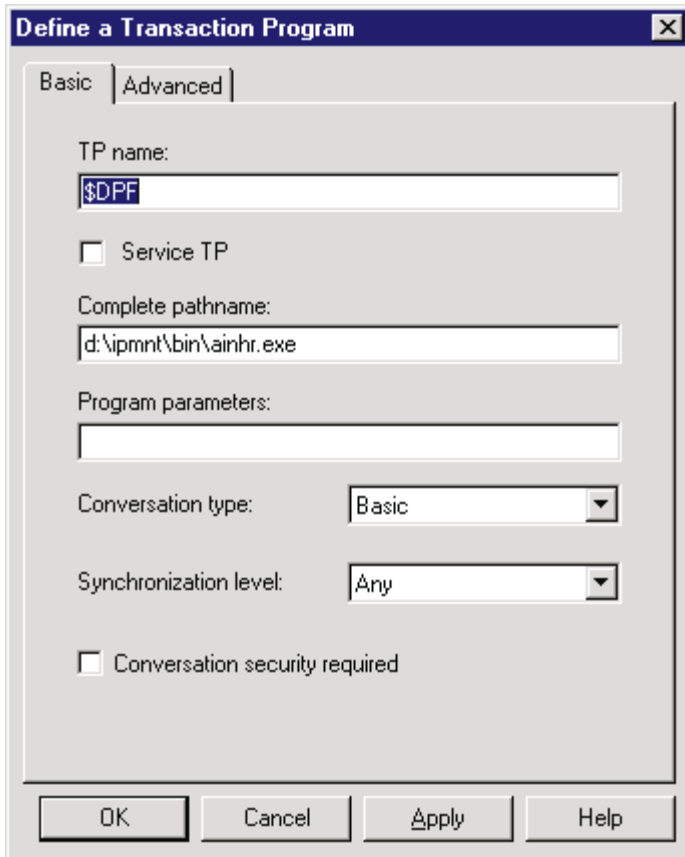


Figure 237. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Basic Tab (AS/400)

On the **Basic** tab (Figure 237), supply the following values:

TP name

Specifies a 1- to 64-byte character string for the program that uses the advanced program-to-program communications (APPC) system to communicate with a partner application program at the partner node. Enter **\$DPF**.

If you are migrating from an AIX operating system to a Windows NT operating system, note that this value changes from a binary 30F0F0F0 to a non-binary **\$DPF**. Ensure that the **Service TP** check box is unchecked because it indicates a non-binary value.

Complete pathname

Specifies an 1- to 255-byte character string that describes the location of the program to run. The location can include the drive, the directory, the subdirectory, and the file name. In this example, `d:\ipmnt\bin\ainhr.exe` specifies the location where Infoprint Manager for NT is installed on your system.

Conversation type

Specifies the conversation type allowed to start the transaction programs (TPs) that use an LU 6.2 session. Select **Basic**.

Synchronization level

Specifies the level allowed on allocation requests that start the local and remote transaction programs (TPs). Select **Any**.

Conversation security required

Allows controlled access to system resources through security parameters. If this check box is selected, conversation security information is required to start the TP. Incoming allocation requests for this TP without the conversation security information will be rejected. Do not check this box.

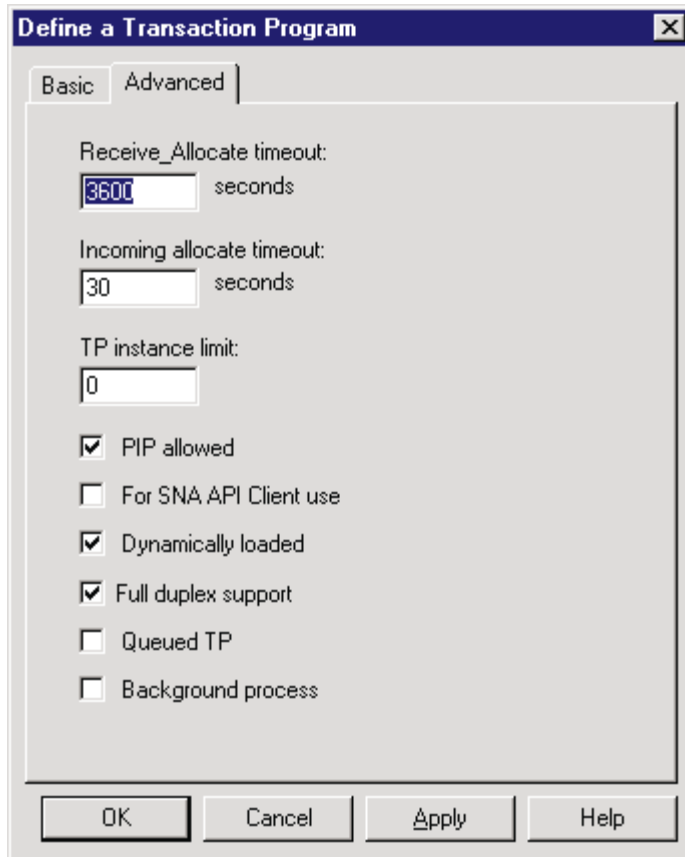


Figure 238. Define a Transaction Program Notebook: Advanced Tab (AS/400)

On the **Advanced** tab (Figure 238), supply the following values:

Receive_Allocate timeout

Specifies a value between 0 and 65535 seconds that identifies the time that a **Receive_Allocate** verb will be queued while waiting for an **Attach**. Specify 3600 .

Incoming allocate timeout

Specifies a value between 0 and 65535 seconds that identifies the time that an incoming **Attach** will be queued waiting for a **Receive_Allocate**. Specify 30 .

TP instance limit

Specifies a value between 0 and 65535 seconds that identifies the maximum number of concurrently active TP instances. Specify at least 1 (or the number of LUs that you have defined). 0 means no limit.

Dynamically loaded

Specifies whether the transaction program (TP) can be dynamically started by an allocation request received on a conversation. Select the check box to dynamically load the TP.

Background process

Specifies that the program will run in the background. Only 32-bit programs can multitask in the Windows NT environment. Select the check box to use the background process.

Note: Ensure that **Dynamically loaded** and **Background process** (the two items checked in Figure 238 on page 225) are the only items checked. If you specify other options, this transaction program will not work.

Click **OK** to save these specifications to the *xxx.acg* file.

Once you have completed creating this configuration, go to “Chapter 9. Starting an IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT Configuration” on page 229.

Local or Remote AS/400 Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheets

Use the following work sheets to configure PSF Direct on both the host PSF and Infoprint Manager for NT:

- Use Table 14 to see how Communications Server for NT configuration settings relate to other configuration settings.
- Use Table 15 on page 228 to record your own Communications Server for NT values.

AS/400 Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheet Example

Table 14. AS/400 Token-Ring Configuration Work Sheet Example

Communication Server	Value	Token-Ring Line Description	APPC Controller Description	Printer Device Description	Network Attributes
Define the Node: Fully-qualified CP name	USIBMBQ.NT2		RMTNETID RMTCPNAME	RMTLOCNAME	
Define the Node: Local Node ID	05DC021C		EXCHID		
Define a LAN Device: Receive window count	7				
Define a LAN Device: Maximum PIU size	16388	MAXFRAME	MAXFRAME		
Define a LAN Connection: Destination address	400059550067	ADPTADR	ADPTADR		
Define a Partner LU 6.2: Partner LU name	APPN.BLDAS44			LCLLOCNAME	Local network ID
Define a Local LU 6.2: Local LU name	AS4TEST			RMTLOCNAME	
Define a Local LU 6.2: Dependent LU	Not selected (address 0)				
Define a Mode: Mode name	QSPWTR			MODE	
Define a Mode: Receive pacing window size	16				
Define a Mode: Maximum RU size	1024				

AS/400 Token-Ring Configuration Blank Work Sheet

Table 15. AS/400 Token-Ring Configuration Blank Work Sheet

Communication Server	Value	Token-Ring Line Description	APPC Controller Description	Printer Device Description	Network Attributes
Define the Node: Fully-qualified CP name			RMTNETID RMTCPNAME	RMTLOCNAME	
Define the Node: Local Node ID			EXCHID		
Define a LAN Device: Receive window count					
Define a LAN Device: Maximum PIU size		MAXFRAME	MAXFRAME		
Define a LAN Connection: Destination address		ADPTADR	ADPTADR		
Define a Partner LU 6.2: Partner LU name				LCLLOCNAME	Local network ID
Define a Local LU 6.2: Local LU name				RMTLOCNAME	
Define a Local LU 6.2: Dependent LU					
Define a Mode: Mode name				MODE	
Define a Mode: Receive pacing window size					
Define a Mode: Maximum RU size					

Chapter 9. Starting an IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT Configuration

Use the following procedure to start all IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT configurations:

1. From your NT desktop view, double-click the **SNA Node Operations** icon that resides on your desktop:



2. From the Communications Server Node Operations window, click the plus (+) sign next to **Connections**.
3. If your configuration is an independent LU, highlight **Peer Connections**. If it is a dependent LU, highlight **Host Connections**.
4. From the window's main menu, select **Operations-->Start Node**.
5. From the **Open** pop-up window, select the *xxx.acg* file that represents the configuration you wish to start and click **Open**.

From the right pane of the Communications Server Node Operations window, a lightning bolt icon labeled **Linkxxxx** appears. (xxxx represents the number of links on your system.) When the lightning bolt icon turns completely yellow, the link is active. PSF Direct is ready to receive jobs from the host PSF system. If the lightning bolt turns completely red, the link has failed. You need to review your configuration on both the Infoprint Manager Windows NT server and the PSF host program.

Chapter 10. Configuring PSF Direct

PSF Direct acts as a communication protocol converter. It exchanges data with a host PSF program using an SNA LU 6.2 session and relays the data to an Infoprint actual destination.

From an application perspective, the entire SNA network can be viewed as a black box with two access points that are called **logical units** (LUs). An LU 6.2 session runs through the network and connects the two logical units (Figure 239).

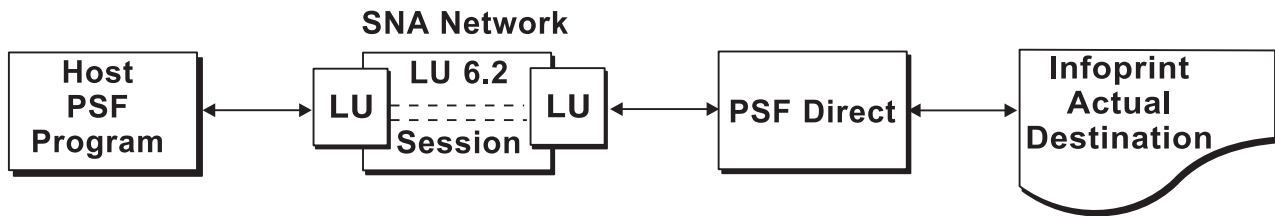


Figure 239. SNA LU 6.2 Session in a PSF Direct Configuration

When you configure a PSF Direct Receiver, you associate a logical unit with an Infoprint actual destination (Figure 240).

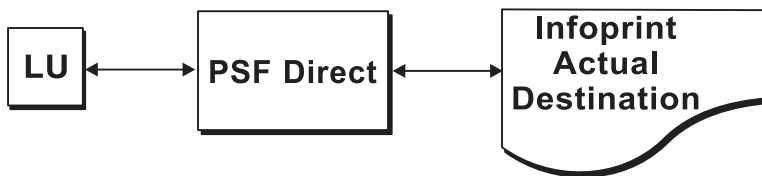


Figure 240. PSF Direct Host Receiver

This chapter contains the following topics:

- “Creating and Configuring an Infoprint PSF Direct Destination (Printer)” on page 232
- “Defining the PSF Direct Host Receiver” on page 232
- “Starting a PSF Direct Host Receiver” on page 233
- “Stopping a PSF Direct Host Receiver” on page 234
- “Displaying the Status of a PSF Direct Destination on the Windows NT System” on page 234
- “Displaying the Status of a PSF Direct Destination on the Host System” on page 236
- “Using One Infoprint Actual Destination to Print Data from Multiple Sources” on page 236

Creating and Configuring an Infoprint PSF Direct Destination (Printer)

Before creating an actual destination (printer) to send jobs from PSF Direct, you should determine the type of configuration. Refer to *Infoprint Manager for Windows NT and Windows 2000: Getting Started*, G544–5717. When you create an Infoprint actual destination, Infoprint adds the functions that allow Infoprint to communicate with the printer. These include a subdirectory and files in the `\var\psf` directory.

You can create and configure the Infoprint PSF Direct destination in two ways:

- “Using the Infoprint Manager Administration GUI”
- “Using the Infoprint Manager Management Console”

Using the Infoprint Manager Administration GUI

If you will be using the PSF Direct destination to print data from a PC, you must use the Infoprint Manager Administration GUI to create an actual destination. Use the **Printer-->Create-->PSF** menu to access the Create Printer wizard. Refer to the online help in the Infoprint Manager Administration GUI.

To configure the PSF Direct destination after you create it, you can use the Infoprint Manager Administration GUI. Select the actual destination (printer) you want to configure, then use the **Printer-->Properties** menu to open the Printer Properties notebook. Refer to the online help in the Infoprint Manager Administration GUI.

Using the Infoprint Manager Management Console

If you will be using the PSF Direct destination to print data from PSF host systems only, you can use the Infoprint Manager Management Console to create an actual destination. First, ensure that the Infoprint Windows NT server is running. Then use the **Edit-->New-->Destination** path and select from the range of potential PSF Direct destinations provided. For more information on configuring this destination, see the related Infoprint Manager Management Console help.

To communicate with an Infoprint actual destination, PSF Direct uses the functions that Infoprint created when you added the printer. However, PSF Direct does not accept data from the Infoprint queue that was created for the printer. Instead, PSF Direct uses an SNA LU 6.2 session that you created through IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT to obtain print data from a host PSF program.

When you add a PSF Direct receiver, you must indicate which Infoprint actual destination the host receiver should use. This procedure is described in “Defining the PSF Direct Host Receiver”.

Defining the PSF Direct Host Receiver

IBM recommends setting up the PSF Direct Receiver and managing your PSF Direct operations from the MVS™ Download Receiver Manager window. You can then use the Management Console for Infoprint Manager Server... window to track server events.

To set up a PSF Direct Receiver, use the following procedure:

1. Open the Management Console for Infoprint Manager Server... window. Then use the **Edit-->PSF Direct Receiver Management...** menu to access the PSF Direct Receiver Manager window.

2. Click on the **Add** button.
3. From the **Add PSF Direct Receiver** pop-up menu, specify a value in the **SNA LUNAME** field. This value must match the SNA Logical Unit name defined through the Secure Way Communication Server configuration.
4. Click on the drop-down menu next to the **Target Destination** field. Highlight the Infoprint logical or actual destination to which you want to default for this PSF Direct Receiver.

This list consists of all the logical and actual destinations that have been defined in the Infoprint Manager Administration GUI.

5. Allow both numeric values in the **SNA System Services Control Point ID** field and the **NMVT Subsystem name** field to default.
6. Specify a numeric value from 0 to 9999 (in seconds) for the **Inactivity limit** field.

Setting this value to the system default of 9999 causes the PSF Direct receivers to wait indefinitely if the printer is not available. For more information about the **Inactivity limit** field, see “Automatically Stopping a PSF Direct Host Receiver” on page 237.

7. Specify a numeric value from 0 to 9999 (in seconds) for the **Printer busy limit** field.

Setting this value to the system default of 9999 causes the PSF Direct receivers to wait indefinitely if the printer is not available. For more information on setting this field, see “Controlling the Wait Period for a PSF Direct Host Receiver” on page 237.

8. Once you are satisfied with the fields on the **Add PSF Direct Receiver** pop-up menu, click on the **OK** button.
9. Infoprint adds a PSF Direct Receiver to the main pane, with a red marker. STOPPED displays in the **Status** column.
10. Within a minute or two, the marker for the PSF Direct Receiver that you just created will change from red to green. RUNNING will display in the **Status** column. At this point, you can submit jobs from the OS/390 host system for printing directly on Infoprint Manager printers.

Table 16 shows an example of configuration values for a PSF Direct host receiver.

Table 16. PSF Direct Host Receiver Values Example

SNA Logical Unit Name	MVS1
Target Destination (actual destination)	4000wb
Inactivity limit (seconds)	9999
Device busy limit (seconds)	9999
SNA System Services Control Point ID	050000000000
NMVT Subsystem Name	NMVT

Starting a PSF Direct Host Receiver

IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT starts a PSF Direct receiver automatically when a host PSF program causes an SNA LU 6.2 session to be established and allocates an SNA conversation on that session. As a result, a host system operator indirectly causes a PSF Direct host receiver to be run by starting a host PSF program that establishes a SNA LU 6.2 session.

The operator on the Infoprint Manager Windows NT server does not need to do anything to start a PSF Direct host receiver, as long as IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT is active on the Windows NT server.

Stopping a PSF Direct Host Receiver

A PSF Direct host receiver can be stopped in several ways:

- The host system operator can end the host PSF program that communicates with the PSF Direct host receiver. When the host PSF program ends the SNA conversation with the PSF Direct host receiver, the PSF Direct host receiver automatically ends.
- The host PSF program's **Disconnect Interval** parameter can be exceeded.
If the host PSF program is waiting for new print files and none become available within the period specified by the **Disconnect Interval** parameter, the host PSF program ends the SNA session with the PSF Direct host receiver. The PSF Direct host receiver then ends.
- The PSF Direct host receiver **Inactivity Limit** can be exceeded.
If the PSF Direct host receiver is waiting for data from the host PSF program and no data arrives within the period specified by the **Inactivity Limit** value, the PSF Direct host receiver UNBINDs the SNA session with the host system.
The **Inactivity Limit** defaults to infinite (9999 seconds). It should only be used in some configurations where a printer is shared.
- If an operator at the Windows NT system stops IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT, all SNA sessions end, causing all PSF Direct host receivers to end. An operator can also use IBM SecureWay Communications Server for NT to stop an individual SNA session. If a PSF Direct host receiver is using the session, that PSF Direct host receiver ends.

For information about stopping a PSF Direct host receiver that is working with a shared Infoprint actual destination, see "Manually Stopping a PSF Direct Host Receiver" on page 236 and "Automatically Stopping a PSF Direct Host Receiver" on page 237.

Displaying the Status of a PSF Direct Destination on the Windows NT System

Infoprint provides two methods for users to display the status of a PSF Direct host receiver:

- "Using the Infoprint Manager Management Console"
- "Using the psfstat Command" on page 235

Using the Infoprint Manager Management Console

The Infoprint Manager Management Console allows you to view the status of Infoprint actual destinations and PSF Direct Receivers. If you click on **PSF Direct Host Receivers** in the left pane, the PSF Direct Host Receivers view shows up in the right pane. If you are not using the Management Console for Infoprint Manager Server... window to track server events, this is the easiest method to display PSF Direct status. However, if you are using the Management Console for Infoprint Manager Server... window to track server events, you should use the **psfstat** command to display status.

Note that if you click **destinations** in the left pane of the Management Console for Infoprint Manager Server... window, Infoprint displays the status of all your actual destinations.

Using the psfstat Command

The **psfstat** command displays information about the status of Infoprint actual destinations and PSF Direct receivers. It tells you whether each Infoprint printer is receiving data from either the Infoprint Manager Windows NT server or from a PSF Direct receiver. The **psfstat** command provides the source of the display provided by the Infoprint Manager Management Console.

If you specify **psfstat** from a command prompt window, the results are similar to Figure 241.

Printer	Attachment	Data	Printer status	Active	Waiting
3287	channel	IPDS	--	--	--
4000wa	TCP/IP	IPDS	intervention	[Queue]	--
4000wb	TCP/IP	IPDS	ok	PSFVM1	[Queue],PSFMVS
ps14	direct	PS	ok	[Queue]	--

LU name	Printer	Attachment	Data	Printer status	Receiver status
PSFMVS	4000wb	TCP/IP	IPDS	ok	sess/prtr_busy
PSFVM1	4000wb	TCP/IP	IPDS	ok	sess/prtr_conn
PSFVSE1	4000wb	TCP/IP	IPDS	ok	idle

Figure 241. Printer and Receiver Status Example

Figure 241 indicates that:

- Printer 3827 is not active.
- Printer 4000wa is printing data from Infoprint Manager ([Queue]). The printer requires operator intervention.
- Printer 4000wb is printing data from a PSF Direct receiver that uses the SNA logical unit name (**LUNAME**) PSFVM1. Additional data is also available on the Infoprint actual destination and from a PSF Direct receiver that uses the SNA **LUNAME** PSFMVS. The order of the waiting data sources does not indicate which source will access the printer next.
- Printer ps14 is printing data from Infoprint Manager.
- Receiver PSFMVS is in session with the host system and is waiting for printer 4000wb.
- Receiver PSFVM1 is in session with the host system and is connected to printer 4000wb.
- Receiver PSFVSE1 is in session with the host system and is idle, but connected to printer 4000wb.

Note that you can use the **psfstat** command to display information about any Infoprint actual destination, not just those are used by PSF Direct host receivers. For the syntax of the **psfstat** command, refer to the *Infoprint Manager: Reference*, S544–5475.

Displaying the Status of a PSF Direct Destination on the Host System

A host system operator can display the status of any printer managed by the host PSF program, including printers that are attached by PSF Direct. For example, an OS/390 operator can use the JES2 \$DU command to display printer status.

Using One Infoprint Actual Destination to Print Data from Multiple Sources

One Infoprint actual destination can print data from more than one host PSF program and from the IBM Infoprint Windows NT server. At any time, however, the Infoprint actual destination can only be dedicated to printing data from a single source: one host PSF program or the IBM Infoprint Windows NT server.

This section describes how to configure and manage the switching of an Infoprint actual destination between data sources. It contains the following topics:

- “Switching between Data Sources”
- “Sharing an Infoprint Actual Destination: An Example” on page 238
- “Displaying the Status of a Shared Infoprint Actual Destination” on page 240

Switching between Data Sources

Switching an Infoprint actual destination between data sources requires two steps:

1. The process using the Infoprint actual destination must end, whether that process is a PSF Direct host receiver or a print process from the IBM Infoprint Windows NT server. When this process ends, the Infoprint actual destination becomes available to another program. See the following topics:
 - “Manually Stopping a PSF Direct Host Receiver”
 - “Automatically Stopping a PSF Direct Host Receiver” on page 237
 - “Automatically Stopping Printing from the IBM Infoprint Windows NT Server” on page 237
2. A PSF Direct host receiver or Infoprint process that prints from the IBM Infoprint Windows NT server must wait for other programs to stop using the Infoprint actual destination. See the following topics:
 - “Controlling the Wait Period for a PSF Direct Host Receiver” on page 237
 - “Controlling the Wait Period for Printing from an IBM Infoprint Windows NT Server” on page 237

Manually Stopping a PSF Direct Host Receiver

A host system operator can end a PSF Direct host receiver by ending the host PSF program that communicates with the host receiver. For example, an OS/390 host operator can delete all jobs from the printer by using the \$PPRT_{nnn} JES2 command; or the operator can cancel the JES writer procedure.

To end the IBM Infoprint Windows NT server process manually from Infoprint, refer to the **pdshutdown** command as described in the *Infoprint Manager: Reference*, S544–5475. If you merely disable the printer through the **pddisable** command, the Infoprint processes are not stopped, and the PSF Direct host receiver cannot establish a session.

For more detail about shutting down a PSF Direct host receiver, see “Stopping a PSF Direct Host Receiver” on page 234.

Automatically Stopping a PSF Direct Host Receiver

Most host PSF programs have a Disconnect Interval configuration parameter, such as the **DISCINTV PRINTDEV** statement parameter in PSF for OS/390. This parameter causes the host PSF program to end the SNA session with a PSF Direct host receiver if there is no data to print for the specified period. Ending the SNA session with the host receiver causes the host receiver to end.

Some host PSF programs, such as PSF/400, do not offer a Disconnect Interval configuration parameter. To enable PSF Direct host receivers to be automatically ended when they communicate with these host PSF programs, the PSF Direct host receiver configuration panel includes an **Inactivity limit** parameter. The PSF Direct host receiver **Inactivity limit** parameter causes a host receiver to end if it waits for data from the host system for the specified period.

Using the host PSF program's Disconnect Interval is preferable to using the PSF Direct host receiver **Inactivity limit** parameter.

Automatically Stopping Printing from the IBM Infoprint Windows NT Server

Each Infoprint actual destination has an actual destination attribute called the **printer-release-timer** attribute. This attribute causes Infoprint to stop printing from the IBM Infoprint Windows NT Server if it has completed the Infoprint spool data and the specified interval elapses with no new Infoprint data.

Controlling the Wait Period for a PSF Direct Host Receiver

The PSF Direct host receiver **Device busy limit** parameter controls how long a host receiver waits for an Infoprint actual destination to become available. The **Device busy limit** parameter has a default value of 120 seconds. If an Infoprint actual destination is used to print from several sources, increase the **Device busy limit** parameter to 9999. This value means that the host receiver should wait indefinitely.

While a PSF Direct host receiver is waiting for an Infoprint actual destination to become available, the SNA session with the host system is maintained but no application data is exchanged.

Controlling the Wait Period for Printing from an IBM Infoprint Windows NT Server

By default, the Infoprint program that prints from the IBM Infoprint Windows NT Server waits indefinitely for an Infoprint actual destination to become available. There is no configuration attribute that controls how long the program waits.

Table 17 on page 238 summarizes the time limits for Infoprint printing.

Table 17. Time Limit Parameters

For Device	Function	Option	User Interface	Default Value
PSF Direct Host Receiver	Wait for printer	Device Busy Limit field.	PSF Direct Receiver Manager window of Infoprint Manager Management Console	120 seconds
PSF Direct Host Receiver	End program, making printer available	DISCINTV	Host PSF configuration program	0 seconds (infinite)
PSF Direct Host Receiver	End program, making printer available	Inactivity limit field	PSF Direct Receiver Manager window of Infoprint Manager Management Console	9999 seconds (infinite)
IBM Infoprint Windows NT Server	Wait for printer	none	none	infinite
IBM Infoprint Windows NT Server	End program, making printer available	printer-release-timer attribute	On the Infoprint Manager Administration GUI, the PSF Configuration tab of the Printer Properties notebook	9999 seconds (infinite)

Sharing an Infoprint Actual Destination: An Example

The example in this section illustrates how to share an Infoprint actual destination between two host PSF programs using PSF Direct. The actual destination can also print data from the IBM Infoprint Windows NT Server. The configuration parameters cause the printer to be switched automatically.

This section consists of the following topics:

- “Configuring the Host PSF Programs”
- “Infoprint Actual Destination: PSF Tuning Options” on page 239

Configuring the Host PSF Programs

For two host PSF programs to share an Infoprint actual destination, they must specify similar **PRINTDEV** statements, like the examples in Figure 242 and Figure 243 on page 239. Note that the complete statement would contain more parameters.

```
// PRT833 PRINTDEV
.
.
.
// DISCINTV=60, /*DISCONNECT INTERVAL -- SECONDS */
.
.
.
// PRT833 ENDCNTL
```

Figure 242. PRINTDEV Statement for PSF for OS/390 Example

```

PRT1000 PRINTDEV
.
.
.
    DISCINTV=60,   DISCONNECT INTERVAL -- SECONDS
.
.
.

```

Figure 243. PRINTDEV Statement for PSF/VSE Example

Setting the **DISCINTV** to 60 seconds for both host PSF programs causes each host PSF program to end if all spool data from the printer is completed and no additional data becomes available for 60 seconds. When the host PSF program ends, the PSF Direct host receiver ends, and the Infoprint actual destination becomes available to other programs.

If additional host data becomes available for the Infoprint actual destination, the host PSF program starts again and waits, if necessary, for the printer to become available.

Infoprint Actual Destination: PSF Tuning Options

To allow Infoprint to share the printer with two host PSFs, you must adjust the Infoprint actual destination's PSF tuning options. Use the **Printer Properties** notebook in the Infoprint Manager Administration GUI.

Select the actual destination (printer) you want to configure. Then use the **Printer-->Properties** menu to open the Printer Properties notebook. Select the **Tuning** tab and tune the options described in this section.

- The **Release time (sec)** field specifies the number of seconds that Infoprint waits between jobs before giving up control of an actual destination. (This field is equivalent to the **destination-release-timer** attribute.) Setting this value to 60 seconds causes the Infoprint program that prints from the IBM Infoprint Windows NT server to end if it has printed the files in the printer's queue. No additional files become available for 60 seconds. When the program ends, the Infoprint actual destination becomes available to other programs, such as PSF Direct receivers.

If additional files are added to the printer's queue on the IBM Infoprint Windows NT server, the Infoprint program that prints from the server starts again. It waits, if necessary, for the printer to become available.

- Accepting the default **intervention-timer** attribute value of 9999 causes the PSF Direct host receivers that use this printer to issue printer intervention messages on the Windows NT system. It does not cause the host receivers to report intervention conditions to the host PSF program.

If you use a **intervention-timer** value of 3600 instead, the PSF Direct receivers notify the host PSF program if an intervention condition is not addressed within an hour. The host PSF program issues an operator message and ends the SNA session with the PSF Direct receiver. The **intervention-timer** also causes the PSF program that prints from the IBM Infoprint Windows NT server to end if an intervention condition is not addressed within an hour.

- For continuous-forms printers, set the **Non-process-runout timer** field at a lower value than the **Release-time (sec)** attribute. For example, if the **destination-release-timer** attribute value is 60 seconds, reduce the **non-process-runout-timer** attribute value to 30 seconds.

Finally, you must configure the PSF Direct host receivers for each host that will share the printer. This process is described in “Defining the PSF Direct Host Receiver” on page 232.

Displaying the Status of a Shared Infoprint Actual Destination

The **psfstat** command displays information about the status of Infoprint actual destinations and PSF Direct receivers. The information that **psfstat** displays about an Infoprint actual destination includes:

- The program that currently controls the printer
- A list of the programs waiting to gain control of the printer

For example, **psfstat** might display information like Figure 244.

```

Printer  Attachment  Data  Printer status  Active  Waiting
-----  -
4000wb   TCP/IP         IPDS  intervention    MVS1    [Queue],VSE1

LU name  Printer  Attachment  Data  Printer status  Receiver status
-----  -
MVS1     4000wb   TCP/IP      IPDS  intervention    sess/prtr_conn
VSE1     4000wb   TCP/IP      IPDS  intervention    sess/prtr_busy

```

Figure 244. Shared Printer Status

Figure 244 shows that the printer is currently dedicated to printing data from the OS/390 spool. The IBM Infoprint Windows NT server ([Queue]) and the VSE spool also contain data that is waiting to print.

When the OS/390 host system releases the printer, the printer will print data either from the IBM Infoprint Windows NT server or the VSE host system. The order in which the two waiting sources are listed does not imply that the IBM Infoprint Windows NT server has been waiting longer or that it will acquire the printer next.

Figure 244 also indicates that the printer requires intervention.

For more information about the **psfstat** command, see “Displaying the Status of a PSF Direct Destination on the Windows NT System” on page 234 and the *Infoprint Manager: Reference*, S544–5475.

Notices

Licenses

References in this publication to products or services of IBM do not suggest or imply that IBM will make them available in all countries where IBM does business or that only products or services of IBM may be used. Noninfringing equivalents may be substituted, but the user must verify that such substitutes, unless expressly designated by IBM, work correctly. No license, expressed or implied, to patents or copyrights of IBM is granted by furnishing this document. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to the IBM Director of Licensing, IBM Corporation, 500 Columbus Avenue, Thornwood, NY 10594, USA.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (1) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (2) the mutual use of the information, which has been exchanged, should contact: IBM Corporation, Printing Systems Legal Department, Mail Drop 002S, Boulder, Colorado 80301 USA. Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

Trademarks

The following terms are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States or other countries:

- AIX[®]
- Application System/400[®]
- APPN[®]
- AS/400[®]
- IBM[®]
- Infoprint[®]
- MVS[®]
- OS/2[®]
- OS/390[®]
- OS/400[®]
- Print Services Facility[®]
- SecureWay[®]
- VTAM[®]

Microsoft[®], Windows[®], and Windows NT[®] are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Index

Special Characters

- .acg file
 - 3172 configuration 74
 - 3174 configuration, local 118
 - 3174 configuration, remote 159
 - 37xx configuration 29
 - AS/400 configuration 197
- \$DU command 236

Numerics

- 3172 establishment controller 72
- 3172 token-ring configuration
 - 3172 establishment controller 72
 - accessing Communications Server for NT profiles 74
 - blank work sheet 105
 - Device profile 79
 - enabling SNA API clients 84
 - host PSF printer configuration 62
 - host PSF printer definition 62
 - illustration 61
 - interrelationships 104
 - JES external writer procedure 62
 - JES2 initialization statement 62
 - Local LU 6.2 profile 94
 - Mode profile 97
 - network internals view 7
 - Node Setup profile 75
 - Partner LU 6.2 profile 91
 - Peer Connections profile 86
 - simplified view 3
 - starting 229
 - token-ring addresses 11
 - Transaction Program profile 100
 - VTAM application program 67
 - VTAM configuration list 66
 - VTAM mode table 67
 - VTAM start option list 65
 - VTAM switched major node 68
 - VTAM XCA major node 72
 - work sheet example 104
- 3174 establishment controller
 - local configuration 115
 - remote configuration 156
- 3174 token-ring gateway configuration, local
 - 3174 establishment controller 115
 - accessing Communications Server for NT profiles 117
 - alternate token-ring address required 13
 - blank work sheet 148
 - Device profile 123
 - enabling SNA API clients 135
 - host PSF printer configuration 108
 - host PSF printer definition 108
 - illustration 107
 - interrelationships 147
 - JES external writer procedure 108
 - JES2 initialization statement 108

- 3174 token-ring gateway configuration, local (*continued*)
 - Local LU 6.2 profile 132
 - Mode profile 140
 - network internals view 7
 - Node Setup profile 119
 - Partner LU 6.2 profile 137
 - Peer Connections profile 128
 - simplified view 3
 - starting 229
 - token-ring addresses 12
 - Transaction Program profile 143
 - VTAM application program 113
 - VTAM configuration list 112
 - VTAM local major node 114
 - VTAM mode table 113
 - VTAM start option list 111
 - work sheet example 147
- 3174 token-ring gateway configuration, remote
 - 3174 establishment controller 156
 - accessing Communications Server for NT profiles 158
 - alternate token-ring address required 13
 - blank work sheet 189
 - Device profile 164
 - enabling SNA API clients 176
 - host PSF printer configuration 150
 - host PSF printer definition 150
 - illustration 149
 - interrelationships 188
 - JES external writer procedure 150
 - JES2 initialization statement 150
 - Local LU 6.2 profile 173
 - Mode profile 181
 - network internals view 7
 - Node Setup profile 160
 - Partner LU 6.2 profile 178
 - Peer Connections profile 169
 - simplified view 3
 - starting 229
 - token-ring addresses 12
 - Transaction Program profile 184
 - VTAM application program 155
 - VTAM configuration list 154
 - VTAM mode table 155
 - VTAM start option list 153
 - work sheet example 188
- 37xx token-ring configuration
 - accessing Communications Server for NT profiles 28
 - blank work sheet 60
 - Device profile 34
 - enabling SNA API clients 39
 - host PSF printer configuration 17
 - host PSF printer definition 16
 - illustration 15
 - interrelationships 59
 - JES external writer procedure 17
 - JES2 initialization statement 16

- 37xx token-ring configuration (*continued*)
 - Local LU 6.2 profile 49
 - Mode profile 52
 - NCP 26
 - network internals view 7
 - Node Setup profile 30
 - Partner LU 6.2 profile 46
 - Peer Connections profile 41
 - simplified view 3
 - starting 229
 - token-ring addresses 10
 - Transaction Program profile 55
 - VTAM application program 21
 - VTAM configuration list 20
 - VTAM mode table 21
 - VTAM start option list 19
 - VTAM switched major node 22

A

- Activate link at start check box, Define a LAN Connection notebook
 - 3172 configuration 88
 - 3174 configuration, local 130
 - 3174 configuration, remote 171
 - 37xx configuration 43
 - AS/400 configuration 211
- actual destinations
 - configuring 232
 - continuous-forms 239
 - creating 232
 - sharing 236
 - continuous-forms 239
 - example 238
 - status 234, 240
 - stopping 237
- ADAPNO parameter, PORT statement 3172 configuration 73
- Adapter number field, Define a LAN Device notebook
 - 3172 configuration 80
 - 3174 configuration, local 124
 - 3174 configuration, remote 165
 - 37xx configuration 35
 - AS/400 configuration 203
- ADDR parameter, PU statement 3172 configuration 69
- 37xx configuration 23
- ADDRESS parameter, LINE statement 37xx configuration 27
- Advanced Program-to-Program Communications (APPC) controller descriptions
 - AS/400 configuration 193
- alternate token-ring address
 - Windows NT server 13
- APARs required for Communications Server for Windows NT 2
- API clients, SNA
 - 3172 configuration 84
 - 3174 configuration, local 135

- API clients, SNA (*continued*)
 - 3174 configuration, remote 176
 - 37xx configuration 39
 - AS/400 configuration 207
- APPC (Advanced Program-to-Program Communications) controller descriptions
 - AS/400 configuration 193
- application program, VTAM
 - 3172 configuration 67
 - 3174 configuration, local 113
 - 3174 configuration, remote 155
 - 37xx configuration 21
- APPLID parameter, PRINTDEV statement 6
 - 3172 configuration 63
 - 3174 configuration, local 109
 - 3174 configuration, remote 151
 - 37xx configuration 17
- APPN support check box, Define a LAN Connection notebook
 - 3172 configuration 88
 - 3174 configuration, local 130
 - 3174 configuration, remote 171
 - 37xx configuration 43
 - AS/400 configuration 211
- AS/400 commands
 - CRTCTLAPPC 193
 - CRTDEVPRT 195
 - CRTLINTRN 192
- AS/400 operating system references 192
- AS/400 token-ring configuration
 - accessing Communications Server for NT profiles 197
 - APPC controller descriptions 193
 - blank work sheet 228
 - Device profile 202
 - enabling SNA API clients 207
 - host PSF printer configuration 195
 - illustration 191
 - interrelationships 227
 - line descriptions 192
 - Local LU 6.2 profile 217
 - Mode profile 220
 - Node Setup profile 198
 - Partner LU 6.2 profile 214
 - Peer Connections profile 209
 - references 192
 - simplified view 4
 - starting 229
 - Transaction Program profile 223
- ATCCONxx (VTAM configuration list)
 - 3172 configuration 66
 - 3174 configuration, local 112
 - 3174 configuration, remote 154
 - 37xx configuration 20
- ATCSTRxx (VTAM start option list)
 - 3172 configuration 65
 - 3174 configuration, local 111
 - 3174 configuration, remote 153
 - 37xx configuration 19
- Auto activate sessions field, Define a Mode notebook
 - 3172 configuration 99
 - 3174 configuration, local 142
 - 3174 configuration, remote 183

- Auto activate sessions field, Define a Mode notebook (*continued*)
 - 37xx configuration 54
 - AS/400 configuration 222
- AUTOGEN parameter, GROUP statement
 - 37xx configuration 27

B

- Background process check box, Define a Transaction Program notebook
 - 3172 configuration 103
 - 3174 configuration, local 146
 - 3174 configuration, remote 187
 - 37xx configuration 58
 - AS/400 configuration 226
- blank work sheets
 - 3172 configuration 105
 - 3174 configuration, local 148
 - 3174 configuration, remote 189
 - 37xx configuration 60
 - AS/400 configuration 228
- Block ID field, Define a LAN Connection notebook
 - 3172 configuration 88
 - 3174 configuration, local 130
 - 3174 configuration, remote 171
 - 37xx configuration 43
 - AS/400 configuration 211

C

- CALL parameter, GROUP statement
 - 37xx configuration 27
- CALL parameter, LINE statement
 - 3172 configuration 73
- calling link station
 - 3172 configuration 68
 - 37xx configuration 22
- Class of Service name field, Define a Mode notebook
 - 3172 configuration 99
 - 3174 configuration, local 142
 - 3174 configuration, remote 183
 - 37xx configuration 54
 - AS/400 configuration 222
- clients, SNA API
 - 3172 configuration 84
 - 3174 configuration, local 135
 - 3174 configuration, remote 176
 - 37xx configuration 39
 - AS/400 configuration 207
- commands, AS/400
 - CRTCTLAPPC 193
 - CRTDEVPRT 195
 - CRTLINTRN 192
- commands, JES2
 - \$DU 236
- commands, OS/390
 - \$DU 236
- commands, Windows NT
 - pddisable 236
 - pdshutdown 236
 - psfstat 235, 240
- communication protocols
 - channel 1

- communication protocols (*continued*)
 - Communication Server LU 6.2 1
 - host to Windows NT 1
 - printer to Windows NT 1
 - serial 1
 - TCP/IP 1
 - Windows NT to host 1
 - Windows NT to printer 1
- Communications Server for Windows NT, IBM SecureWay
 - accessing profiles
 - 3172 configuration 74
 - 3174 configuration, local 117
 - 3174 configuration, remote 158
 - 37xx configuration 28
 - AS/400 configuration 197
 - APARs 2
 - defining devices 13
 - description 2
 - Device profile
 - 3172 configuration 79
 - 3174 configuration, local 123
 - 3174 configuration, remote 164
 - 37xx configuration 34
 - AS/400 configuration 202
 - installation 2
 - Local LU 6.2 profile
 - 3172 configuration 94
 - 3174 configuration, local 132
 - 3174 configuration, remote 173
 - 37xx configuration 49
 - AS/400 configuration 217
 - Mode profile
 - 3172 configuration 97
 - 3174 configuration, local 140
 - 3174 configuration, remote 181
 - 37xx configuration 52
 - AS/400 configuration 220
 - Node Setup profile
 - 3172 configuration 75
 - 3174 configuration, local 119
 - 3174 configuration, remote 160
 - 37xx configuration 30
 - AS/400 configuration 198
 - Partner LU 6.2 profile
 - 3172 configuration 91
 - 3174 configuration, local 137
 - 3174 configuration, remote 178
 - 37xx configuration 46
 - AS/400 configuration 214
 - Peer Connections profile
 - 3172 configuration 86
 - 3174 configuration, local 128
 - 3174 configuration, remote 169
 - 37xx configuration 41
 - AS/400 configuration 209
 - starting 229
 - Transaction Program profile
 - 3172 configuration 100
 - 3174 configuration, local 143
 - 3174 configuration, remote 184
 - 37xx configuration 55
 - AS/400 configuration 223
 - version required 2
- Communications Server Node Operations interface
 - shortcut 2

- Complete pathname field, Define a Transaction Program notebook
 - 3172 configuration 101
 - 3174 configuration, local 144
 - 3174 configuration, remote 185
 - CONFIG parameter, VTAM start option list
 - 3172 configuration 65
 - 3174 configuration, local 111
 - 3174 configuration, remote 153
 - 37xx configuration 19
 - configuration list, VTAM
 - 3172 configuration 66
 - 3174 configuration, local 112
 - 3174 configuration, remote 154
 - 37xx configuration 20
 - continuous-forms printers
 - non-process-runout-timer
 - attribute 239
 - sharing 239
 - control point (CP)
 - name
 - interrelationships 10
 - Conversation security required check box, Define a Transaction Program notebook
 - 3172 configuration 101
 - 3174 configuration, local 144
 - 3174 configuration, remote 185
 - 37xx configuration 56
 - AS/400 configuration 225
 - Conversation security support check box, Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook
 - 3172 configuration 93
 - 3174 configuration, local 139
 - 3174 configuration, remote 180
 - 37xx configuration 48
 - AS/400 configuration 216
 - Conversation type field, Define a Transaction Program notebook
 - 3172 configuration 101
 - 3174 configuration, local 144
 - 3174 configuration, remote 185
 - 37xx configuration 56
 - AS/400 configuration 224
 - correspondences
 - 3172 configuration 104
 - 3174 configuration, local 147
 - 3174 configuration, remote 188
 - 37xx configuration 59
 - AS/400 configuration 227
 - local LU address 9
 - LU names 8
 - mode 9
 - PU name and CP name 10
 - session characteristics 9
 - token-ring addresses
 - 3172 configuration 11
 - 3174 configuration 12
 - 37xx configuration 10
 - CP (control point)
 - name
 - interrelationships 10
 - CP alias field, Define a Node notebook
 - 3172 configuration 76
 - 3174 configuration, local 120
 - 3174 configuration, remote 161
 - 37xx configuration 31
 - CP alias field, Define a Node notebook *(continued)*
 - AS/400 configuration 199
 - CPNAME parameter, PU statement
 - 3172 configuration 69
 - 37xx configuration 23
 - Create Printer wizard 232
 - CRTCTLAPPC command 193
 - CRTDEVPRICommand 195
 - CRTLINTRN command 192
 - CUADDR parameter, PORT statement
 - 3172 configuration 73
 - CUADDR parameter, PU statement
 - 3174 configuration, local 114
- ## D
- Define a LAN Connection notebook
 - Activate link at start check box
 - 3172 configuration 88
 - 3174 configuration, local 130
 - 3174 configuration, remote 171
 - 37xx configuration 43
 - AS/400 configuration 211
 - APPN support check box
 - 3172 configuration 88
 - 3174 configuration, local 130
 - 3174 configuration, remote 171
 - 37xx configuration 43
 - AS/400 configuration 211
 - Block ID field
 - 3172 configuration 88
 - 3174 configuration, local 130
 - 3174 configuration, remote 171
 - 37xx configuration 43
 - AS/400 configuration 211
 - Destination address field
 - 3172 configuration 87
 - 3174 configuration, local 129
 - 3174 configuration, remote 170
 - 37xx configuration 42
 - AS/400 configuration 210
 - Device name field
 - 3172 configuration 87
 - 3174 configuration, local 129
 - 3174 configuration, remote 170
 - 37xx configuration 42
 - AS/400 configuration 210
 - Link station name field
 - 3172 configuration 87
 - 3174 configuration, local 129
 - 3174 configuration, remote 170
 - 37xx configuration 42
 - AS/400 configuration 210
 - Physical Unit ID field
 - 3172 configuration 88
 - 3174 configuration, local 130
 - 3174 configuration, remote 171
 - 37xx configuration 43
 - AS/400 configuration 211
 - PU name field
 - 3172 configuration 88
 - 3174 configuration, local 130
 - 3174 configuration, remote 171
 - 37xx configuration 43
 - AS/400 configuration 211
 - Define a LAN Connection notebook *(continued)*
 - Swap address bytes check box
 - 3172 configuration 87
 - 3174 configuration, local 129
 - 3174 configuration, remote 170
 - 37xx configuration 42
 - AS/400 configuration 210
 - Define a LAN Device notebook
 - Adapter number field
 - 3172 configuration 80
 - 3174 configuration, local 124
 - 3174 configuration, remote 165
 - 37xx configuration 35
 - AS/400 configuration 203
 - Local SAP field
 - 3172 configuration 80
 - 3174 configuration, local 124
 - 3174 configuration, remote 165
 - 37xx configuration 35
 - AS/400 configuration 203
 - Maximum PIU size field
 - 3172 configuration 82
 - 3174 configuration, local 126
 - 3174 configuration, remote 167
 - 37xx configuration 37
 - AS/400 configuration 205
 - Port name field
 - 3172 configuration 80
 - 3174 configuration, local 124
 - 3174 configuration, remote 165
 - 37xx configuration 35
 - AS/400 configuration 203
 - Receive window count field
 - 3172 configuration 82
 - 3174 configuration, local 126
 - 3174 configuration, remote 167
 - 37xx configuration 36
 - AS/400 configuration 205
 - Test retry interval field
 - 3172 configuration 81
 - 3174 configuration, local 125
 - 3174 configuration, remote 166
 - 37xx configuration 36
 - AS/400 configuration 204
 - Test retry limit field
 - 3172 configuration 82
 - 3174 configuration, local 126
 - 3174 configuration, remote 167
 - 37xx configuration 36
 - AS/400 configuration 204
 - XID retry interval field
 - 3172 configuration 81
 - 3174 configuration, local 125
 - 3174 configuration, remote 166
 - 37xx configuration 36
 - AS/400 configuration 204
 - XID retry limit field
 - 3172 configuration 81
 - 3174 configuration, local 125
 - 3174 configuration, remote 166
 - 37xx configuration 36
 - AS/400 configuration 204
 - Define a Local LU 6.2 notebook
 - Dependent LU check box
 - 3172 configuration 95
 - 37xx configuration 50

Define a Local LU 6.2 notebook
(continued)

- AS/400 configuration 218
- Local LU alias field 6
 - 3172 configuration 95
 - 37xx configuration 50
- AS/400 configuration 218
- Local LU name field
 - 3172 configuration 95
 - 37xx configuration 50
- AS/400 configuration 218
- LU session limit field
 - 3172 configuration 96
 - 37xx configuration 51
- AS/400 configuration 219
- SNA API client use check box
 - 3172 configuration 95
 - 37xx configuration 50
- AS/400 configuration 218
- Synchronization support check box
 - 3172 configuration 96
 - 37xx configuration 51
- AS/400 configuration 219

Define a Mode notebook

- Auto activate sessions field
 - 3172 configuration 99
 - 3174 configuration, local 142
 - 3174 configuration, remote 183
 - 37xx configuration 54
- AS/400 configuration 222
- Class of Service name field
 - 3172 configuration 99
 - 3174 configuration, local 142
 - 3174 configuration, remote 183
 - 37xx configuration 54
- AS/400 configuration 222
- Maximum negotiable session limit field
 - 3172 configuration 99
 - 3174 configuration, local 142
 - 3174 configuration, remote 183
 - 37xx configuration 54
- AS/400 configuration 222
- Maximum RU size field
 - 3172 configuration 100
 - 3174 configuration, local 143
 - 3174 configuration, remote 184
 - 37xx configuration 55
- AS/400 configuration 223
- Minimum contention winner sessions field
 - 3172 configuration 98
 - 3174 configuration, local 141
 - 3174 configuration, remote 182
 - 37xx configuration 53
- AS/400 configuration 221
- Mode name field
 - 3172 configuration 98
 - 3174 configuration, local 141
 - 3174 configuration, remote 182
 - 37xx configuration 53
- AS/400 configuration 221
- PLU mode session limit field
 - 3172 configuration 98
 - 3174 configuration, local 141
 - 3174 configuration, remote 182
 - 37xx configuration 53

Define a Mode notebook (continued)

- PLU mode session limit field
(continued)
 - AS/400 configuration 221
- Receive pacing window size field
 - 3172 configuration 99
 - 3174 configuration, local 142
 - 3174 configuration, remote 183
 - 37xx configuration 54
- AS/400 configuration 222
- Use default RU size check box
 - 3172 configuration 99
 - 3174 configuration, local 142
 - 3174 configuration, remote 183
 - 37xx configuration 54
- AS/400 configuration 222

Define a Node notebook

- CP alias field
 - 3172 configuration 76
 - 3174 configuration, local 120
 - 3174 configuration, remote 161
 - 37xx configuration 31
- AS/400 configuration 199
- Discovery Support field
 - 3172 configuration 77
 - 3174 configuration, local 121
 - 3174 configuration, remote 162
 - 37xx configuration 32
- AS/400 configuration 200
- DLUS connect retry limit field
 - 3172 configuration 78
 - 3174 configuration, local 122
 - 3174 configuration, remote 163
 - 37xx configuration 33
- AS/400 configuration 201
- DLUS connect retry timeout field
 - 3172 configuration 78
 - 3174 configuration, local 122
 - 3174 configuration, remote 163
 - 37xx configuration 33
- AS/400 configuration 201
- Fully qualified control point (CP) name field
 - 3172 configuration 76
 - 3174 configuration, local 120
 - 3174 configuration, remote 161
 - 37xx configuration 31
- AS/400 configuration 199
- Local node ID field
 - 3172 configuration 76
 - 3174 configuration, local 120
 - 3174 configuration, remote 161
 - 37xx configuration 31
- AS/400 configuration 199
- Node Type field
 - 3172 configuration 77
 - 3174 configuration, local 121
 - 3174 configuration, remote 162
 - 37xx configuration 32
- AS/400 configuration 199
- Registration of LU resources field
 - 3172 configuration 77
 - 3174 configuration, local 121
 - 3174 configuration, remote 162
 - 37xx configuration 32
- AS/400 configuration 200

Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook

- Conversation security support check box
 - 3172 configuration 93
 - 3174 configuration, local 139
 - 3174 configuration, remote 180
 - 37xx configuration 48
 - AS/400 configuration 216
 - Fully qualified CP name field
 - 3172 configuration 92
 - 3174 configuration, local 138
 - 3174 configuration, remote 179
 - 37xx configuration 47
 - AS/400 configuration 215
 - Maximum LL record size field
 - 3172 configuration 93
 - 3174 configuration, local 139
 - 3174 configuration, remote 180
 - 37xx configuration 48
 - AS/400 configuration 216
 - Parallel session support check box
 - 3172 configuration 93
 - 3174 configuration, local 139
 - 3174 configuration, remote 180
 - 37xx configuration 48
 - AS/400 configuration 216
 - Partner LU alias field
 - 3172 configuration 92
 - 3174 configuration, local 138
 - 3174 configuration, remote 179
 - 37xx configuration 47
 - AS/400 configuration 215
 - Partner LU name field
 - 3172 configuration 92
 - 3174 configuration, local 138
 - 3174 configuration, remote 179
 - 37xx configuration 47
 - AS/400 configuration 215
- Define a Transaction Program notebook
- Background process check box
 - 3172 configuration 103
 - 3174 configuration, local 146
 - 3174 configuration, remote 187
 - 37xx configuration 58
 - AS/400 configuration 226
 - Complete pathname field
 - 3172 configuration 101
 - 3174 configuration, local 144
 - 3174 configuration, remote 185
 - Conversation security required check box
 - 3172 configuration 101
 - 3174 configuration, local 144
 - 3174 configuration, remote 185
 - 37xx configuration 56
 - AS/400 configuration 225
 - Conversation type field
 - 3172 configuration 101
 - 3174 configuration, local 144
 - 3174 configuration, remote 185
 - 37xx configuration 56
 - AS/400 configuration 224
 - Dynamically loaded check box
 - 3172 configuration 102
 - 3174 configuration, local 145
 - 3174 configuration, remote 186
 - 37xx configuration 57

- Define a Transaction Program notebook
(*continued*)
 - AS/400 configuration 225
 - Incoming allocate timeout field
 - 3172 configuration 102
 - 3174 configuration, local 145
 - 3174 configuration, remote 186
 - 37xx configuration 57
 - AS/400 configuration 225
 - Receive_Allocate timeout field
 - 3172 configuration 102
 - 3174 configuration, local 145
 - 3174 configuration, remote 186
 - 37xx configuration 57
 - AS/400 configuration 225
 - Synchronization level field
 - 3172 configuration 101
 - 3174 configuration, local 144
 - 3174 configuration, remote 185
 - 37xx configuration 56
 - AS/400 configuration 224
 - TP instance limit field
 - 3172 configuration 102
 - 3174 configuration, local 145
 - 3174 configuration, remote 186
 - 37xx configuration 57
 - AS/400 configuration 225
 - TP name field
 - 3172 configuration 101
 - 3174 configuration, local 144
 - 3174 configuration, remote 185
 - 37xx configuration 56
 - AS/400 configuration 224
- definition
 - LU 5
 - mode 5
 - session 5
- dependent LU
 - when to define 14
- Dependent LU check box, Define a Local
LU 6.2 notebook
 - 3172 configuration 95
 - 37xx configuration 50
 - AS/400 configuration 218
- description
 - APPC controller, for AS/400
configuration 193
 - Communications Server for NT 2
host printer, for AS/400
configuration 195
 - line, for AS/400 configuration 192
 - PSF Direct 1
- Destination address field, Define a LAN
Connection notebook
 - 3172 configuration 87
 - 3174 configuration, local 129
 - 3174 configuration, remote 170
 - 37xx configuration 42
 - AS/400 configuration 210
- destination-release-timer attribute 239
- destinations, actual
 - configuring 232
 - continuous-forms 239
 - creating 232
 - sharing 236
 - continuous-forms 239
 - example 238

- destinations, actual (*continued*)
 - status 234, 240
 - stopping 237
- Device busy limit parameter 233
- Device name field, Define a LAN
Connection notebook
 - 3172 configuration 87
 - 3174 configuration, local 129
 - 3174 configuration, remote 170
 - 37xx configuration 42
 - AS/400 configuration 210
- Device profile
 - 3172 configuration 79
 - 3174 configuration, local 123
 - 3174 configuration, remote 164
 - 37xx configuration 34
 - AS/400 configuration 202
- DIAL parameter, GROUP statement
 - 3172 configuration 73
- DIALNO parameter, PATH statement
 - 3172 configuration 71
 - 37xx configuration 25
 - alternate token-ring address
required 13
- DISCINTV parameter, PRINTDEV
statement
 - 3172 configuration 64
 - 3174 configuration, local 110
 - 3174 configuration, remote 152
 - 37xx configuration 18
 - examples for sharing printer 238
- Discovery Support field, Define a Node
notebook
 - 3172 configuration 77
 - 3174 configuration, local 121
 - 3174 configuration, remote 162
 - 37xx configuration 32
 - AS/400 configuration 200
- displaying status
 - actual destination 234
 - printer 234
 - PSF direct host receiver 234
- DLOGMOD parameter, PU statement
 - 3172 configuration 70
 - 3174 configuration, local 115
 - 37xx configuration 24
- DLUS connect retry limit field, Define a
Node notebook
 - 3172 configuration 78
 - 3174 configuration, local 122
 - 3174 configuration, remote 163
 - 37xx configuration 33
 - AS/400 configuration 201
- DLUS connect retry timeout field, Define a
Node notebook
 - 3172 configuration 78
 - 3174 configuration, local 122
 - 3174 configuration, remote 163
 - 37xx configuration 33
 - AS/400 configuration 201
- Dynamically loaded check box, Define a
Transaction Program notebook
 - 3172 configuration 102
 - 3174 configuration, local 145
 - 3174 configuration, remote 186
 - 37xx configuration 57
 - AS/400 configuration 225

E

- establishment controller, 3172 72
- establishment controller, 3174
 - local configuration 115
 - remote configuration 156
- examples, work sheet
 - 3172 configuration 104
 - 3174 configuration, local 147
 - 3174 configuration, remote 188

F

- F parameter
 - 3174 configuration, local 116
 - 3174 configuration, remote 157
- FAILURE parameter, PRINTDEV
statement
 - 37xx configuration 18
- Fully qualified control point (CP) name
field, Define a Node notebook
 - 3172 configuration 76
 - 3174 configuration, local 120
 - 3174 configuration, remote 161
 - 37xx configuration 31
 - AS/400 configuration 199
- Fully qualified CP name field, Define a
Partner LU 6.2 notebook
 - 3172 configuration 92
 - 3174 configuration, local 138
 - 3174 configuration, remote 179
 - 37xx configuration 47
 - AS/400 configuration 215

G

- GROUP statement
 - AUTOGEN parameter
 - 37xx configuration 27
 - CALL parameter
 - 37xx configuration 27
 - DIAL parameter
 - 3172 configuration 73
 - PHYPORT parameter
 - 37xx configuration 28
- GRPNM parameter, PATH statement
 - 3172 configuration 71
 - 37xx configuration 25

H

- Host LU Definition window
 - Host NAU Address field
 - 3714 configuration, local 133
 - 3714 configuration, remote 174
 - LU Model Type field
 - 3714 configuration, local 133
 - 3714 configuration, remote 174
 - LU name field
 - 3714 configuration, local 133
 - 3714 configuration, remote 174
 - Single LU definition radio button
 - 3714 configuration, local 133
 - 3714 configuration, remote 174

- Host NAU Address field, Host LU
 - Definition window
 - 3174 configuration, local 133
 - 3174 configuration, remote 174
- host PSF printer
 - configuring
 - 3172 configuration 62
 - 3174 configuration, local 108
 - 3174 configuration, remote 150
 - 37xx configuration 17
 - AS/400 configuration 195
 - defining
 - 3172 configuration 62
 - 3174 configuration, local 108
 - 3174 configuration, remote 150
 - 37xx configuration 16
- host PSF program
 - specifying LU 6
- host receiver, PSF Direct
 - configuring 232
 - defining 232
 - Device busy limit parameter 233
 - Inactivity limit parameter 233
 - NMVT Subsystem Name parameter 233
 - SNA Logical Unit Name parameter 233
 - SNA System Services Control Point ID parameter 233
 - specifying local LU alias 6
 - starting 233
 - status 234
 - stopping 234, 236, 237
 - Target Destination parameter 233
 - wait period 237
- host systems
 - communication protocols 1
 - PSF running on
 - specifying LU 6
 - supporting PSF Direct 1

I

- IBM Printing Systems web page ii
- IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT
 - accessing profiles
 - 3172 configuration 74
 - 3174 configuration, local 117
 - 3174 configuration, remote 158
 - 37xx configuration 28
 - AS/400 configuration 197
 - APARs 2
 - defining devices 13
 - description 2
 - Device profile
 - 3172 configuration 79
 - 3174 configuration, local 123
 - 3174 configuration, remote 164
 - 37xx configuration 34
 - AS/400 configuration 202
 - installation 2
 - Local LU 6.2 profile
 - 3172 configuration 94
 - 3174 configuration, local 132
 - 3174 configuration, remote 173
 - 37xx configuration 49

- IBM SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT (*continued*)
 - Local LU 6.2 profile (*continued*)
 - AS/400 configuration 217
 - Mode profile
 - 3172 configuration 97
 - 3174 configuration, local 140
 - 3174 configuration, remote 181
 - 37xx configuration 52
 - AS/400 configuration 220
 - Node Setup profile
 - 3172 configuration 75
 - 3174 configuration, local 119
 - 3174 configuration, remote 160
 - 37xx configuration 30
 - AS/400 configuration 198
 - Partner LU 6.2 profile
 - 3172 configuration 91
 - 3174 configuration, local 137
 - 3174 configuration, remote 178
 - 37xx configuration 46
 - AS/400 configuration 214
 - Peer Connections profile
 - 3172 configuration 86
 - 3174 configuration, local 128
 - 3174 configuration, remote 169
 - 37xx configuration 41
 - AS/400 configuration 209
 - starting 229
 - Transaction Program profile
 - 3172 configuration 100
 - 3174 configuration, local 143
 - 3174 configuration, remote 184
 - 37xx configuration 55
 - AS/400 configuration 223
 - version required 2
- IDBLK parameter, PU statement
 - 3172 configuration 70
 - 37xx configuration 24
- IDNUM parameter, PU statement
 - 3172 configuration 70
 - 37xx configuration 24
- Inactivity limit parameter 233
- Incoming allocate timeout field, Define a Transaction Program notebook
 - 3172 configuration 102
 - 3174 configuration, local 145
 - 3174 configuration, remote 186
 - 37xx configuration 57
 - AS/400 configuration 225
- independent LU
 - when to define 14
- Infoprint actual destinations
 - configuring 232
 - continuous-forms 239
 - creating 232
 - sharing 236
 - continuous-forms 239
 - example 238
 - status 234, 240
 - stopping 237
- Infoprint Manager Administration GUI
 - configuring actual destination 232
 - Create Printer wizard 232
 - creating actual destination 232
 - Printer Properties notebook 232
 - Intervention timer field 239

- Infoprint Manager Administration GUI (*continued*)
 - Printer Properties notebook 232 (*continued*)
 - Release time (sec) field 239
- Infoprint Manager Management Console
 - configuring actual destination 232
 - creating actual destination 232
 - displaying printer status 234
 - displaying PSF Direct host receiver status 234
- installing Communications Server for Windows NT 2
- Internet, information on
 - AS/400 192
 - IBM Printing Systems ii
- interrelationships
 - 3172 configuration 104
 - 3174 configuration, local 147
 - 3174 configuration, remote 188
 - 37xx configuration 59
 - AS/400 configuration 227
 - local LU address 9
 - LU names 8
 - mode 9
 - PU name and CP name 10
 - session characteristics 9
 - token-ring addresses
 - 3172 configuration 11
 - 3174 configuration 12
 - 37xx configuration 10
- intervention-timer attribute 239
- Intervention timer field, Printer Properties notebook 239

J

- JES internal writer procedure
 - 3172 configuration 62
 - 3174 configuration, local 108
 - 3174 configuration, remote 150
 - 37xx configuration 17
- JES2 commands
 - \$DU 236
- JES2 initialization statement
 - 3172 configuration 62
 - 3174 configuration, local 108
 - 3174 configuration, remote 150
 - 37xx configuration 16

L

- licenses 241
- line descriptions
 - AS/400 configuration 192
- LINE statement
 - ADDRESS parameter
 - 37xx configuration 27
 - CALL parameter
 - 3172 configuration 73
 - LOCADD parameter
 - 37xx configuration 27
 - MAXTSL parameter
 - 37xx configuration 27
 - PORTADD parameter
 - 37xx configuration 27
 - RCVBUFC parameter
 - 37xx configuration 27

- link station
 - calling
 - 3172 configuration 68
 - 37xx configuration 22
 - listening
 - 3172 configuration 68
 - 37xx configuration 22
- Link station name field, Define a LAN Connection notebook
 - 3172 configuration 87
 - 3174 configuration, local 129
 - 3174 configuration, remote 170
 - 37xx configuration 42
 - AS/400 configuration 210
- listening link station
 - 3172 configuration 68
 - 37xx configuration 22
- LOCADD parameter, LINE statement
 - 37xx configuration 27
- LOCADDR parameter, LU statement
 - 3172 configuration 71
 - 3174 configuration, local 115
 - 37xx configuration 25
- local 3172 token-ring configuration
 - 3172 establishment controller 72
 - accessing Communications Server for NT profiles 74
 - blank work sheet 105
 - Device profile 79
 - enabling SNA API clients 84
 - host PSF printer configuration 62
 - host PSF printer definition 62
 - illustration 61
 - interrelationships 104
 - JES external writer procedure 62
 - JES2 initialization statement 62
 - Local LU 6.2 profile 94
 - Mode profile 97, 100
 - network internals view 7
 - Node Setup profile 75
 - Partner LU 6.2 profile 91
 - Peer Connections profile 86
 - simplified view 3
 - starting 229
 - token-ring addresses 11
 - VTAM application program 67
 - VTAM configuration list 66
 - VTAM mode table 67
 - VTAM start option list 65
 - VTAM switched major node 68
 - VTAM XCA major node 72
 - work sheet example 104
- local 3174 token-ring gateway configuration
 - 3174 establishment controller 115
 - accessing Communications Server for NT profiles 117
 - alternate token-ring address required 13
 - blank work sheet 148
 - Device profile 123
 - enabling SNA API clients 135
 - host PSF printer configuration 108
 - host PSF printer definition 108
 - illustration 107
 - interrelationships 147
 - JES external writer procedure 108
- local 3174 token-ring gateway configuration (*continued*)
 - JES2 initialization statement 108
 - Local LU 6.2 profile 132
 - Mode profile 140, 143
 - network internals view 7
 - Node Setup profile 119
 - Partner LU 6.2 profile 137
 - Peer Connections profile 128
 - simplified view 3
 - starting 229
 - token-ring addresses 12
 - VTAM application program 113
 - VTAM configuration list 112
 - VTAM local major node 114
 - VTAM mode table 113
 - VTAM start option list 111
 - work sheet example 147
- local 37xx token-ring configuration
 - accessing Communications Server for NT profiles 28
 - blank work sheet 60
 - Device profile 34
 - enabling SNA API clients 39
 - host PSF printer configuration 17
 - host PSF printer definition 16
 - illustration 15
 - interrelationships 59
 - JES external writer procedure 17
 - JES2 initialization statement 16
 - Local LU 6.2 profile 49
 - Mode profile 52, 55
 - NCP 26
 - network internals view 7
 - Node Setup profile 30
 - Partner LU 6.2 profile 46
 - Peer Connections profile 41
 - simplified view 3
 - starting 229
 - token-ring addresses 10
 - VTAM application program 21
 - VTAM configuration list 20
 - VTAM mode table 21
 - VTAM start option list 19
 - VTAM switched major node 22
- local AS/400 token-ring configuration
 - accessing Communications Server for NT profiles 197
 - APPC descriptions 193
 - blank work sheet 228
 - Device profile 202
 - enabling SNA API clients 207
 - host PSF printer configuration 195
 - illustration 191
 - interrelationships 227
 - line descriptions 192
 - Local LU 6.2 profile 217
 - Mode profile 220, 223
 - Node Setup profile 198
 - Partner LU 6.2 profile 214
 - Peer Connections profile 209
 - references 192
 - simplified view 4
 - starting 229
- local LU
 - address
 - interrelationships 9
- local LU (*continued*)
 - alias
 - specifying 6
 - dependent or independent? 14
 - name
 - interrelationships 8
 - specifying 6
 - Local LU 6.2 profile
 - 3172 configuration 94
 - 3174 configuration, local 132
 - 3174 configuration, remote 173
 - 37xx configuration 49
 - AS/400 configuration 217
 - Local LU alias field, Define a Local LU 6.2 notebook
 - 3172 configuration 95
 - 37xx configuration 50
 - AS/400 configuration 218
 - Local LU name field, Define a Local LU 6.2 notebook
 - 3172 configuration 95
 - 37xx configuration 50
 - AS/400 configuration 218
 - local MAC address
 - Windows NT server 13
 - local major node, VTAM
 - 3174 configuration, local 114
 - Local node ID field, Define a Node notebook
 - 3172 configuration 76
 - 3174 configuration, local 120
 - 3174 configuration, remote 161
 - 37xx configuration 31
 - AS/400 configuration 199
 - Local SAP field, Define a LAN Device notebook
 - 3172 configuration 80
 - 3174 configuration, local 124
 - 3174 configuration, remote 165
 - 37xx configuration 35
 - AS/400 configuration 203
 - logical units (LUs)
 - address
 - interrelationships 9
 - alias
 - specifying for PSF direct 6
 - definition 5
 - illustration 231
 - local
 - dependent or independent? 14
 - matching address 9
 - matching name 8
 - specifying alias 6
 - specifying name 6
 - name
 - interrelationships 8
 - specifying for host PSF program 6
 - specifying for PSF direct 6
 - partner
 - matching name 8
 - specifying name 6
 - LOGMODE parameter, PRINTDEV statement
 - 6
 - 3172 configuration 63
 - 3174 configuration, local 109
 - 3174 configuration, remote 151

- LOGMODE parameter, PRINTDEV statement 6 (*continued*)
 - 37xx configuration 17
- LU Model Type field, Host LU Definition window
 - 3714 configuration, local 133
 - 3714 configuration, remote 174
- LU name field, Host LU Definition window
 - 3714 configuration, local 133
 - 3714 configuration, remote 174
- LU session limit field, Define a Local LU 6.2 notebook
 - 3172 configuration 96
 - 37xx configuration 51
 - AS/400 configuration 219
- LU statement
 - LOCADDR parameter
 - 3172 configuration 71
 - 3174 configuration, local 115
 - 37xx configuration 25
 - SSCPFM parameter
 - 3172 configuration 71
 - 37xx configuration 25
- LUNAME parameter, PRINTDEV statement 6
 - 3172 configuration 63
 - 3174 configuration, local 109
 - 3174 configuration, remote 151
 - 37xx configuration 17
- LUs (logical units)
 - address
 - interrelationships 9
 - alias
 - specifying for PSF Direct 6
 - definition 5
 - illustration 231
 - local
 - dependent or independent? 14
 - matching address 9
 - matching name 8
 - specifying alias 6
 - specifying name 6
 - name
 - interrelationships 8
 - specifying for host PSF program 6
 - specifying for PSF Direct 6
 - partner
 - matching name 8
 - specifying name 6
- major node, VTAM application program (*continued*)
 - 37xx configuration 21
- major node, VTAM local
 - 3174 configuration, local 114
- major node, VTAM switched
 - 3172 configuration 68
 - 37xx configuration 22
- major node, VTAM XCA
 - 3172 configuration 72
- matches
 - 3172 configuration 104
 - 3174 configuration, local 147
 - 3174 configuration, remote 188
 - 37xx configuration 59
 - AS/400 configuration 227
 - local LU address 9
 - LU names 8
 - mode 9
 - PU name and CP name 10
 - session characteristics 9
 - token-ring addresses
 - 3172 configuration 11
 - 3174 configuration 12
 - 37xx configuration 10
- MAXBFRU parameter, PU statement
 - 3174 configuration, local 115
- MAXDATA parameter, PU statement
 - 3172 configuration 70
 - 37xx configuration 24
- MAXGRP parameter, VBUILD statement
 - 3172 configuration 69
 - 37xx configuration 23
- Maximum LL record size field, Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook
 - 3172 configuration 93
 - 3174 configuration, local 139
 - 3174 configuration, remote 180
 - 37xx configuration 48
 - AS/400 configuration 216
- Maximum negotiable session limit field, Define a Mode notebook
 - 3172 configuration 99
 - 3174 configuration, local 142
 - 3174 configuration, remote 183
 - 37xx configuration 54
 - AS/400 configuration 222
- Maximum PIU size field, Define a LAN Device notebook
 - 3172 configuration 82
 - 3174 configuration, local 126
 - 3174 configuration, remote 167
 - 37xx configuration 37
 - AS/400 configuration 205
- Maximum RU size field, Define a Mode notebook
 - 3172 configuration 100
 - 3174 configuration, local 143
 - 3174 configuration, remote 184
 - 37xx configuration 55
 - AS/400 configuration 223
- MAXNO parameter, VBUILD statement
 - 3172 configuration 69
 - 37xx configuration 23
- MAXOUT parameter, PU statement
 - 3172 configuration 70
 - 37xx configuration 24
- MAXPATH parameter, PU statement
 - 3172 configuration 70
 - 37xx configuration 24
- MAXTSL parameter, LINE statement
 - 37xx configuration 27
- MEDIUM parameter, PORT statement
 - 3172 configuration 73
- MGMTMODE parameter, PRINTDEV statement
 - 3172 configuration 63, 64
 - 3174 configuration, local 109, 110
 - 3174 configuration, remote 151, 152
 - 37xx configuration 18
- Minimum contention winner sessions field, Define a Mode notebook
 - 3172 configuration 98
 - 3174 configuration, local 141
 - 3174 configuration, remote 182
 - 37xx configuration 53
 - AS/400 configuration 221
- mode, SNA
 - interrelationships 9
 - specifying 6
- Mode name field, Define a Mode notebook
 - 3172 configuration 98
 - 3174 configuration, local 141
 - 3174 configuration, remote 182
 - 37xx configuration 53
 - AS/400 configuration 221
- Mode profile
 - 3172 configuration 97
 - 3174 configuration, local 140
 - 3174 configuration, remote 181
 - 37xx configuration 52
 - AS/400 configuration 220
- mode table, VTAM
 - 3172 configuration 67
 - 3174 configuration, local 113
 - 3174 configuration, remote 155
 - 37xx configuration 21
- MODEENT statement
 - PSNDPAC parameter
 - 3172 configuration 67
 - 3174 configuration, local 113
 - 3174 configuration, remote 155
 - 37xx configuration 21
 - RUSIZES parameter
 - 3172 configuration 67
 - 3174 configuration, local 113
 - 3174 configuration, remote 156
 - 37xx configuration 21
 - SRCVPAC parameter
 - 3172 configuration 67
 - 3174 configuration, local 113
 - 3174 configuration, remote 156
 - 37xx configuration 21
- MODETAB parameter, PU statement
 - 3172 configuration 70
 - 3174 configuration, local 115
 - 37xx configuration 24
- MODETAB statement
 - 3172 configuration 67
 - 3174 configuration, local 113
 - 3174 configuration, remote 155
 - 37xx configuration 21

multiple data sources, printing on one printer 236
example 238

N

NCP (Network Control Program)
37xx configuration 26

NETID parameter, VTAM start option list
3172 configuration 65
3174 configuration, local 111
3174 configuration, remote 154
37xx configuration 19

network, SNA
access points 5
application view 5
configuration parameters 6
configurations 2
definition 5
internals view 6
LUs 5
mode 5
session 5

Network Control Program (NCP)
37xx configuration 26

NMVT Subsystem Name parameter 233

Node Setup profile
3172 configuration 75
3174 configuration, local 119
3174 configuration, remote 160
37xx configuration 30
AS/400 configuration 198

Node Type field, Define a Node notebook
3172 configuration 77
3174 configuration, local 121
3174 configuration, remote 162
37xx configuration 32
AS/400 configuration 199

non-process-runout-timer attribute 239

Non-process-runout timer field, Printer Properties notebook 239

O

OS/390 commands
\$DU 236

overview
Communications Server for Windows NT 2
PSF Direct 1

P

Parallel session support check box, Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook
3172 configuration 93
3174 configuration, local 139
3174 configuration, remote 180
37xx configuration 48
AS/400 configuration 216

parallel sessions 14

partner LU
name
interrelationships 8
specifying 6
required 14

Partner LU 6.2 profile
3172 configuration 91

Partner LU 6.2 profile (*continued*)
3174 configuration, local 137
3174 configuration, remote 178
37xx configuration 46
AS/400 configuration 214

Partner LU alias field, Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook
3172 configuration 92
3174 configuration, local 138
3174 configuration, remote 179
37xx configuration 47
AS/400 configuration 215

Partner LU name field, Define a Partner LU 6.2 notebook
3172 configuration 92
3174 configuration, local 138
3174 configuration, remote 179
37xx configuration 47
AS/400 configuration 215

PATH statement
DIALNO parameter
3172 configuration 71
37xx configuration 25
alternate token-ring address required 13

GRPNM parameter
3172 configuration 71
37xx configuration 25

pddisable command 236
pdshutdown command 236

Peer Connections profile
3172 configuration 86
3174 configuration, local 128
3174 configuration, remote 169
37xx configuration 41
AS/400 configuration 209

PHYSPORT parameter, GROUP statement
37xx configuration 28

Physical Unit ID field, Define a LAN Connection notebook
3172 configuration 88
3174 configuration, local 130
3174 configuration, remote 171
37xx configuration 43
AS/400 configuration 211

physical units (PUs)
name
interrelationships 10

PLU mode session limit field, Define a Mode notebook
3172 configuration 98
3174 configuration, local 141
3174 configuration, remote 182
37xx configuration 53
AS/400 configuration 221

Port name field, Define a LAN Device notebook
3172 configuration 80
3174 configuration, local 124
3174 configuration, remote 165
37xx configuration 35
AS/400 configuration 203

PORT statement
ADAPNO parameter
3172 configuration 73

CUADDR parameter
3172 configuration 73

PORT statement (*continued*)
MEDIUM parameter
3172 configuration 73

PORTADD parameter, LINE statement
37xx configuration 27

preconfiguration 13

Print Services Facility (PSF)
specifying LU 6

PRINTDEV statement
APPLID parameter 6
3172 configuration 63
3174 configuration, local 109
3174 configuration, remote 151
37xx configuration 17

DISCINV parameter
3172 configuration 64
3174 configuration, local 110
3174 configuration, remote 152
37xx configuration 18
examples for sharing printer 238

examples for sharing printer 238

FAILURE parameter
37xx configuration 18

LOGMODE parameter 6
3172 configuration 63
3174 configuration, local 109
3174 configuration, remote 151
37xx configuration 17

LUNAME parameter 6
3172 configuration 63
3174 configuration, local 109
3174 configuration, remote 151
37xx configuration 17

MGMTMODE parameter
3172 configuration 63, 64
3174 configuration, local 109, 110
3174 configuration, remote 151, 152
37xx configuration 18

SETUP parameter
3172 configuration 63
3174 configuration, local 109
3174 configuration, remote 151
37xx configuration 17

Printer Properties notebook 232
Intervention timer field 239
Non-process-runout timer field 239
Release time (sec) field 239

printers
communication protocols 1
configuring host PSF
3172 configuration 62
3174 configuration, local 108
3174 configuration, remote 150
37xx configuration 17
AS/400 configuration 195
configuring Infoprint 232
continuous-forms 239
creating Infoprint 232
defining host PSF
3172 configuration 62
3174 configuration, local 108
3174 configuration, remote 150
37xx configuration 16

sharing 236
continuous-forms 239
example 238

- printers (*continued*)
 - status 234, 240
 - stopping 237
 - submitting job 1
 - profiles, Communications Server for Windows NT
 - accessing
 - 3172 configuration 74
 - 3174 configuration, local 117
 - 3174 configuration, remote 158
 - 37xx configuration 28
 - AS/400 configuration 197
 - Device
 - 3172 configuration 79
 - 3174 configuration, local 123
 - 3174 configuration, remote 164
 - 37xx configuration 34
 - AS/400 configuration 202
 - Local LU 6.2
 - 3172 configuration 94
 - 3174 configuration, local 132
 - 3174 configuration, remote 173
 - 37xx configuration 49
 - AS/400 configuration 217
 - Mode
 - 3172 configuration 97
 - 3174 configuration, local 140
 - 3174 configuration, remote 181
 - 37xx configuration 52
 - AS/400 configuration 220
 - Node Setup
 - 3172 configuration 75
 - 3174 configuration, local 119
 - 3174 configuration, remote 160
 - 37xx configuration 30
 - AS/400 configuration 198
 - Partner LU 6.2
 - 3172 configuration 91
 - 3174 configuration, local 137
 - 3174 configuration, remote 178
 - 37xx configuration 46
 - AS/400 configuration 214
 - Peer Connections
 - 3172 configuration 86
 - 3174 configuration, local 128
 - 3174 configuration, remote 169
 - 37xx configuration 41
 - AS/400 configuration 209
 - Transaction Program
 - 3172 configuration 100
 - 3174 configuration, local 143
 - 3174 configuration, remote 184
 - 37xx configuration 55
 - AS/400 configuration 223
 - protocols
 - channel 1
 - Communication Server LU 6.2 1
 - host to Windows NT 1
 - serial 1
 - TCP/IP 1
 - Windows NT to host 1
 - PSF (Print Services Facility)
 - specifying LU 6
 - PSF Direct
 - configuring 231
 - description 1
 - host systems 1
 - PSF Direct (*continued*)
 - licenses 241
 - preconfiguration 13
 - specifying LU 6
 - PSF Direct host receiver
 - configuring 232
 - defining 232
 - Device busy limit parameter 233
 - Inactivity limit parameter 233
 - NMVT Subsystem Name parameter 233
 - SNA Logical Unit Name parameter 233
 - SNA System Services Control Point ID parameter 233
 - specifying local LU alias 6
 - starting 233
 - status 234
 - stopping 234, 236, 237
 - Target Destination parameter 233
 - wait period 237
 - psfstat command 235, 240
 - PSNDPAC parameter, MODEENT statement
 - 3172 configuration 67
 - 3174 configuration, local 113
 - 3174 configuration, remote 155
 - 37xx configuration 21
 - PU name field, Define a LAN Connection notebook
 - 3172 configuration 88
 - 3174 configuration, local 130
 - 3174 configuration, remote 171
 - 37xx configuration 43
 - AS/400 configuration 211
 - PU statement
 - ADDR parameter
 - 3172 configuration 69
 - 37xx configuration 23
 - CPNAME parameter
 - 3172 configuration 69
 - 37xx configuration 23
 - CUADDR parameter
 - 3174 configuration, local 114
 - DLOGMOD parameter
 - 3172 configuration 70
 - 3174 configuration, local 115
 - 37xx configuration 24
 - IDBLK parameter
 - 3172 configuration 70
 - 37xx configuration 24
 - IDNUM parameter
 - 3172 configuration 70
 - 37xx configuration 24
 - MAXBFRU parameter
 - 3174 configuration, local 115
 - MAXDATA parameter
 - 3172 configuration 70
 - 37xx configuration 24
 - MAXOUT parameter
 - 3172 configuration 70
 - 37xx configuration 24
 - MAXPATH parameter
 - 3172 configuration 70
 - 37xx configuration 24
 - MODETAB parameter
 - 3172 configuration 70
 - PU statement (*continued*)
 - MODETAB parameter (*continued*)
 - 3174 configuration, local 115
 - 37xx configuration 24
 - VPACING parameter
 - 3172 configuration 70
 - 3174 configuration, local 115
 - 37xx configuration 24
 - PU (physical units)
 - name
 - interrelationships 10
- ## R
- RCVBUFC parameter, LINE statement
 - 37xx configuration 27
 - Receive_Allocate timeout field, Define a Transaction Program notebook
 - 3172 configuration 102
 - 3174 configuration, local 145
 - 3174 configuration, remote 186
 - 37xx configuration 57
 - AS/400 configuration 225
 - Receive pacing window size field, Define a Mode notebook
 - 3172 configuration 99
 - 3174 configuration, local 142
 - 3174 configuration, remote 183
 - 37xx configuration 54
 - AS/400 configuration 222
 - Receive window count field, Define a LAN Device notebook
 - 3172 configuration 82
 - 3174 configuration, local 126
 - 3174 configuration, remote 167
 - 37xx configuration 36
 - AS/400 configuration 205
 - Registration of LU resources field, Define a Node notebook
 - 3172 configuration 77
 - 3174 configuration, local 121
 - 3174 configuration, remote 162
 - 37xx configuration 32
 - AS/400 configuration 200
 - Release time (sec) field, Printer Properties notebook 239
 - remote 3174 token-ring gateway configuration
 - 3174 establishment controller 156
 - accessing Communications Server for NT profiles 158
 - alternate token-ring address required 13
 - blank work sheet 189
 - Device profile 164
 - enabling SNA API clients 176
 - host PSF printer configuration 150
 - host PSF printer definition 150
 - illustration 149
 - interrelationships 188
 - JES external writer procedure 150
 - JES2 initialization statement 150
 - Local LU 6.2 profile 173
 - Mode profile 181, 184
 - network internals view 7
 - Node Setup profile 160
 - Partner LU 6.2 profile 178

- remote 3174 token-ring gateway configuration *(continued)*
 - Peer Connections profile 169
 - simplified view 3
 - starting 229
 - token-ring addresses 12
 - VTAM application program 155
 - VTAM configuration list 154
 - VTAM mode table 155
 - VTAM start option list 153
 - work sheet example 188
- remote 37xx token-ring configuration
 - accessing Communications Server for NT profiles 28
 - blank work sheet 60
 - Device profile 34
 - enabling SNA API clients 39
 - host PSF printer configuration 17
 - host PSF printer definition 16
 - illustration 15
 - interrelationships 59
 - JES external writer procedure 17
 - JES2 initialization statement 16
 - Local LU 6.2 profile 49
 - Mode profile 52
 - NCP 26
 - network internals view 7
 - Node Setup profile 30
 - Partner LU 6.2 profile 46
 - Peer Connections profile 41
 - simplified view 3
 - starting 229
 - token-ring addresses 10
 - Transaction Program profile 55
 - VTAM application program 21
 - VTAM configuration list 20
 - VTAM mode table 21
 - VTAM start option list 19
 - VTAM switched major node 22
- remote AS/400 token-ring configuration
 - accessing Communications Server for NT profiles 197
 - APPC controller descriptions 193
 - blank work sheet 228
 - Device profile 202
 - enabling SNA API clients 207
 - host PSF printer configuration 195
 - illustration 191
 - interrelationships 227
 - line descriptions 192
 - Local LU 6.2 profile 217
 - Mode profile 220
 - Node Setup profile 198
 - Partner LU 6.2 profile 214
 - Peer Connections profile 209
 - references 192
 - simplified view 4
 - starting 229
 - Transaction Program profile 223
- RUSIZES parameter, MODEENT statement
 - 3172 configuration 67
 - 3174 configuration, local 113
 - 3174 configuration, remote 156
 - 37xx configuration 21

S

- S@ parameter
 - 3174 configuration, local 116
 - 3174 configuration, remote 157
- SAP parameter
 - 3174 configuration, local 116
 - 3174 configuration, remote 157
- SecureWay Communications Server for Windows NT
 - accessing profiles
 - 3172 configuration 74
 - 3174 configuration, local 117
 - 3174 configuration, remote 158
 - 37xx configuration 28
 - AS/400 configuration 197
- APARs 2
- defining devices 13
- description 2
- Device profile
 - 3172 configuration 79
 - 3174 configuration, local 123
 - 3174 configuration, remote 164
 - 37xx configuration 34
 - AS/400 configuration 202
- installation 2
- Local LU 6.2 profile
 - 3172 configuration 94
 - 3174 configuration, local 132
 - 3174 configuration, remote 173
 - 37xx configuration 49
 - AS/400 configuration 217
- Mode profile
 - 3172 configuration 97
 - 3174 configuration, local 140
 - 3174 configuration, remote 181
 - 37xx configuration 52
 - AS/400 configuration 220
- Node Setup profile
 - 3172 configuration 75
 - 3174 configuration, local 119
 - 3174 configuration, remote 160
 - 37xx configuration 30
 - AS/400 configuration 198
- Partner LU 6.2 profile
 - 3172 configuration 91
 - 3174 configuration, local 137
 - 3174 configuration, remote 178
 - 37xx configuration 46
 - AS/400 configuration 214
- Peer Connections profile
 - 3172 configuration 86
 - 3174 configuration, local 128
 - 3174 configuration, remote 169
 - 37xx configuration 41
 - AS/400 configuration 209
- starting 229
- Transaction Program profile
 - 3172 configuration 100
 - 3174 configuration, local 143
 - 3174 configuration, remote 184
 - 37xx configuration 55
 - AS/400 configuration 223
- version required 2

- session, SNA
- definition 5
- illustration 231
- interrelationships 9

- session, SNA *(continued)*
 - parallel not supported 14
 - specifying mode 6
- SETUP parameter, PRINTDEV statement
 - 3172 configuration 63
 - 3174 configuration, local 109
 - 3174 configuration, remote 151
 - 37xx configuration 17
- sharing printers 236
 - example 238
- shortcuts
 - Communications Server Node Operations interface 2
 - SNA Node Configuration interface 2
- Single LU definition radio button, Host LU Definition window
 - 3714 configuration, local 133
 - 3714 configuration, remote 174
- SNA (Systems Network Architecture)
 - API clients
 - 3172 configuration 84
 - 3174 configuration, local 135
 - 3174 configuration, remote 176
 - 37xx configuration 39
 - AS/400 configuration 207
 - mode
 - definition 5
 - interrelationships 9
 - network
 - access points 5
 - application view 5
 - configuration parameters 6
 - configurations 2
 - internals view 6
 - LUs 5
 - mode 5
 - session 5
 - session
 - definition 5
 - illustration 231
 - interrelationships 9
 - parallel not supported 14
- SNA API client use check box, Define a Local LU 6.2 notebook
 - 3172 configuration 95
 - 37xx configuration 50
 - AS/400 configuration 218
- SNA Logical Unit Name parameter 233
- SNA Node Configuration interface
 - shortcut 2
- SNA System Services Control Point ID parameter 233
- SRCVPAC parameter, MODEENT statement
 - 3172 configuration 67
 - 3174 configuration, local 113
 - 3174 configuration, remote 156
 - 37xx configuration 21
- SSCPFM parameter, LU statement
 - 3172 configuration 71
 - 37xx configuration 25
- SSCPID parameter, VTAM start option list
 - 3172 configuration 66
 - 3174 configuration, local 112
 - 3174 configuration, remote 154
 - 37xx configuration 20

- start option list, VTAM
 - 3172 configuration 65
 - 3174 configuration, local 111
 - 3174 configuration, remote 153
 - 37xx configuration 19
- starting Communications Server for Windows NT 229
- starting PSF Direct host receiver 233
- status, displaying
 - actual destination 234
 - printer 234
 - PSF direct host receiver 234
- stopping PSF Direct host receiver 234
 - automatically 237
 - manually 236
- subchannel address
 - 3174 configuration, local 116
 - 3174 configuration, remote 157
- Swap address bytes check box, Define a LAN Connection notebook
 - 3172 configuration 87
 - 3174 configuration, local 129
 - 3174 configuration, remote 170
 - 37xx configuration 42
 - AS/400 configuration 210
- switched major node, VTAM
 - 3172 configuration 68
 - 37xx configuration 22
- switching printers between data sources 236
 - example 238
- Synchronization level field, Define a Transaction Program notebook
 - 3172 configuration 101
 - 3174 configuration, local 144
 - 3174 configuration, remote 185
 - 37xx configuration 56
 - AS/400 configuration 224
- Synchronization support check box, Define a Local LU 6.2 notebook
 - 3172 configuration 96
 - 37xx configuration 51
 - AS/400 configuration 219
- Systems Network Architecture (SNA)
 - API clients
 - 3172 configuration 84
 - 3174 configuration, local 135
 - 3174 configuration, remote 176
 - 37xx configuration 39
 - AS/400 configuration 207
 - mode
 - definition 5
 - interrelationships 9
 - network
 - access points 5
 - application view 5
 - configuration parameters 6
 - configurations 2
 - internals view 6
 - LUs 5
 - mode 5
 - session 5
 - session
 - definition 5
 - illustration 231
 - interrelationships 9
 - parallel not supported 14

T

- Target Destination parameter 233
- Test retry interval field, Define a LAN Device notebook
 - 3172 configuration 81
 - 3174 configuration, local 125
 - 3174 configuration, remote 166
 - 37xx configuration 36
 - AS/400 configuration 204
- Test retry limit field, Define a LAN Device notebook
 - 3172 configuration 82
 - 3174 configuration, local 126
 - 3174 configuration, remote 167
 - 37xx configuration 36
 - AS/400 configuration 204
- token-ring address
 - 3172 configuration
 - interrelationships 11
 - 3174 configuration, local 116
 - interrelationships 12
 - 3174 configuration, remote 156
 - interrelationships 12
 - 37xx configuration
 - interrelationships 10
 - alternate 13
 - Windows NT server 13
- TP instance limit field, Define a Transaction Program notebook
 - 3172 configuration 102
 - 3174 configuration, local 145
 - 3174 configuration, remote 186
 - 37xx configuration 57
 - AS/400 configuration 225
- TP name field, Define a Transaction Program notebook
 - 3172 configuration 101
 - 3174 configuration, local 144
 - 3174 configuration, remote 185
 - 37xx configuration 56
 - AS/400 configuration 224
- trademarks 241
- Transaction Program profile
 - 3172 configuration 100
 - 3174 configuration, local 143
 - 3174 configuration, remote 184
 - 37xx configuration 55
 - AS/400 configuration 223
- transmit I-frame size
 - 3174 configuration, local 116
 - 3174 configuration, remote 157
- transmit window size
 - 3174 configuration, local 116
 - 3174 configuration, remote 157
- TYPE parameter, VBUILD statement
 - 3172 configuration 69, 73
 - 3174 configuration, local 114
 - 37xx configuration 23

U

- universal MAC address
 - Windows NT server 13
- Use default RU size check box, Define a Mode notebook
 - 3172 configuration 99

- Use default RU size check box, Define a Mode notebook (*continued*)
 - 3174 configuration, local 142
 - 3174 configuration, remote 183
 - 37xx configuration 54
 - AS/400 configuration 222

V

- VBUILD statement
 - MAXGRP parameter
 - 3172 configuration 69
 - 37xx configuration 23
 - MAXNO parameter
 - 3172 configuration 69
 - 37xx configuration 23
 - TYPE parameter
 - 3172 configuration 69, 73
 - 3174 configuration, local 114
 - 37xx configuration 23
- Virtual Telecommunications Access Method (VTAM)
 - application program
 - 3172 configuration 67
 - 3174 configuration, local 113
 - 3174 configuration, remote 155
 - 37xx configuration 21
 - configuration list
 - 3172 configuration 66
 - 3174 configuration, local 112
 - 3174 configuration, remote 154
 - 37xx configuration 20
 - local major node
 - 3174 configuration, local 114
 - mode table
 - 3172 configuration 67
 - 3174 configuration, local 113
 - 3174 configuration, remote 155
 - 37xx configuration 21
 - start option list
 - 3172 configuration 65
 - 3174 configuration, local 111
 - 3174 configuration, remote 153
 - 37xx configuration 19
 - switched major node
 - 3172 configuration 68
 - 37xx configuration 22
 - XCA major node
 - 3172 configuration 72
- VPACING parameter, PU statement
 - 3172 configuration 70
 - 3174 configuration, local 115
 - 37xx configuration 24
- VTAM (Virtual Telecommunications Access Method)
 - application program
 - 3172 configuration 67
 - 3174 configuration, local 113
 - 3174 configuration, remote 155
 - 37xx configuration 21
 - configuration list
 - 3172 configuration 66
 - 3174 configuration, local 112
 - 3174 configuration, remote 154
 - 37xx configuration 20
 - local major node
 - 3174 configuration, local 114

VTAM (Virtual Telecommunications
Access Method) (*continued*)

- mode table
 - 3172 configuration 67
 - 3174 configuration, local 113
 - 3174 configuration, remote 155
 - 37xx configuration 21
- start option list
 - 3172 configuration 65
 - 3174 configuration, local 111
 - 3174 configuration, remote 153
 - 37xx configuration 19
- switched major node
 - 3172 configuration 68
 - 37xx configuration 22
- XCA major node
 - 3172 configuration 72

W

wait period

- PSF direct host receiver 237
- Windows NT server 237

web pages

- AS/400 192
- IBM Printing Systems ii

Windows NT

- communication protocols 1

Windows NT commands

- pddisable 236
- pdshutdown 236
- psfstat 235, 240

work sheets

- blank
 - 3172 configuration 105
 - 3174 configuration, local 148
 - 3174 configuration, remote 189
 - 37xx configuration 60
 - AS/400 configuration 228
- examples
 - 3172 configuration 104
 - 3174 configuration, local 147
 - 3174 configuration, remote 188

X

XCA major node, VTAM

- 3172 configuration 72

XID retry interval field, Define a LAN

Device notebook

- 3172 configuration 81
- 3174 configuration, local 125
- 3174 configuration, remote 166
- 37xx configuration 36
- AS/400 configuration 204

XID retry limit field, Define a LAN

Device notebook

- 3172 configuration 81
- 3174 configuration, local 125
- 3174 configuration, remote 166
- 37xx configuration 36
- AS/400 configuration 204



Printed in the United States of America
on recycled paper containing 10%
recovered post-consumer fiber.